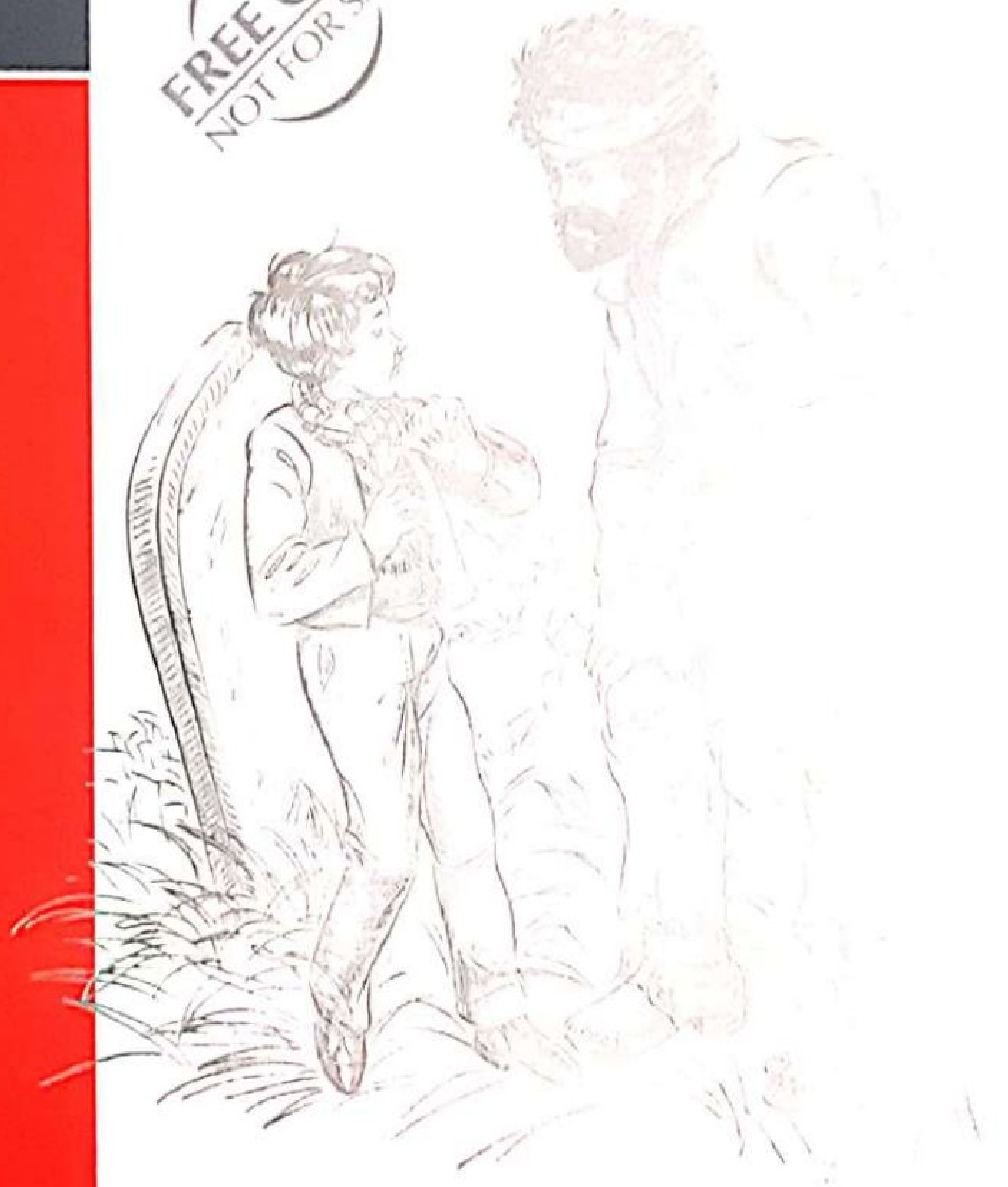
New Hello! & Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

المراجعة النهائية
بنك أسئلة
للصف الثالث الثانوى
(عام- أزهرى)

FREE GIFT NOT FOR SALE



FINAL REVISION



3rd Sec.
2022

PART 1

Vocabulary Revision

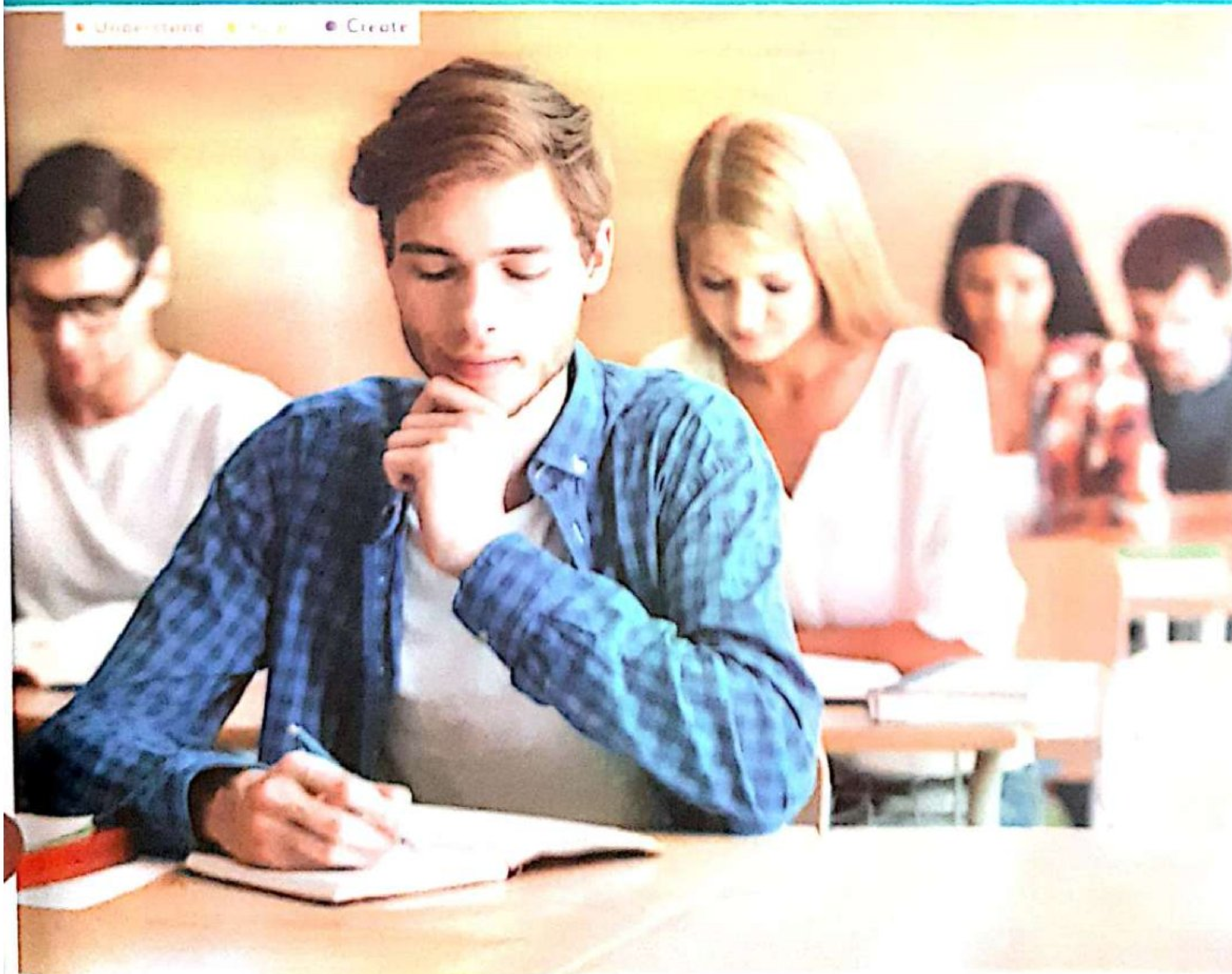
A Three-day Vocabulary Revision

القسم الأول المفردات الرئيسية والهامة

- بالترتيب الأبجدي: جميع المفردات الرئيسية والمفردات الأكثر أهمية المستهدفة في نواتج التعلّم والتي لن يخرج عنها الامتحان (١٠٦٦ كلمة).
- تدريبات قياسية متدرجة حسب مستويات هرم (بلوم) تقيس جميع مستويات التفكير - تدريبات مستقلة لكل حرف (١٧٣١ سؤال).

القسم الثاني التعريفات

- بالترتيب الأبجدي: جميع تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية المستهدفة في نواتج التعلّم والتي تمثل أولوية قصوى في الامتحان (٣٠٥ كلمة).
- تدريبات قياسية على هيئة امتحانات مصنفة (١٢ امتحان).



1 Exam Vocabulary

Aa

absolute(adj)	مُطْلَق - تام
absolutely(adv)	تمامًا - كلياً
accept(ed) (v)	يقبل
access(n)	صلاحية استخدام - حق الدخول
accessible(adj)	متاح
accuse(d) (v)	يتهم
achievable(adj)	مُمْكِنٌ إِنْجَازُهُ
achieve(d) (v)	يُنجز - يحقق
achievements(n)	إنجازات
acquit(ted) (v)	يُبَرِّئ - يُخلي سبيل
act(ed) (v)	يتصرف
active(adj)	نَشِط/نشيط
adapt(ed) to (v)	يتأقلم/يتكيَّف مع
addicted to (adj)	مُدمِن لـ ...
administrative(adj)	إداري
admirer(n)	مُعجَب - مُغرَم
adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى - يساند
adore (d) (v)	يعشق - يحب ... بشدة
advance(d) (v/n)	يتقدَّم - تَقَدُّم/تَطَوُّر
advanced(adj)	مُتقدِّم/مُتطور
advert = advertisement(n)	إعلان (عن سلعة او خدمة)
affairs(n)	شئون - أحداث
affectionately(adv)	بمَحَبَّة/ بمَوَدَّة
aid(ed) (v/n)	يساعد - مُساعدة
aim(ed) (n/v)	هدف - يَهدِف إلى
aircraft(n)	طائرة
alert(ed) (v)	يُنبِّه/يُحذِّر
alert(n/adj)	إشعار/ تنبيه - يقظ/مُنتبه
alleyway(n)	زقاق
alter(ed) (v)	يُغيِّر - يتغيَّر
alternative(n/adj)	بديل
amongst(prep)	بين
analyse(d) (v)	يُحلل
analysis(n)	تحليل
ancestors(n)	أجداد/أسلاف
angrily(adv)	بغضب
announce(d) (v)	يُعلن عن (خبر/قرار/تنبيه ...)
annoyed(adj)	متضايق - منزعج
anxious(adj)	متوتر/قَلِق

apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب لـ - يُطبِّق - يَسْري
appreciate(d) (v)	يُقدِّر/يُثمِّن
apprentice(n)	صبي؛ عامل تحت التمرين
apprenticeship(n)	تدريب مهني
approach(ed) (v/n)	يدنو من - نَهج/ تَوَجُّه/مَنحى
appropriate (adj)	ملائم
appropriately(adv)	على نحو ملائم
approximately(adj)	تقريباً
archaeological(adj)	أثريّ
archaeologist(n)	عالم آثار
archaeology(n)	علم الآثار
argue(d) (v)	يجادل/ يدعي
argument(n)	جدال - نقاش (حاد) - تبرير/حُجَّة
armour(n)	درع
around(adv/prep)	حوالي/حول
arrogant(adj)	مغرور - متغطرس
arrow(n)	سَهْم
artefacts(n)	تُحَف - قطع فنية
artificial (adj)	اصطناعي - مُصطنَع (غير حقيقي)
ashamed(adj)	خجول/ مَخزِيّ/ مُستَحٍ
aspect(n)	جانب - مَنْحَى
assess(ed) (v)	يُقيِّم - يُثمِّن
associated(adj)	مصحوب - مرتبط
association(n)	جمعية - اتحاد
assume(d) (v)	يدعي - يفترض
astonished(adj)	مَذهُول - شديد الاندهاش
astronaut(n)	رائد فضاء
astronomer(n)	عالم فلك
at the request of	بناء على طلب
atom(n)	الذَّرَّة
attach(ed) (v)	يُرفِق-يُرسِل كمُرفَق
attend(ed) (v)	يَحضُر - يَدْرس فى
attitude(n)	تَوَجُّه - وجهة نظر
audience(n)	الجمهور (المستمعين أو القُرَّاء)
authentic(adj)	حقيقي - أصلى
average(n/adj)	متوسط/مُعدَّل - عادي
averagely(adv)	فى المعدل / فى المتوسط

apart(adv)(adj)	منفردًا - منفصل	avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب/ يتحاشى
apart from	باستثناء - بعيدًا عن	award (ed) (v), (n)	يمنح جائزة - جائزة - منحة
app = application(n)	تطبيق حاسوبي - طلب التحاق (لوظيفة)	aware of(adj)	على علم بـ
application(n)	انضمام/تَقدُّم - تطبيق حاسوبي	awareness(n)	الوعي

Exercise On Letter Aa

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Your goal is .... only if you work hard to a plan.
   a. arrogant b. achievable c. absolute d. ashamed
2. He didn't make the .... choice at that situation.
   a. archaeological b. archaeologically c. appropriate d. appropriately
3. I don't have .... to the computer in this office. It is password-protected.
   a. access b. affair c. apprenticeship d. advert
4. She .... an evening language course to improve her speaking and listening skills.
   a. accepts b. announces c. approaches d. attends
5. "What do you aim at?" In this sentence, the word 'aim' is a/an ....
   a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
6. Robots are applications of .... intelligence.
   a. addicted b. archaeological c. artificial d. advanced
7. I got lost in the narrow .... of the old town.
   a. alleyways b. artefacts c. arrows d. affairs
8. This rule has no practical .... in the current case قضية/حالة.
   a. app b. application c. achievement d. a & b
9. The actor looked like a real knight in ....
   a. armour b. aspect c. association d. awareness
10. A secretary is a member of the .... staff of the company.
   a. authentic b. alternative c. alert d. administrative
11. He .... quickly to working as a night watchman.
   a. acquitted b. acted c. adapted d. adopted
12. I made a big mistake when I .... my friend of stealing my tablet. He was absent that day.
   a. appreciated b. applied c. assumed d. accused
13. Modern technology has had effects on all .... of life.
   a. armours b. aspects c. associations d. awareness
14. A charger is usually .... to a new mobile phone in the same package.
   a. attached b. analysed c. altered d. avoided
15. Now, there's a much better .... towards women's role in society.
   a. pause b. mist c. graph d. attitude
16. I don't like it when someone interferes يتدخل with my private ....
   a. access b. affairs c. apprenticeship d. advert

beg(ged) (v)	يتوسل إلى - يتسول	bride(n)	عروس
behave yourself.	أحسن التصرف.	brilliant(adj)	رائع - بارع - ذكي
behave(d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك	broadsheet(n)	صحيفة رسمية - القطع الكبير
beloved(adj)	محبوب	bubble(n)	فقاعة
belt(n)	حزام	burnout(n)	الإنهاك/استنفاد الطاقة
beneficial(adj)	مفيد	by accident (adv)	بالصدفة/عن غير قصد
benefit(ed) (n/v)	فائدة - يستفيد	benefactor(n)	متبرع/ مُتصدِّق - صاحب إحسان
bet - bet - bet(v)	يراهن		

Exercise On Letter Bb

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Following a .... diet is necessary to keep healthy.
   a. balanced b. bilingual c. boring d. brave
2. His mother always .... that he is number one in everything.
   a. brainstorms b. boasts c. bounces d. benefits
3. By nature, every girl dreams of the day when she is a .... in the white wedding dress.
   a. bride b. benefactor c. blacksmith d. bubble
4. The thief .... the night watchman on the head with a stick.
   a. behaved b. begged c. biased d. beat
5. This vitamin has a .... effect on your health.
   a. bated b. beneficial c. beloved d. bored
6. You can use my tablet. It ....
   a. is fully charged b. is fully in charge c. breaks into d. breaks down
7. When you ask him about something, he replies .... He is very proud of himself.
   a. beneficially b. basically c. boastfully d. by accident
8. This wall is .... painted. I have to repaint it.
   a. badly b. basically c. boastfully d. by accident
9. A .... is used to show statistics.
   a. balance b. bar chart c. bar graph d. b & c
10. The discussion with the experts helped us .... some new ideas.
    a. brainstorm b. boast c. bounce d. benefit
11. Teachers usually suffer from .... They exert too much effort.
    a. bargain b. benefit c. burnout d. bias
12. A .... tour guide speaks two languages.
    a. balanced b. bilingual c. boring d. brave
13. Samy .... the office when Ramy was away. He ran it efficiently.
    a. was charged b. was in charge of c. broke into d. broke down
14. Samy .... the office when Ramy was away. He stole some important documents.
    a. was charged b. was in charge of c. broke into d. broke down
15. Samy .... with robbing the office when Ramy was away.
    a. was charged b. was in charge of c. broke into d. broke down

16. When we boil water, ... of gas rise to the surface.
a. brides b. baskets c. bottles d. bubbles
17. To .... yourself means not to do things that annoy other people.
a. behave b. beg c. bias d. beat
18. I think .... against women does no longer exist.
a. bargain b. benefit c. burnout d. bias
19. If you seek trusted information and serious reports, then you can read a ....
a. background b. broadsheet c. blog d. bank
20. You won't enjoy that play. It is ....
a. balanced b. bilingual c. boring d. brave
21. We say someone is waiting with .... breath when they are waiting eagerly for something important to them.
a. bated b. beneficial c. beloved d. balanced
22. His love for his team .... his opinion.
a. behaves b. begs c. biases d. beats
23. Mr Mustafa's car always ....
a. is charged b. is in charge c. breaks into d. breaks down

2 Important vocabulary

24. He was .... enough to fight the gang on his own.
a. balanced b. bilingual c. boring d. brave
25. Try to keep your .... or you will fall.
a. balance b. bar chart c. bar graph d. b & c
26. The 'Lion King' is a cartoon my .... daughter likes.
a. bated b. beneficial c. beloved d. balanced
27. Try to .... from the facilities that educational academy offers.
a. brainstorm b. boast c. bounce d. benefit
28. "Many benefit from 'Decent Life Initiative'." In this sentence, the word 'benefit' is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. pronoun
29. "Many benefits are gained from 'Decent Life Initiative'." In this sentence, the word 'benefits' is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. pronoun
30. A .... is a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject.
a. background b. broadsheet c. blog d. bank
31. I dropped the tablet .... I did not mean to break it.
a. badly b. basically c. boastfully d. by accident
32. I called a .... to repair the horseshoes.
a. plumber b. benefactor c. blacksmith d. painter
33. The children .... to go out with their parents.
a. behaved b. begged c. biased d. beat

34. The child was .... the ball as if he was a professional basketballer.
   a. brainstorming   b. boasting   c. bouncing   d. benefiting
35. In Upper Egypt, most agricultural land is on the west .... of the Nile.
   a. background   b. broadsheet   c. blog   d. bank
36. We are .... saying the same thing. The difference is on some unimportant details.
   a. badly   b. basically   c. boastfully   d. badly
37. This second-hand car is a real ....
   a. bargain   b. blog   c. burnout   d. bias
38. A group of .... have set up a new charity in our neighbourhood.
   a. brides   b. benefactors   c. blacksmiths   d. bubbles
39. To apply for a job, I have to attach a personal photo with a white ....
   a. background   b. broadsheet   c. blog   d. bias

Cc

call(ed) on (phr. v)	يَزور
candidate(n)	مُرشَّح(لوظيفة/منصب)
candle(n)	شمعة
Cantonese(n)	اللغة الكانتونية
captivate(d) (v)	يأسر - يفتن
care(d) (v/n)	يرعي - رعاية
(career)direction(n)	تَوَجُه/تَحَوُّل (وظيفي)
carry(ied) on (phr. v)	يستمر في
carve(d) (v)	ينحت
case(n)	قضية - حالة/موقف
casualty(n)	خسارة - فَقْد - حالة وفاة
catch - caught (v)	يقبض علي - يصاب بـ (مرض)
catch up with (phr. v)	يواكب/يساير - يلحق بـ
catch up with your work	تلحق بعملك
categorise(d) (v)	يُصنِّف - يضع في تصنيف
category(n)	تصنيف
cause(d) (v/n)	يسبب - سبب
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ
celebration(n)	احتفال
celebrity(n)	شخص مشهور - الشهرة
centre(d) (v/n)	يتمركز - مَركَز
ceremony(n)	حفل تكريم / مراسم
certain(adj)	مُعيَّن/مُحدَّد
certificate(n)	شهادة
challenge (d) (v/n)	يتحدى - تَحَدِّي
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة
commit(ted) (v)	يرتكب/يقترف - يقوم بـ
committee(n)	لجنة
common sense(n)	حُسْنُ إدراك - حُسْنُ تَمْيِيز- شعور عام
comparison(n)	مقارنة
compensate(d) (v)	يُعوِّض
competitive(adj)	تنافُسي
complain(ed) (v)	يشكو - يتذمر
complicated (adj)	مُعقَّد/مُركَّب
concentrate(d) (v)	يُركِّز
concentration(n)	التركيز
conclude	يختتم - يستنتج - يَخْلُص إلي
conclusion(n)	الخلاصة/الخاتمة - استنتاج
conditions(n)	ظروف
conference call(n)	مُكالمة جماعية
confidence(n)	الثقة
confident(adj)	واثِق
confirm(ed) (v)	يؤكد أن
conflict(n)	صِراع
confusing(adj)	مُحيِّر/مُربِك
conquer(ed) (v)	يغزو - يتغلب علي
consequence(n)	نتيجة
consider(ed) (v)	يضع في الاعتبار - يفكر في
constant(adj)	ثابت - مستمر
contact details	معلومات التواصل
contact information	بيانات التواصل
contact(ed) (v/n)	يتصل بـ - اتصال/تواصل

championship(n)	بطولة
chance(n)	حظ/ مصادفة – فُرصة
characterize(d)(v)	يُمَيِّز
cheat(ed) (v/n)	يغش – غشاش
cheer(ed) (v)	يُهلل – يبتهج – يُبهج
cheerful(adj)	مبتهج/بشوش
chemist(n)	عالم الكيمياء – صيدلى
chivalry(n)	شَهامة/ فروسية/ مُرُوءة
chop(ped) (v)	يُقطع – يُجَزِّئ
chopsticks(n)	عيدان لتناول الطعام
citizen journalism(n)	صحافة المواطن
civilisation(n)	حضارة
claim(ed) (v)	يزعُم/يدَّعي
clarification(n)	التوضيح
classify(ied) (v)	يُصنِّف
clear off (phr. v)	يزيل – يتخلص من
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن/ مُحَدّد – وَاضِح
clerk(n)	مُوظف
click(ed) (v/n)	ينقر – نقرة (على الماوس)
client(n)	عميل/زبون
cliff(n)	مُنحدَر صخري
code(n)	قاعدة/دستور – شفرة
coffin(ed) (v) (n)	تابوت – يضع فى تابوت
coincidence (n)	مصادفة
colleague(n)	زميل عمل
colossal(adj)	جَسيم – هائل
column(n)	عمود
combine(d) (v)	يربط – يجمع/يضم – يتحد
come across(phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة
come back to	يعود إلي

contest (n)
context(n)
contribute(d) (v)
contribution(n)
convict(n)
convinced(adj)
cope(d) (v)
cope(d) with (v)
copyright(n)
cost - cost (n/v)
councillor(n)
court(n)
cover(ed) (v)
craft(n)
creation(n)
creative(adj)
creativity(n)
creature(n)
criminal(n/adj)
cross (ed) (v/adj)
crouch(ed) (v)
crowd(n)
cruel(adj)
cultural heritage
cultural(adj)
cure(d) (v/n)
curious(adj)
curriculum vitae (CV)
cycle(d) (n/v)
command(ed) (n/v)

championship(n)	بطولة	contest (n)	منافسة – صراع
chance(n)	حظ/ مصادفة – فُرصة	context(n)	سياق النَص
characterize(d)(v)	يُمَيز	contribute(d) (v)	يُساهم – يشارك
cheat(ed) (v/n)	يغش – غشاش	contribution(n)	مُسَاهَمَة – مُشَارَكَة
cheer(ed) (v)	يُهلِّل – يبتهج – يُبهج	convict(n)	مَسجُون – مُذنِب
cheerful(adj)	مبتهج/بشوش	convinced(adj)	مقتنع
chemist(n)	عالم الكيمياء – صيدلي	cope(d) (v)	يساير – يَتَصدَّى – يُذلِّل
chivalry(n)	شَهامة/ فروسية/ مُرُوءَة	cope(d) with (v)	يُساير – يتعاطي مع
chop(ped) (v)	يُقطع – يُجَزِّئ	copyright(n)	حق النشر والتأليف
chopsticks(n)	عيدان لتناول الطعام	cost - cost (n/v)	التكلفة – يتكلف
citizen journalism(n)	صحافة المواطن	councillor(n)	عضو مجلس – مستشار
civilisation(n)	حضارة	court(n)	ملعب – محكمة
claim(ed) (v)	يزعُم/يدَّعي	cover(ed) (v)	يُغطي
clarification(n)	التوضيح	craft(n)	حرفة يدوية
classify(ied) (v)	يُصنِّف	creation(n)	الخلق/إبداع
clear off (phr. v)	يزيل – يتخلص من	creative(adj)	إبداعي – مُبدع
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن/ مُحَدَّد – وَاضِح	creativity(n)	الإبداع
clerk(n)	مُوظف	creature(n)	مَخلوق/كائن
click(ed) (v/n)	ينقر – نقرة (على الماوس)	criminal(n/adj)	مُجرم – إجرامي
client(n)	عميل/زبون	cross (ed) (v/adj)	يَعبُر – غاضب /مُقاطِع
cliff(n)	مُنحدَر صخري	crouch(ed) (v)	يجلس القرفصاء
code(n)	قاعدة/دستور – شفرة	crowd(n)	حشد – تجمهَر
coffin(ed) (v) (n)	تابوت – يضع في تابوت	cruel(adj)	قاسي
coincidence (n)	مصادفة	cultural heritage	التراث الثقافي
colleague(n)	زميل عمل	cultural(adj)	ثقافي
colossal(adj)	جَسِيم – هائل	cure(d) (v/n)	علاج – يعالِج
column(n)	عمود	curious(adj)	فضولي/مُتطفل
combine(d) (v)	يربط – يجمع/يضم – يتحد	curriculum vitae (CV)	السيرة الذاتية
come across(phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة	cycle(d) (n/v)	دورة – يقود دراجة
come back to	يعود إلي	command(ed) (n/v)	أمر – يأمر

Exercise On Letter Cc

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Your classmates have achieved great progress. You need to exert more effort to .... them.
   a. catch up b. catch up with c. come across d. come back
2. Your classmates have achieved great progress. You need to exert more effort to ....
   a. catch up b. catch up with c. come across d. come back to
3. The final .... of the report shows that we made some achievements last year.
   a. conclusion b. creativity c. creation d. clarification

4. This man .... your dog frightens his children. How can you defend yourself ?
   a. carries on b. covers c. commits d. claims
5. He was .... of stealing money from the mall.
   a. compensated b. convicted c. cheered d. chopped
6. He doesn't look ...., so I will try to persuade him again.
   a. constant b. contemporary c. convinced d. cruel
7. The mosque has a lot of tall marble .... that support its high roof.
   a. columns b. colleagues c. codes d. cliffs
8. There were two .... in the accident.
   a. common senses b. casualties c. confidence d. confident
9. He is not a .... He did nothing wrong.
   a. client b. creature c. clerk d. criminal
10. After deep thought, I have .... that it is better for me to start my own business.
   a. concluded b. combined c. complained d. coped
11. Children will never love you if you are .... to them.
   a. clear-cut b. cruel c. colossal d. curious
12. Mr Mohammed .... COVID-19 twice last year.
   a. crouched b. changed c. caught d. complained
13. The new law criminalizes يُجرّم violating ....
   a. court b. context c. candidate d. copyright
14. This charity wouldn't help such a large number of poor people if it weren't for the .... of generous benefactors.
   a. contribution b. coincidence c. curriculum vitae d. consequence
15. Prison is the right place for those who .... crimes.
   a. carry on b. clear off c. commit d. claim
16. **A:** What do you think can .... a mother for the loss of her child? **B:** Nothing.
   a. compensate b. convict c. contact d. chop
17. Being .... makes others enjoy the time they spend with you.
   a. constant b. contemporary c. convinced d. cheerful
18. Respecting women is an act of ....
   a. citizen b. cost c. chivalry d. contest
19. There's an eternal .... between good and evil.
   a. contact b. conflict c. candle d. calamity
20. I don't know why I have made that great choice. It is a matter of ....
   a. common sense b. casualty c. contest d. confident
21. Those drug .... aren't allowed to take part in the Olympics.
   a. celebrities b. counsellors c. cheats d. candidates
22. Each word in the .... contributes to the total meaning.
   a. court b. context c. candidate d. copyright
23. You are employed to look after the office's ...., not to give them a bad impression.
   a. clients b. creatures c. contacts d. criminals

24. He couldn't .... with the stress of the new job, so he left it.
a. conclude b. confirm c. consider d. cope

25. Our meeting here is a .... None of us has arranged for it.
a. contribution b. coincidence c. curriculum vitae d. consequence

26. "She has been cross with her best friend since yesterday." The word 'cross' in this sentence is a/an ....
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

27. The police are still hunting some .... who have escaped from prison.
a. celebrities b. counsellors c. convicts d. candidates

28. You need a lawyer to represent you in a .... of law.
a. court b. context c. candidate d. copyright

29. Sama .... me to a table tennis game.
a. crouched b. challenged c. caught d. complained

30. You need a professional .... when you apply for a job.
a. contribution b. coincidence c. curriculum vitae d. consequence

31. "I never trust those cheats." The word 'cheats' here is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. preposition

32. **A:** Do you know what the .... of the problem is? **B:** Sure. Greed!
a. cause b. cost c. chivalry d. contest

33. I am sure a walk with your friends along the Nile bank will .... you up.
a. compensate b. convict c. cheer d. chop

34. The factory where I worked closed and I had to change my .... direction.
a. celebrity b. counsellor c. cheat d. career

35. He earns his living from his work as a .... in a shoe shop.
a. client b. creature c. clerk d. criminal

36. The farmers .... in the shade of a big tree to drink their tea.
a. crouched b. challenged c. caught d. complained

37. To me, Mr Hassan is .... one of the ideal teachers of English.
a. concluded b. confirmed c. considered d. coped

38. A diet is most effective when .... with exercise.
a. concluded b. combined c. complained d. contributed

39. I was pleased to .... my first teacher of English in an old-Cairo street after so long years.
a. catch up b. catch up with c. come across d. come back to

40. My mother was over the moon when I had decided to .... to live in my home village.
a. catch up b. catch up with c. come across d. come back

41. Rodayna has a .... goal. She wants to study medicine.
a. clear-cut b. cruel c. colossal d. curious

42. You need a sharp tool to .... this piece of wood.
a. compensate b. convict c. cheer d. chop

43. The lights went out and I used a .... to light the room.
a. contact b. conflict c. candle d. calamity

44. Unlike butterflies, sunflowers are not ....
a. clients b. creatures c. clerks d. criminals
45. It won't make any change if you go on .... to other people. Face your problems bravely.
a. crouching b. challenging c. catching d. complaining
46. His fear .... the suspicions شكوك of the police officer.
a. concluded b. confirmed c. considered d. coped
47. On giving up my diet, I put on a .... amount of weight.
a. clear-cut b. cruel c. colossal d. curious
48. .... journalism is less professional but more real.
a. Citizen b. Cost c. Chivalry d. Contest
49. I hope the dark clouds that block the sun will .... soon.
a. cover b. clear off c. commit d. claim
50. The town's chief .... is responsible for the public services such as water, electricity, and streets.
a. celebrity b. councillor c. cheat d. candidate

2 Important vocabulary

51. .... is the use of imagination or original ideas to make something new.
a. Conclusion b. Creativity c. Cooperation d. Clarification
52. He went bankrupt أفلَس as a .... of carelessness in running his business.
a. contribution b. coincidence c. curriculum vitae d. consequence
53. If he .... on wasting his time, he won't pass his exams.
a. carries b. covers c. commits d. claims
54. What made him lose the match is lack of ....
a. candidate b. casualty c. confidence d. confident
55. What made him lose the match is that he was not ....
a. candidate b. casualty c. confidence d. confident
56. Bibo is a football ....
a. celebrity b. counsellor c. cheat d. career
57. Your .... are the people you work with.
a. columns b. colleagues c. codes d. cliffs
58. I only entered the .... to make a personal achievement.
a. citizen b. cost c. chivalry d. contest
59. The new project includes the .... of 3,000 jobs.
a. conclusion b. creativity c. creation d. clarification
60. His income .... the needs of his small family.
a. carries on b. covers c. commits d. claims
61. The .... ringing of my mobile drives me mad. I will switch it off.
a. constant b. contemporary c. convinced d. cheerful
62. I wonder what would happen if that large rock fell off that high ....
a. college b. colleague c. code d. cliff

63. Our interfering old neighbour is always .... to know what we do (
a. clear-cut b. cruel c. colossal
64. Two .... have already been interviewed for the job.
a. courts b. contexts c. candidates
65. This lesson needs more .... to make it easy enough for average stu(
a. conclusion b. creativity c. creation
66. Um Kulthum was .... with Mohammed Abd El-Wahab.
a. constant b. contemporary c. convincing
67. Your .... details have to be included in your CV.
a. contact b. conflict c. candle
68. In Egypt, the criminal .... criminalizes any aggression اعتداء on (
a. column b. colleague c. code
69. "Some smartphones are cheap but most cost much." In this senter
is a/an ....
a. noun b. verb c. adjective

Dd

dam(med) (v/n)	يبني سد - سد	dialect(n)
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	die out (phr. v)
dark(adj)	مُظلِم - كئيب	diet(n)
debatable(adj)	مُثير للجَدَل	difference(n)
debate(n)	مناظرة - نقاش	dig up (phr. v)
debts(n)	ديون	digital(adj)
decipher(ed) (v)	يفك شفرة	digitheatre(n)
decline (n)	انخفاض - انهيار	disability(n)
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة - ينهار - يرفض	disabled(adj)
dedicated(adj)	مُخصَّص/مُكرَّس - متفانٍ	disappointed(adj)
deep-seated(adj)	مُتَأَصِّل/ مُتَجذِّر	disaster(n)
defeat(ed) (v/n)	يَهزِم - هزيمة	dislikes(n)
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	dismiss(ed)(v)
define(d) (v)	يُعرِّف	display(ed)(v/n)
definition(n)	تعريف	distant(adj)
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدى	distract(ed) (v)
delay(ed) (v/n)	يؤخِّر - يؤجِّل - تأخير/تأجيل	dive - dived/
deliberately(adv)	عمدًا/عن قصد	dove (v)
demand(ed) (v/n)	يتطلب - يستلزم - أمر - طلب	diversity(n)
demonstrate(d) (v)	يوضِّح/يُبيِّن/يُبرهن	document(n)
dentist's(n)	عيادة أسنان	dominant(adj)
deny(ied) (v)	يُنكِر	donate(d) (v)
department(n)	قسم - ديوان	dove(n)
depend(ed) (v)	يعتمد	Down's Syndrome(n)
depending on	حسب - استنادًا إلي	downwards(adv)
desert(ed) (v/n)	يهجر - يترك - صحراء	drawback(n)

63. Our interfering old neighbour is always .... to know what we do or say.
   a. clear-cut   b. cruel   c. colossal   d. curious
64. Two .... have already been interviewed for the job.
   a. courts   b. contexts   c. candidates   d. copyrights
65. This lesson needs more .... to make it easy enough for average students to understand.
   a. conclusion   b. creativity   c. creation   d. clarification
66. Um Kulthum was .... with Mohammed Abd El-Wahab.
   a. constant   b. contemporary   c. convincing   d. cheerful
67. Your .... details have to be included in your CV.
   a. contact   b. conflict   c. candle   d. calamity
68. In Egypt, the criminal .... criminalizes any aggression اعتداء on others.
   a. column   b. colleague   c. code   d. cliff
69. "Some smartphones are cheap but most cost much." In this sentence, the word 'cost' is a/an ....
   a. noun   b. verb   c. adjective   d. adverb

Dd

dam(med) (v/n)	يبني سد – سد	dialect(n)	لهجة/لَكْنَة
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	die out (phr. v)	ينقرض/يندثر
dark(adj)	مُظلِم – كئيب	diet(n)	نظام غذائي
debatable(adj)	مُثير للجَدَل	difference(n)	اختلاف/فرق
debate(n)	مناظرة – نقاش	dig up (phr. v)	يقتلع – يعثر على – يستخرج
debts(n)	ديون	digital(adj)	رقمي
decipher(ed) (v)	يفك شفرة	digitheatre(n)	المسرح الرقمي
decline (n)	انخفاض – انهيار	disability(n)	صعوبة/إعاقة
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة – ينهار – يرفض	disabled(adj)	مُعاق
dedicated(adj)	مُخصَّص/مُكرَّس – متفانٍ	disappointed(adj)	مُحبَط – خائب الأمل
deep-seated(adj)	مُتأصِّل/ مُتَجذِّر	disaster(n)	كارثة/مصيبة
defeat(ed) (v/n)	يَهزِم – هزيمة	dislikes(n)	الأشياء غير المُفضلة
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	dismiss(ed)(v)	يفصل من العمل – يرفض
define(d) (v)	يُعرِّف	display(ed)(v/n)	يَعرِض – عَرْض
definition(n)	تعريف	distant(adj)	بعيد – ناء
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدى	distract(ed) (v)	يُشتِّت – يصرف انتباه
delay(ed) (v/n)	يؤخِّر – يؤجِّل – تأخير/تأجيل	dive - dived/	يغوص – يندفع لأسفل –
deliberately(adv)	عمدًا/عن قصد	dove (v)	ينخفض
demand(ed) (v/n)	يتطلب – يستلزم – أمر – طلب	diversity(n)	التنوع – التعددية
demonstrate(d) (v)	يوضِّح/يُبيِّن/يُبرهِن	document(n)	وثيقة
dentist's(n)	عيادة أسنان	dominant(adj)	سائد – مُنتشِر – مُسَيطِر
deny(ied) (v)	يُنكِر	donate(d) (v)	يتبرَّع
department(n)	قسم – ديوان	dove(n)	طائر الحمام
depend(ed) (v)	يعتمد	Down's Syndrome(n)	متلازمة داون
depending on	حسب – استنادًا إلي	downwards(adv)	لأسفل – نزولًا
desert(ed) (v/n)	يهجر – يترك – صحراء	drawback(n)	عائق – سلبية

deserve(d) (v)	يستحق	drug(n)	دواء - عقار - مخدّر
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمّر	dusty(adj)	مُغبّر / يَعلوهُ الغُبارُ
determination(n)	إصرار - عزم	duties(n)	الواجبات
determined(adj)	مُصمّم - عازم	diagram(n)	رسم توضيحي
devoted(adj)	مُخلِص/مُكرّس		

Exercise On Letter Dd

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I .... not let my parents down أخذل والديّ.
   a. defy b. deny c. display d. dare
2. I have .... trust in Mr Rasheedy. He is trustworthy.
   a. disappointed b. deep-seated c. disabled d. dominated
3. A pessimistic متشائم person looks only at the .... side of life.
   a. dedicated b. devoted c. dark d. digital
4. I was shocked when I was told that my offer had been ....
   a. declined b. deserted c. devoted d. dug up
5. He fell into .... and was sent to prison.
   a. debate b. debt c. diet d. dialect
6. Take this .... only under your physician's supervision.
   a. document b. dam c. diversity d. drug
7. It is expected that a thief .... stealing anything.
   a. defies b. denies c. displays d. dares
8. When I was in hospital, I was looked after by a good nurse – completely ....
   a. dedicated b. debatable c. distant d. deliberate
9. I can't .... my family to work and live abroad. I look after my old parents.
   a. decline b. desert c. dismiss d. dig up
10. Your help has saved me from a total ....
    a. drug b. diversity c. document d. disaster
11. The exam results are .... online.
    a. defied b. denied c. displayed d. dared
12. Esraa looked .... when her father refused to let her join the school trip.
    a. disappointed b. deep-seated c. disabled d. dominant
13. My son Ahmed is one of Al-Ahly's .... fans.
    a. dusty b. devoted c. dark d. digital
14. China has started to become .... in the international car market.
    I think it will control the market in a few years.
    a. disappointed b. deep-seat c. disabled d. dominant
15. He was sad when he was .... from his job after twenty years of dedicated work.
    a. declined b. deserted c. dismissed d. dug up
16. .... control river water.
    a. Documents b. Dams c. Diversities d. Drugs

17. I asked one of the cleaners to clean the .... desks.
a. dusty b. devoted c. dark d. digital
18. The team of archaeologists have just .... a huge golden statue.
a. declined b. deserted c. dismissed d. dug up
19. "I can't eat nuts. This demands strong teeth." The word 'demand' here is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. preposition

2 Important vocabulary

20. Don't try to attract attention by .... the rules of the school.
a. defying b. denying c. displaying d. daring
21. Being .... doesn't mean one can't enjoy their lives.
a. disappointing b. deep-seated c. disabled d. dominant
22. A smartphone is one of the devices of .... technology.
a. dusty b. devoted c. dark d. digital
23. Don't build on the findings of this research as they are still ...., not finally proven.
a. dedicated b. debatable c. distance d. deliberate
24. Our military experts could .... the enemy's code.
a. delay b. distract c. decipher d. defend
25. There was a .... between the two scientists about a scientific issue.
a. debate b. debt c. diet d. dialect
26. We need to look after endangered species or they will soon ....
a. donate b. depend c. defeat d. die out
27. This .... proves that you own this flat.
a. document b. dam c. diversity d. drug
28. He is a .... relative, not a close one.
a. dedicated b. debatable c. distant d. deliberate
29. My sister wanted me to .... how I study my English language lessons.
a. delay b. distract c. decipher d. demonstrate
30. The bad student .... destroyed his tablet in order not to take the exam.
a. deliberately b. downwards c. distantly d. deep-seatedly
31. The high-protein .... is good. It has helped me lose 25 kilograms in three months.
a. debate b. debt c. diet d. dialect
32. I have decided to......... my old clothes and toys to an orphanage ملجأ أيتام.
a. donate b. depend c. defeat d. die out
33. One of the parents' .... is to teach their children how to be good citizens.
a. determinations b. drawbacks c. duties d. diagrams
34. .... of opinions is a healthy phenomenon.
a. Document b. Dam c. Diversity d. Drug
35. The flight was .... owing to bad weather conditions.
a. delayed b. distracted c. deciphered d. demonstrated
36. In snowy areas, the branches of trees point .... because of cold weather in Canada.
a. deliberately b. downwards c. distantly d. deep-seatedly

37. All Arabs understand the Egyptian .... of Arabic.
a. debate b. debt c. diet d. dialect

38. You can .... on Rokaya. She is a responsible person.
a. donate b. depend c. defeat d. die out

39. His .... helped him achieve his goal.
a. determination b. drawback c. definition d. diagram

40. The loud noise of our busy street .... me from concentrating on my work.
a. delays b. distracts c. deciphers d. demonstrates

41. Teachers sometimes use .... as teaching aids.
a. determinations b. drawbacks c. duties d. diagrams

Ee

easternmost(adj)	فى / من أقصي الشرق	establish(ed) (v)	يُنشئ - يُوطِّد
economic(adj)	اقتصادي	estimate(d) (v)	يُقدِّر
economics(n)	علم الاقتصاد	eternal(adj)	أزلي/أبدي
editorial(n)	افتتاحية	evacuate(d) (v)	يغادر/يرحل عن - يُفرِّغ/ يُجلِي
effect(n)	أثر - نتيجة		
effective(adj)	مُؤثِّر/فعَّال	evaluate(d) (v)	يُقيِّم - يُقدِّر
effectively(adv)	بفاعلية	event(n)	مُناسَبَة - حَدَث
effectiveness(n)	فاعلية - تأثير	evidence(n)	دليل
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	evolve(d) (v)	يتطور
efficient(adj)	كفء	exaggerate(d) (v)	يبالغ في
effort(n)	جهد	exaggeration(n)	مُبالَغَة/ مُغَالاة
elaborate(adj)	مُركَّب - مُتقَن - مُعقَّد	excellence(n)	التَمَيُّز - الكفاءة
elastic(n/adj)	مطاط - مَطّاطي	except for	فيما عدا
elderly(adj)	كبير السن	exception(n)	استثناء
electric-powered (adj)	يعمل بالكهرباء	excerpt(ed)(v/n)	يقتبس - مُقتَطَف/اقتباس
elegant(adj)	أنيق - كَيِّس/ ذكي	exhausted(adj)	مُنهَك/مُجهَد/مُرهَق
embarrassed(adj)	مُحرَج - مُرتَبِك	exhibits(n)	المعروضات
embrace(d) (v)	يَتَبَنَّي - يعانق - يحتوي	exist(ed) (v)	يوجد
emergency(n)	حالة طوارئ	expand(ed) (v)	يتوسع/يتمدد - يُوسِّع
emotional(adj)	عاطفي	expectations(n)	أحلام - تَطَلُّعات
employment(n)	وظيفة - التوظيف - التشغيل	expedition(n)	بعثة استكشافية
endanger(ed) (v)	يُعرِّض للخطر	expense(n)	تكلفة - نفقة
endangered(adj)	مُعرَّض للخطر	experience (n)	تجربة حياتية/معايشة - خبرة
enquire(d) (v)	يستفسر	experience(d) (v)	يواجه/ يعايش - يتعرض لـ - يُجرِّب
entertain(ed)(v)	يسلي - يرفه عن		
entertaining(adj)	مُسَلِّي/مُمتِع	experiment(ed) (v/n)	يُجري تجربة /يُجرِّب - تجربة
enthusiastic(adj)	مُتحمِّس- شغوف	explanation(n)	شرح/توضيح - تفسير
entire(adj)	كامل	explore(d) (v)	يستكشف
entrepreneur(n)	رائد أعمال	extended(adj)	مُمتَد
entrepreneurial(adj)	ريادي - ينطوي على مجازفة	external(adj)	خارجي

38. He didn't provide any .... for rejecting the offer.
a. employment b. expectation c. expedition d. explanation
39. An .... engine causes no air pollution at all.
a. experienced b. electric-powered c. easternmost d. extended
40. The research we are doing will help with .... the effect of using smartphones on children's eyes.
a. evaluating b. evolving c. endangering d. exaggerating
41. I read an .... from your new novel. It's really great.
a. expense b. experience c. excerpt d. exception
42. We went on a trekking .... in the jungle.
a. employment b. expectation c. expedition d. explanation
43. I do not .... when I say that my parents are everything to me.
a. evaluate b. evolve c. endanger d. exaggerate
44. The company will pay the hotel and travel ....
a. expenses b. exhibits c. excerpts d. expectations
45. All newspaper .... have celebrated the great role Egypt has played in the crisis.
a. evidences b. editorials c. extents d. excepts
46. This charity looks after .... citizens who suffer from old-age problems.
a. eternal b. elastic c. elderly d. economic

Ff

fable(n)	حكاية رمزية - خرافة	first(n)	أول - بداية
facilities(n)	امتيازات - تسهيلات - مرافق	fit(n)	نوبة - إنفجار
factors(n)	عوامل	float(ed) (v)	يطفو
factual(adj)	حقيقي - مُتعلِّق بالحقائق	flood(ed) (v/n)	يفيض - يغمر بالمياه - الفيضان
faint(ed) (v)	يُغمي عليه - يفقد الوعى		
fair(adj)	عادل/مُنصف	flow(ed) (v)	يتدفق
fascinate(d) (v)	يَفتِن - يستهوى - يجتذب	fluent(adj)	مُفوَّه/طليق اللسان
fascinating(adj)	خلّاب/رائع	fluently(adv)	بطلاقة
fast-paced(adj)	سريع الوتيرة	follow-up(n)	متابعة - مُلحق/جزء تالي
fear (ed)(v/n)	يخشى / خشية / خوف	force(d) (v/n)	يُجبر - يُرغِم - قوة
feedback(n)	التغذية الراجعة - نتائج	forms(n)	أشكال/صور
feel(v/n)	شعور	fort(n)	حصن/قلعة
female(n/adj)	أنثى - نسائي	fortunate(adj)	محظوظ
fiancé(n)	خاطب	fortunately(adv)	لحُسن الحظ
field(n)	مجال - حقل	fortune(n)	ثروة - الحظ
fierce(adj)	عنيف/شرس	forum(n)	مُنتدي
fiercely(adv)	بعنف	freezing(adj)	مُتجمِّد - شديد البرودة
fight for freedom	يقاتل من أجل الحرية	from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا
figure(n)	رقم - إحصائية - شخصية بارزة	frown(ed) (v)	يعبس/يقطب جبينه
file(n)	مَبْرَد - ملَف	frustrated(adj)	مُحبَط
finalist(n)	متأهل للأدوار النهائية	full-time(adj)	بدوام كامل
financially(adv)	ماليًا/من الناحية المالية	function(n)	وظيفة
find ... guilty	تَثْبُت إدانة ...	funeral(n)	جنازة
fine line(n)	خط رفيع	finding(n)	اكتشاف - نتيجة بحث

Exercise On Letter Ff

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. "He made a .... from his successful businesses." The missing word means 'a lot of money'.
   a. first b. fable c. fortune d. flood
2. ...., nobody was hurt in the car accident.
   a. Fortunately b. Financially c. Fiercely d. Fluently
3. It is part of human nature that one .... for their life.
   a. forces b. finds c. fascinates d. fears
4. Taken by surprise, I .... a little but soon recovered.
   a. frowned b. felt c. floated d. flooded
5. He has a .... job. He is busy for six days a week.
   a. frustrated b. fascinating c. full-time d. factual
6. A high .... means a lot of water is stored behind the dam.
   a. first b. fable c. fortune d. flood
7. Her .... insists that they get married next May.
   a. fort b. funeral c. fiancé d. figure
8. In a kitchen, a .... is used to sharpen knives.
   a. file b. field c. follow-up d. finding
9. It was .... when I went out in the early morning.
   a. fluent b. freezing c. fortunate d. fed up
10. The beauty of sunrise .... me.
    a. forces b. fights c. fascinates d. fears
11. Being lucky means you are ....
    a. fluent b. fed up c. fortunate d. freezing
12. "The Rabbit and its Mother" is a great ....
    a. first b. fable c. fortune d. flood
13. We all are .... opposing to any aggression against the Palestinian people.
    a. unfortunately b. financially c. fiercely d. fluently
14. In her first anatomy تشريح lecture, Rodayna .... on seeing a dead body.
    a. frustrated b. floated c. flowed d. fainted
15. It was not wise of him to .... against a bully who has nothing to lose.
    a. force b. fight c. fascinate d. fear

2 Important vocabulary

16. According to official ...., the country has 60 million internet users.
    a. forts b. funerals c. fiancés d. figures
17. He has a well-paid job. This means he is .... independent.
    a. fortunately b. financially c. fiercely d. fluently
18. "El-Feel Al-Azraq 2" is a .... of "El-Feel Al-Azraq 1".
    a. file b. field c. follow-up d. finding

19. A: If you put a piece of wood in water, does it sink? B: No. It ....

a. floods b. floats c. flows d. faints

20. The high cost of living .... a lot of people to do hard work most of the time.

a. forces b. fights c. fascinates d. fears

21. We all were caught in a .... of laughter when we saw a cat attack and frighten a large dog that ran away from it.

a. function b. fierce c. facility d. fit

22. Pioneers always achieve ....

a. firsts b. fables c. fortunes d. floods

23. A TV presenter is supposed to speak ....

a. fortunately b. financially c. fiercely d. fluently

24. My uncle is an expert in the .... of biochemistry.

a. file b. field c. follow-up d. finding

25. Our town lacks good shopping .... We have to travel a long distance to the nearest city to shop.

a. functions b. fierces c. facilities d. frowns

26. .... is a synonym of extremely interesting.

a. Frustrated b. Fascinating c. Full-time d. Factual

27. The attackers couldn't enter the town because it was protected by a strong ....

a. fort b. funeral c. fiancé d. forum

28. The scientists are still discussing the great .... of the last research.

a. fiancés b. funerals c. forts d. findings

29. Her .... look at him shows she is furious.

a. function b. fierce c. facility d. fit

30. I was .... as I couldn't persuade him to change his mind.

a. frustrated b. fascinating c. full-time d. factual

31. All in complete silence, we followed the .... of our kind neighbour.

a. fort b. funeral c. fiancé d. figures

32. The Nile River .... from south through eastern Africa.

a. feels b. floats c. flows d. faints

33. Every button in the keyboard has a ....

a. function b. fierce c. finding d. flood

Gg

gain(ed) (v)	يكتسب	go on(phr. v)	يحدُث - يستمر
gap(n)	فجوة - ثغرة	grab(bed) (v)	يجذب/ينتزع
gatekeeper(n)	بواب - حارس عقار	graduate(d) (n/v)	خرّيج - يتخرج
gateway(n)	بوابة/ مَعبَر	graduation(n)	التخرُّج
gather(ed) (v)	يتجمع/يحتشد	graph(n)	رسم بياني
generate(d) (v)	يولّد	grateful(adj)	شاكرٌ للجَميل/ ممتن
generation(n)	جيل - توليد الكهرباء	green technology	تكنولوجيا صديقة للبيئة
generous(adj)	كريم	grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع /مُتأفّف
get away (phr. v)	يهرب	guard(ed) (v/n)	يحرُس - حارس

get engaged	يرتبط – يخطب – ينشغل	guide(d) (v/n)	يُرشد – مرشد
gloomy(adj)	كئيب – متشائم	guilty(adj)	مُذنب
glossy(adj)	لامع – براق		

Exercise On Letter Gg

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Being .... to others encourages them to help you again and again.
   a. grumpy b. grateful c. gloomy d. guilty
2. A good hook of an essay .... the readers' attention.
   a. gets away b. guides c. grabs d. gets engaged
3. The .... didn't allow us to enter until he called the landlord.
   a. graph b. gateway c. gap d. gatekeeper
4. My father says there is nothing worse than making friends with a .... person.
   a. grumpy b. grateful c. green d. generous
5. I am happy for her! She .... yesterday.
   a. got away b. guided c. grabbed d. got engaged
6. The car broke down and blocked the ....
   a. graph b. gateway c. guard d. gatekeeper
7. A .... person makes you feel that things will not improve.
   a. guilty b. grateful c. gloomy d. generous
8. The thief managed to .... with the jewellery he'd stolen.
   a. get away b. guide c. grab d. get engaged
9. He was found .... of kidnapping two children.
   a. guiltless b. guilty c. generous d. gloomy

2 Important vocabulary

10. He is not only .... with his money, but with his time and effort as well.
    a. grumpy b. grateful c. gloomy d. generous
11. .... technology does not harm the environment.
    a. Green b. Graduation c. Generation d. Gain
12. It is the job of a doorman to .... the front door.
    a. gather b. go on c. guard d. graduate
13. The GPS .... us to the location.
    a. got away b. guided c. grabbed d. got engaged
14. It is easier to see what is happening if we put the ratios on a ....
    a. graph b. gateway c. gap d. gatekeeper
15. "He's a graduate of the Royal College." The word 'graduate' in this sentence is a/an ....
    a. verb b. adverb c. pronoun d. noun
16. To .... means 'to continue'.
    a. gather b. go on c. guard d. graduate
17. Education is an investment in our young ....
    a. green b. graduation c. generations d. gains

18. The big .... between his income and his spending made him get into debt.
a. graph b. gateway c. gap d. gatekeeper
19. I look forward to the day when I .... from university.
a. gather b. go on c. guard d. graduate
20. The children .... to watch their favourite cartoon.
a. gathered b. guided c. guarded d. graduated

Hh

hacker(n)	قرصان - مُخترِق	heritage(n)	تُراث
half-brother(n)	أخ غير شقيق	hidden(adj)	مَخْفِي/مُخبأ
hammer(n)	شاكوش	highlight(ed) (v/n)	يُبرِز - الجزء الأبرز
hand in (phr. v)	يُسلِّم (الشخص مسئول)	hold - held - held(v)	يحتوي - يمسك - يُقيم
hand(ed) (v)	يُسلِّم (شيء) باليد	hold on to (phr.v)	يتشبث بـ
handcuffs(n)	قيود (كلابشات) اليدين	homesick(adj)	لديه حنين للوطن
handle(d) (n/v)	مقبض - يتصرف في/يتعامل مع	honest(adj)	أمين
hang - hung (v)	يُعلق	honour(ed) (v/n)	يُكرِّم - شرف
hang(ed) (v)	يشنق/يَعدِم	honourable(adj)	شريف/مُبجَّل
hanging(adj)	مُعَلَّق	hopefully(adv)	من المأمول - بشكل مُبشِّر
hare(n)	أرنب برِّي	human being	إنسان/كائن بشري
have a place in heart	يَهْوَي/يُحب	human resources	الموارد البشرية
healing(n)	التئام - إبراء- شفاء	humble(adj)	متواضع
helpfulness(n)	مساعدة - فائدة - نفع	humour(n)	الفكاهة - السخرية
heritage site(n)	موقع تراث	hunt(ed) (v)	يطارد/يلاحق - يوسوس

Exercise On Letter Hh

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The .... of this chopper is made of wood.
a. hammer b. handcuff c. handle d. humour
2. The document must be .... to Mr Ayman in person.
a. held on b. handed in c. honoured d. haunted
3. In an interview, you need to .... your skills and qualifications.
a. honour b. hang c. handle d. highlight
4. China makes the best use of its ...., especially in manufacturing.
a. half-brothers b. human being's c. human resources d. heritage sites
5. My father has had a long and .... career as a teacher.
a. homesick b. honourable c. hidden d. hanging
6. I asked the boy on the tree to .... to a strong branch in order not to fall.
a. hold on b. hand in c. honour d. haunt
7. This is a difficult situation which needs to be .... carefully.
a. had b. hanged c. handled d. highlighted
8. Saint Catherine in Sinai is an important ....
a. half-brother b. human being c. human resource d. heritage site

9. .... stop a convict from using their arms.
a. Hammers b. Handcuffs c. Handles d. Harbours

10. The .... of the broken arm bones needs at least a month.
a. healing b. hare c. heritage d. hacker

11. He went to the police station and admitted committing the crime because his feeling of guilt .... him day and night.
a. hides b. hands c. honours d. haunts

12. All .... should have the same rights regardless of colour or belief.
a. half-brothers b. human beings c. human resources d. heritage sites

13. He hit the rock with a heavy .... to break it down.
a. hammer b. handcuff c. handle d. humour

14. Despite his important position in his society, he is ....
a. homesick b. hanging c. humble d. hopeful

15. .... have one parent in common, either the father or the mother.
a. Half-brothers b. Human beings c. Human resources d. Heritage sites

16. His high sense of .... made him a comedy star.
a. homesickness b. heeling c. honour d. humour

2 Important vocabulary

17. Great scientists have to be .... and given top positions in their society.
a. held b. handed c. honoured d. haunted

18. I carefully .... the painting on the wall.
a. hanged b. hung c. handled d. highlighted

19. If someone has a place in your ...., then you love them.
a. heart b. haunt c. hang d. highlight

20. To be ...., this play is not a penalty.
a. homesick b. humble c. hidden d. honest

21. An urgent meeting was .... to discuss the emergent situation.
a. held b. handed c. honoured d. haunted

22. The police found the stolen money .... in a box on the roof of an old house.
a. homesick b. honourable c. hidden d. hanging

23. The trap caught a big male ....
a. healing b. hare c. heritage d. hacker

24. ...., we will win the next match.
a. Hope b. Hopeless c. Hopeful d. Hopefully

25. He was .... for Egypt after only two weeks in Australia.
a. homesick b. honourable c. hidden d. hanging

26. Don't open any links from this email. It has been sent by a ....
a. healing b. hare c. heritage d. hacker

27. There are a lot of spider webs .... from the ceiling.
a. homesick b. honourable c. hidden d. hanging

Ii

ideals(n)	مُثل عليا
identify(ied) (v)	يُحدِّد هويَّة - يتعرَّف على
identity(n)	الهويَّة
ignore(d) (v)	يتجاهل
illustrate(d) (v)	يُوضِّح
illustrated(adj)	مُصَوَّر - موضَّح بالصور
illustration(n)	رسم توضيحي - توضيح
imaginary(n)	خيالي
immediately(adv)	حالاً
immerse(d)(v)	يُبهر - يَدمج - يَغمُر
immersive(adj)	مُبهِر- شديد الجاذبية
immigrant(n)	مهاجر
impact(ed) (v/n)	يؤثر - أثر - تأثير
impatient(adj)	متعجل/نافذ الصبر
implement(ed) (v)	يُطبِّق/يُنفِّذ
implement(n)	أداة - آلة
importance(n)	أهمية
impress(ed) (v)	يُبهر - يثير إعجاب
impressed(adj)	مُنبَهِر
impression(n)	انطباع
impressive(adj)	مُبهر
improve(d) (v)	يَتَحسَّن - يُحسِّن
in between	متوسط - بين
in charge	مسئول - في موقع مسئولية
in debt	مَدين (عليه ديون)
inaccurate(adj)	غير دقيق
incident(n)	واقعة - موقف عارض - حَدَث
including(prep)	بما في ذلك - مشتملاً
inconvenient(adj)	غير ملائم
increase(d) (v/n)	يزداد - زيادة - يزيد
incredible(adj)	رائع/خرافي - غير معقول
independent(adj)	مُستقل
indicate(d)(v)	يوضح/يشير إلي
individual(n/adj)	فرد - فردي
inequality(n)	عدم المساواة
influence(d) (v/n)	يؤثِّر علي - تأثير
ingredients(n)	عناصر - مكونات

inhabitant(n)	ساكن (أحد السكان) - مقيم
inherit(ed) (v)	يرث
initial(adj)	مبدئي
initiative(n/adj)	مُبَادَرَة - تمهيدي - مبدئي
innovate(d) (v)	يبتكر
innovation(n)	الابتكار/الإبداع
innovative(adj)	ابتكاريّ/ إبداعيّ
inspiration(n)	إلهام/وحي/حافز
inspire(d) (v)	يُلهِم - يُحفز - يختلق
inspiring(adj)	ملهَم - محفز - مثير
install a software	يُنَصِّب برنامج
install(ed) (v)	يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب(برنامج)
instant(adj)	فوري - لحظي
intellectual(adj)	عقلي - فِكري
intelligence(n)	ذكاء
intend(ed) (v)	ينوي
interactive(adj)	تفاعلي
interest(ed) (v/n)	يُثير اهتمام - اهتمام
intern(n)	مُتدرب مهني
internship(n)	التدريب المهني - الزمالة - الامتياز
interpersonal(adj)	بَين الأشخاص
interpret(ed) (v)	يُفسِّر/يُحلِّل - يترجم
interrupt(ed) (v)	يُقاطِع
interviewee(n)	ضيف الحوار
interviewer(n)	المُحاور
intricate(adj)	متشابك - معقد
introduce(d) (v)	يُصدِر - يُقدِّم - يطرح
invent(ed) (v)	يخترع - يختلق/يؤلف
inventor(n)	مُخترِع
investigate(d) (v)	يُحقِّق في - يتقصَّى
investigator(n)	مُحقِّق
involve(d) (v)	يتضمن/يشتمل على - يستلزم
isolated(adj)	مُنعزِل - مُتَفَرِّق
issue(n)	قضيَّة - مشكلة
IT= information technology(n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
inhabit(ed) (v)	يسكن/يقطن

Exercise On Letter Ii

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. My elder brother's .... success story has motivated me.
   a. interpersonal b. inspiring c. impatient d. isolated

2. Mr Mohammed .... his students with his confidence and hopefulness.
a. investigates b. innovates c. identifies d. inspires
3. The police have known the real .... of the bombers.
a. identity b. innovation c. initiative d. importance
4. It is better if you .... beans in water for a few hours before cooking them.
a. install b. implement c. immerse d. inherit
5. A product is .... when it is new, different, and better than the products that existed before.
a. innovative b. inconvenient c. independent d. impressed
6. The team's performance was so .... that all fans were in great excitement.
a. immersive b. individual c. impressive d. a & c
7. He always makes mistakes owing to the fact that he is ....
a. interpersonal b. inspiring c. impatient d. isolating
8. Successful role models are sources of ....
a. internship b. illustration c. incident d. inspiration
9. The twentieth century was marked by .... in all fields of science and technology.
a. identity b. innovation c. initiative d. importance
10. You need to .... this software in order to open sound files.
a. install b. implement c. immerse d. inherit
11. I began work at Microsoft as an unpaid ....
a. inequality b. impact c. in debt d. intern
12. My grandfather's health .... a lot in the fresh air of the countryside.
a. invented b. influenced c. improved d. impressed
13. Fingerprints helped the police to .... the criminal.
a. install b. innovate c. identify d. inspire
14. A lot of students apply for school ....
a. internships b. illustrations c. incidents d. inspirations
15. Essam .... the family house and renewed it.
a. installed b. implemented c. immersed d. inherited
16. Traditionally, white clothes are .... in a funeral.
a. innovative b. inconvenient c. independent d. impressed
17. I intend to make a complaint to the person ....
a. inequality b. impact c. in debt d. in charge
18. Don't let my objection .... your decision. It is all up to you.
a. invent b. influence c. improve d. impress
19. "She had no influence on me." In this sentence, 'influence' is a/an ....
a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. pronoun
20. What he says is .... I don't believe it.
a. incredible b. individual c. impressive d. immersive
21. "I've booked tickets for everyone including you." The word 'including' here is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. preposition

22. The road is locked due to an ....
a. internship b. illustration c. incident d. inspiration
23. We won't know whether the new policy is successful or not unless it is actually ....
a. intended b. implemented c. immersed d. inherited
24. The writer .... the incidents and characters of this film. None of them is real.
a. invented b. influenced c. improved d. impressed
25. He replied to my message ....
a. impatient b. impatience c. immediate d. immediately

2 Important vocabulary

26. Mr Mohammed is good at .... new teaching methods.
a. interrupting b. introducing c. impressing d. inhabiting
27. I've always supported you except for very few .... cases when I was away.
a. interpersonal b. inspiring c. impatient d. isolated
28. It is necessary to leave a good .... in a job interview.
a. impression b. illustration c. incident d. internship
29. An .... is supposed to have the skill and experience that help them make sure if someone is guilty or innocent.
a. interviewee b. immigrant c. inhabitant d. investigator
30. An honest writer never includes .... information in their writings.
a. intellectual b. inaccurate c. intricate d. interactive
31. .... is the ability to make decisions and take actions without waiting for someone to tell you what to do.
a. Identity b. Innovation c. Initiative d. Importance
32. The visitors were extremely .... by the performance.
a. innovative b. inconvenient c. independent d. impressed
33. Some members of the staff suffer from .... in pay and overtime.
a. inequality b. impact c. debt d. internship
34. In successful organisations, there's no room for .... decisions.
a. innovative b. individual c. impressive d. immersive
35. Most people .... women's silence as satisfaction رضا.
a. ignore b. illustrate c. interest d. interpret
36. Visiting the Nile Museum is .... in the trip's program.
a. interrupted b. introduced c. involved d. inhabited
37. .... relationships are very important in teamwork.
a. Interpersonal b. Inspired c. Impatient d. Isolated
38. I have drawn a lot of .... of children's books.
a. internships b. illustrations c. incidents d. inspirations
39. The .... of Aswan are famous for their generosity and kind hearts towards strangers and visitors.
a. interviewees b. interviewers c. inhabitants d. investigators

40. This user-friendly application provides fully .... maps of the tourist areas, which help tourists find and reach their destinations.
a. intellectual b. inaccurate c. intricate d. interactive
41. He doesn't always tell anybody about what he .... to do.
a. invents b. intends c. improves d. impresses
42. Stop .... me, Sama! Let me complete one meaningful sentence.
a. interrupting b. introducing c. involving d. inhabiting
43. Science fiction does not .... me. I prefer romance.
a. ignore b. illustrate c. interest d. interpret
44. When I heard a noise in the street, I opened the window and looked out to ....
a. investigate b. innovate c. identify d. inspire
45. Some of the .... are still homesick inspite of the long years they have lived abroad.
a. interviewees b. interviewers c. immigrants d. investigators
46. Only losers do not realise the .... of planning and hard work.
a. identity b. innovation c. initiative d. importance
47. The .... my first teacher had on me can't be forgotten.
a. inequality b. impact c. incident d. intern
48. Nobody likes it when you .... them.
a. ignore b. illustrate c. interest d. interpret
49. The Pharaohs .... the Nile Valley thousands of years ago.
a. interrupted b. introduced c. involved d. inhabited
50. Students should develop both their physical and .... skills.
a. intellectual b. inaccurate c. intricate d. inconvenient
51. A great writer has the ability to ...., not to imitate يُقلد.
a. investigate b. innovate c. identify d. inspire
52. An applicant should be well prepared for the ....'s questions.
a. interviewee b. interviewer c. inhabitant d. investigator
53. A convict should be ready for the ....'s questions.
a. interviewee b. interviewer c. inhabitant d. investigator
54. An .... should be well prepared for the job interview.
a. interviewee b. interviewer c. inhabitant d. investigator
55. Programming languages are .... and complex.
a. instant b. inaccurate c. intricate d. interested
56. Her fluency and efficiency .... every body at the meeting.
a. invented b. intended c. improved d. impressed
57. El-Moasser for primary stage is .... with full-colour photographs.
a. ignored b. illustrated c. interest d. interrupted
58. He needs urgent financial help as he is ....
a. in a mess b. in ease c. in debt d. in charge

Jj

jealous(adj)	غَيُور - حاسد	journalism(n)	الصحافة
join a virtual meeting	ينضم لاجتماع افتراضي	journalist(n)	صحفي
join(ed) (v)	ينضم إلي		

Kk

keep away from	يبقى بعيدًا عن	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
knight(n)	فارس		

Ll

lack(ed) (v/n)	ينقص - نقص	lift(ed) (v)	يرفع
landmark(n)	مَعلَم بارز	lighthouse(n)	منارة
last(ed) (v/adj)	يستمر/يدوم - الماضي - الأخير	likes(n)	الأشياء المُفضلة
lawyer (n)	محامي	limited(adj)	محدود/مقصور
lay - laid - laid(v)	يُعِد (المائدة) - يضع - تَبِيض	link(n)	رابط
lead - led (v)	يقود - يحيا - يؤدي إلي	linkers(n)	روابط
leave - left (v)	يغادر/يترك	liquid(n/adj)	سائل
leave a virtual meeting	يغادر اجتماع افتراضي	locate(d) (v)	يضع - يحدد موقع
leave it to me	دع الأمر لي	location(n)	موقع
lecture(d) (v/n)	يُحاضر - مُحاضرة	lodging(n)	مأوي/مَسْكَن
lecturer(n)	مُحَاضر	logic(n)	مَنطِق
legal(adj)	قانوني	long-ago(n)	الماضي السحيق
legend(n)	أسطورة	long-awaited (adj)	طال انتظاره
legendary(adj)	أسطوري	long-term (adj)	بعيد المدي
leg-irons(n)	قيود (كلابشات) القدمين	look into (phr. v)	يتحقق من - يُحقِّق في
let - let (v)	يَدَع - يَسمَح	look into possibilities	يبحث في امكانيات
level(n)	مستوَي	look at(phr. v)	يفحص - يلاحظ - يدرس
life experience(n)	خبرات وتجارب الحياة	look back (phr. v)	ينظر للخلف - يُفكِّر فيما مضي
life sentence(n)	حُكم بالسجن المُؤبَّد	look(ed) for (phr. v)	يبحث عن
life-changing(adj)	يؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة	lucky(adj)	محظوظ
luxury(n)	رفاهية		

Exercise On Letters Jj, Kk, Ll

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. When I was young, I enjoyed the stories of brave ....
   a. knights b. lighthouses c. legends d. luxuries
2. Professor Magdy Yacoub is a real .... in heart surgery.
   a. knight b. lighthouse c. legend d. luxury
3. We are .... to have such an experienced teacher of English.
   a. legal b. jealous c. legendary d. lucky

4. He is still looking .... the possibility of moving into another flat.

a. back b. into c. for d. a & c

5. .... is the punishment by which somebody spends the rest of their life or a very long period of time in prison.

a. Life expert b. Life experience c. Life sentence d. Life-changing

6. Professor Sallam was a .... of English grammar and phonetics علم الصوتيات.

a. lawyer b. linker c. journalist d. lecturer

7. A convict can't run with .... on.

a. landmark b. journalism c. leg-irons d. lodging

8. He .... the virtual meeting owing to a sudden headache.

a. left b. joined c. laid d. lifted

9. He .... the virtual meeting and made a virtual presentation.

a. left b. joined c. laid d. lifted

10. He promised to look .... the offer once more. I hope he will accept it.

a. back b. out c. for d. at

11. If you find the task difficult, then ....

a. leave it to me b. let me c. lift it to me d. lack it

12. Marshal Saad El-Shazly was one of the .... leaders of the October War. He was one of the top planners of the victory.

a. loud b. jealous c. legendary d. malicious

13. The experienced .... proved that there is no evidence against his agent.

a. lawyer b. linker c. journalist d. lecturer

14. When I arrived in London, an English friend offered me temporary ....

a. landmark b. journalism c. leg-irons d. lodging

15. Mum is going to .... the table for dinner. I will help her.

a. leave b. join c. lay d. lift

16. I stopped and looked ...., but I saw nobody following me.

a. back b. into c. for d. at

17. Difficult situations give you useful ....

a. life expert b. life experience c. life sentence d. life-changing

18. Someone who is .... of you will never be happy for your success.

a. legal b. jealous c. legendary d. lucky

19. The Lighthouse of Alexandria was once a .... for ships.

a. landmark b. journalism c. leg-iron d. lodging

20. This flat is small. I need to look .... a bigger one.

a. back b. to c. for d. up

21. .... means having such a big effect that it makes a difference in somebody's life.

a. Life expert b. Life experience c. Life sentence d. Life-changing

22. According to documents, you are the .... owner of this villa.

a. legal b. jealous c. legendary d. lucky

23. Try to .... away from what hurts your feelings.

a. last b. keep c. link d. let

2 Important vocabulary

24. The couple plan to spend their .... honeymoon in the Maldives.
a. jealous b. legal c. life-changing d. long-awaited
25. 'Because' and 'so' are cause and effect ....
a. lawyers b. linkers c. journalists d. lecturers
26. Nothing .... forever. Everything has an end.
a. lasts b. lacks c. locates d. lets
27. His high income helped him live in ....
a. knight b. lighthouse c. legend d. luxury
28. A .... doesn't usually reveal their news sources.
a. knight b. linker c. journalist d. lecturer
29. Citizen .... is the pieces of news reported by ordinary people on social media.
a. landmark b. journalism c. leg-irons d. lodgings
30. Don't .... your responsibilities affect your family life.
a. last b. lack c. locate d. let
31. .... were mainly built to guide ships to ports.
a. Palaces b. Lighthouses c. Legends d. Luxuries
32. The captain of the team .... the cup over his head and started to celebrate with his team.
a. left b. joined c. lied d. lifted
33. He is efficient but he .... confidence. He must believe that he can.
a. lasts b. lacks c. locates d. lets
34. It was easy for the police to .... the stolen car.
a. last b. lack c. locate d. let

Mm

maintain(ed) (v)	يحافظ على - يصون	mission(n)	مَهمة
major(adj)	كبير - رئيسي	mist(n)	ضباب
majority(n)	أغلبية	mixture(n)	خليط/مزيج
manage(d) (v)	يُدير - ينجح/يتمكَّن	modern-day(adj)	مُعاصر - حديث
management(n)	إدارة/تَحَكم	monitor(ed) (v/n)	يراقب/يتابع - شاشة عرض
man-made(adj)	من صُنع الإنسان	monolingual(adj)	أحادي اللغة
mark(ed) (v)	يُميِّز - يُحدِّد	moral(n)	مَغْزَى أخلاقي - درس مستفاد
marketing(n)	تسويق	mother tongue(n)	لغة المَنشأ
marsh(n)	مُستَنقَع	motivate(d) (v)	يُحفِّز - يُشجِّع
massive(adj)	ضخم/هائل	moving(adj)	مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر
mass-produced (adj)	مُنتَج بكميات كبيرة	multicultural(adj)	مُتعدِّد الثقافات
material(n)	مادة خام - قماش	multiculturalism(n)	تَعَدُّد الثقافات
mausoleum(n)	ضريح	multilingual(adj)	متعدد اللغات
mayor(n)	حاكمُ ولاية - عُمْدَة	multinational(adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
maze(n)	متاهة	multiplication(n)	عملية الضرب
measure(d) (v/n)	يقيس - معيار - مقياس	mummy(n)	مومياء
medieval(adj)	من العصور الوسطي	mural(n)	لوحة جدارية
memorize(d) (v)	يحفظ	murder(ed) (v/n)	يقتل - جريمة قتل
mental health(n)	الصِّحَّةُ النَّفْسِيَّة		

mental(adj)	ذهني/عقلي	Muse(n)	رَبَّة الإلهام
mentally(adv)	ذهنيًا/عقليًا	must-see(n/adj)	لابد من رؤيته
mention(ed) (v)	يقول/يَذْكُر	mute(d) (v/adj)	يكتم/يُصمِت - صامت
message(n)	درس مستفاد - رسالة	mute the microphone	يكتم الميكروفون
messaging(n)	مراسلة	my heart sinks	ينتابني اليأس
mind map(n)	خريطة ذهنية	my heart was set on	عازم - مُصمِّم
minority(n)	أقلية	mysterious(adj)	غامض
miserable(adj)	بائس/تعيس	myth(n)	أسطورَة/ خُرَافَة
mislead - misled (v)	يُضلِّل/يخدع	mythology(n)	(علم) الأساطير
misleading(adj/n)	مُضلِّل - تضليل		

Exercise On Letter Mm

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. "This film is a must-see." The word 'must-see' here is a/an ....
 a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. preposition
2. This is the .... scene of the play. It shouldn't be missed.
 a. miserable b. mute c. must-see d. mental
3. False news on social media aims to .... public opinion.
 a. mislead b. manage c. murder d. measure
4. I find the tears in a child's eyes .... I am deeply touched by them.
 a. multinational b. mysterious c. mass-produced d. moving
5. Business .... is an indispensable لا غني عنه factor of success.
 a. mental health b. management c. mausoleum d. mythology
6. "My heart is set on that villa." This means that I ....
 a. become hopeful and confident b. lose hope and confidence
 c. no longer want it. d. want it very much
7. After the heavy rain, the field became a ....
 a. marsh b. material c. minority d. majority
8. He was born and grown up in Paris, so French is his .... tongue.
 a. moral b. myth c. mist d. mother
9. The old woman was .... and her jewellery was stolen.
 a. mentioned b. managed c. murdered d. measured
10. Having lived in different countries, he is ....
 a. monolingual b. multilingual c. multicultural d. b & c
11. Your .... is not less important than physical one.
 a. mental health b. management c. mausoleum d. mythology
12. "My heart sank when my son travelled abroad." This means that I ....
 a. become hopeful and confident b. lost hope and confidence
 c. no longer want it d. want it very much
13. We are a .... here. I am sure we will win this area's vote.
 a. marsh b. material c. minority d. majority

14. We are a .... here. I am sure we will lose this area's vote.
a. marsh b. material c. minority d. majority
15. In third-world countries, the poor lead .... lives.
a. miserable b. mute c. must-see d. mental
16. This film is based on the .... of Hercules.
a. moral b. myth c. mist d. mother
17. This is a secret. Don't .... it in front of others.
a. mention b. manage c. murder d. measure
18. The .... of Queen Victoria is still visited by members of the royal family.
a. mental health b. management c. mausoleum d. mythology
19. .... is a quality of international schools' graduates.
a. Monolingual b. Multilingual c. Multicultural d. Multiculturalism
20. Never build your opinions on the mostly .... social media news.
a. mural b. misleading c. myth d. moral
21. "Misleading the public is a national security crime." The word 'misleading' in this context is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. preposition
22. This company applies strict safety ....
a. measures b. murals c. marshes d. mazes
23. "My father made me mute the speakers." The word 'mute' in this context is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. preposition
24. The mobile was ...., so I didn't know you called me twice.
a. miserable b. mute c. must-see d. mental
25. The adjective .... means related to the mind.
a. miserable b. mute c. must-see d. mental
26. **A:** What is the .... of this film? **B:** Tell the truth even if it is shocking.
a. moral b. myth c. mist d. mother
27. It is a difficult situation, but I am sure you will ....
a. mention b. manage c. murder d. measure
28. When something is ...., it is made in large quantities.
a. multinational b. mysterious c. mass-produced d. moving
29. My grandmother speaks only Arabic. She is ....
a. monolingual b. multilingual c. multicultural d. multinational
30. One of the best known of the Ancient Egyptian .... is the tale of Isis and Osiris.
a. missions b. managements c. mausoleums d. mythologies

2 Important vocabulary

31. The walls of the tomb are covered with fascinating colourful......... .
a. mummies b. murals c. meetings d. mazes
32. It is easy for a man of routine to be .... easily.
a. monitored b. mentioned c. made d. measured
33. The curtains are made of fine ....
a. marsh b. material c. minority d. majority

34. In early winter mornings, the .... sometimes covers the fields.
a. moral b. myth c. mist d. mazed

35. Liquids are .... in cubic metre.
a. mentioned b. managed c. murdered d. measured

36. Most car companies are .... organisations that belong to owners from different countries.
a. multinational b. mysterious c. mass-produced d. moving

37. In ancient Greek mythology, ... were goddesses of science and art.
a. mummies b. murals c. Muses d. mazes

38. Air pollution is a .... problem the whole world faces.
a. man-made b. modern-day c. major d. a, b & c

39. What .... all my family members is their green eyes.
a. monitors b. marks c. motivates d. murders

40. I got lost in the .... of narrow streets of the old town.
a. mummy b. mural c. Muse d. maze

41. No one of us knows what he means by such a .... comment.
a. multinational b. mysterious c. mass-produced d. movable

42. This criminal .... the mother and her baby. He deserves being sentenced to death.
a. monitored b. marked c. motivated d. murdered

43. A .... is a dead body preserved in a special way.
a. mummy b. mural c. mass d. maze

44. In the past, all Egyptian villages had .... to manage their affairs.
a. mummies b. murderers c. mayors d. messages

Nn

native(adj)	أصلي - محلي	nosy(adj)	فضولي - متطفل (حِشريّ)
negotiate(d) (v)	يتفاوض	noticeable(adj)	ملحوظ/واضح - جدير بالملاحظة
night watchman	حارس ليليّ	not-to-be-missed(adj)	لا يُفَوَّت
non-native(adj)	وافد - غير محلي	nuclear(adj)	نووي
naughty(adj)	شقي/مُشاغب		

Oo

oasis(n)	واحة	opportunity(n)	فُرصة
obelisk(n)	مَسَلّة/نُصُب عَمُودِيّ	option(n)	خِيار/اختيار
obey(ed) (v)	يُطيع	order (n)	ترتيب/نظام - أمر
objective(adj/n)	موضوعي/منطقي - هدف	order(ed) (v)	يرتب - يأمر
observatory(n)	مَرْصَد	organisation(n)	مؤسسة
obstacles(n)	عقبات - عراقيل	organisational(adj)	تنظيمي - مؤسسي
obtain(ed) (v)	يحصل علي/يكتسب	origin(n)	أصل - منشأ
obvious(adj)	واضح	organise(d) (v)	يُنظِّم
obviously(adv)	بوضوح	original(adj)	أصلي
occur(red) (v)	يَحْدُث	outdated(adj)	عفا عليه الزمن
official(adj)	رسمي	overall(adj)	إجماليّ/ كُليّ
old-fashioned (adj)	قديم الطراز/عتيق	overall(adv)	في المجمل/ككل
operation(n)	عملية جراحية - تشغيل		

omission(n)	حذف - إسقاط	overcome - overcame -	يتغلب علي - يجتاز
omit(ted) (v)	يحذف	overcome (v)	
once(conj.)	بمجرد أن - حينما	overtime(n/adv)	ساعات عمل إضافية - مع مرور الوقت

Exercise On Letters Nn, Oo

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The adjective '.........' is used to say that someone should do something while they have the opportunity.
   a. noticeable b. naughty c. not-to-be-missed d. non-native
2. He found employment as a/an .... in a factory.
   a. night watchman b. officials c. obelisk d. option
3. Those .... students have to be treated strictly.
   a. noticeable b. naughty c. not-to-be-missed d. non-native
4. The .... of some important information from the report misleads the decision-making process.
   a. operation b. obstacle c. omission d. opportunity
5. Sometimes, it is useful for a journalist to be .... He or she needs this quality to get information to be used in their writings.
   a. noticeable b. naughty c. nosy d. non-native

2 Important vocabulary

6. You need to be determined in order to .... the obstacles that you will have to face.
   a. omit b. obtain c. occur d. overcome
7. The noun '.........' has an irregular plural.
   a. observatory b. oasis c. obelisk d. option
8. The adjective .... gives a similar meaning to 'remarkable'.
   a. noticeable b. naughty c. not-to-be-missed d. non-native
9. I didn't see the lunar eclipse خسوف القمر. It .... late at night.
   a. omitted b. obtained c. occured d. overcame
10. He looks unhappy. He is .... not in the mood for work.
    a. officially b. overtime c. overall d. obviously
11. The major .... to achieve my goal is money. I wish I had enough.
    a. operation b. obstacle c. omission d. opportunity
12. You have to pay online. You have no other ....
    a. observatory b. oasis c. obelisk d. option
13. If you cannot dictate your conditions, you should ....
    a. negotiate b. occur c. organise d. order
14. I am a .... speaker of English. My mother tongue is Arabic.
    a. noticeable b. naughty c. not-to-be-missed d. non-native

15. A writer is not honest when they .... necessary information.
a. omit b. obtain c. occur d. overcome
16. There're some technical errors, but .... the novel is good, I think.
a. officially b. overtime c. overall d. a & b
17. I had an .... on my broken leg.
a. operation b. obstacle c. omission d. opportunity
18. My father works in an .... where he watches planets, stars, the weather, etc.
a. observatory b. oasis c. obelisk d. option
19. Travellers to Egypt are impressed with its great pyramids, ... and other monuments.
a. observatories b. organisations c. obelisks d. options
20. According to good manners, parents must be ....
a. occurred b. obeyed c. organised d. ordered
21. "I promised my parents to achieve my objectives." The word 'objective' here is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. interjection
22. "I don't find your opinion objective." The word 'objective' here is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. interjection
23. You won't be allowed to leave unless you .... a permission from the manager.
a. omit b. obtain c. occur d. overcome
24. We worked .... to meet the deadline.
a. lazily b. overtime c. overall d. illegally
25. There's an available job .... with El-Moasser team.
a. operation b. obstacle c. omission d. opportunity

Pp

pace(n)	خطوة/وتيرة	poor(adj)	سيء/رديء - فقير
packaging(n)	التغليف / التعبئة	port(n)	ميناء
painting(n)	لوحة مرسومة - فن الرسم	position(n)	وظيفة - مكانة
pandemic(n)	جائحة	possibility(n)	إمكانية
paper-thin(adj)	في سُمك الورقة	potential(n)	قدرة - إمكانية/احتمال
parade(n)	اسْتِعْراض - مَسيرَة	potentially(adv)	بشكل مُتوَقَّع/مُحتَمَل
paraphrase(d) (v)	يشرح/يُفسِّر - يُبَسِّط	pour(ed) (v)	ينهمر/يتدفق / يصب
participate(d) (v)	يشارك	pout(ed) (v)	يستاء(يُبوِّز)
part-time(adj)	دوام جزئي/لبعض الوقت	power(n)	طاقة
passage(n)	ممر/معبر	powerlifting(n)	رياضة رفع الأثقال
passenger(n)	مُسافر - راكب	practical (adj)	عملي/تطبيقي
passion(n)	شَغَف - وَلَع	precious(adj)	ثمين/نفيس
passionate(adj)	شغوف/مُتحمِّس	prediction(n)	تَنَبُّؤ - نبوءة
patient (adj - n)	صبور - مريض	prehistoric(adj)	ما قبل التاريخ
patriot(n)	وطني	prejudice(d) (v)	يُحرِّض على/يؤثر سلبيًا على
pattern(n)	نمط/صيغة	prejudice(n)	انحياز/ تَحامُل/ ظُلم
pause(d) (v/n)	يتوقف - وقفة		

pay off (phr. v)	يُسدِّد (دَيْن)
pay with his life	يدفع حياته ثمنًا
peer(n)	قرين - ند
perceive(d) (v)	يُدرك / يلاحظ
percentage(n)	نسبة مئوية
perfect(adj)	مثالي
performance(n)	أداء
permanent(adj)	دائم
permanently(adv)	علي الدوام
permission(n)	إذن - تصريح
perseverance(n)	دَأب/ مُثَابَرَة
perspective(n)	مفهوم/ منظور
persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
persuasive(adj)	إقناعي - مُقنع
petrified(adj)	مذعور - مُصاب بالهلع
physicist(n)	فيزيائي/خبير في الفيزياء
pick up (phr. v)	يشتري (بسعر جيد) - يلتقط
picnic(ked) (v)	يتنزه
picnic(n)	طعام النُزهة
picnic(n)	نُزهة خلوية
picturesque(adj)	خلَّاب - بديع المنظر
pillar(n)	عمود
pillow(n)	وسادة
piracy(n)	القرصنة
placement(n)	وَضع (في مكان مُعيَّن)
planet(n)	كوكب
please(d) (v)	يُسْعِد/يَسُرّ
plot(n)	حبكة القصة - حوض زراعة
plug(ged) (v)	يُوصِّل (بالكهرباء/ بجهاز)
plug(n)	مقبس
podcast(n)	مدونة صوتية - إذاعة رقمية - منصة صوتية
point of view	رأي/وجهة نظر
pointless(adj)	لا طائل منه
polio = (poliomyelitis) (n)	شلل أطفال
polite(adj)	مُؤدَّب/مُهذَّب
pun(n)	تَورِيَة - جِناس

present(ed) (v/n)	يعرِض/يُقدِّم - هدية
presentation(n)	عَرْض تقديمي
preserve(d) (v)	يُحنِّط - يحفظ - يصون
preserved(adj)	مُحنَّط - محفوظ
persevere(d) (v)	يثابر - يناضل
pressure(n)	الضغط
pretty(adj/adv)	جميل - إلي حد ما
priceless(adj)	لا يُقدَّر بثمن
pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء
priest(n)	كاهن - قديس
primarily(adv)	في الأساس
priority(n)	أولوية
privately(adv)	سرًا - بصورة شخصية
procedure(n)	إجراء
process(n)	عملية/نظام
procession(n)	مَوكب
procrastinate(d) (v)	يُسوِّف/يُماطل
procrastination(n)	التسويف/المماطلة
productive(adj)	مُثمِر - مُنتِج
productivity(n)	الإنتاجية - العائد
professionally(adv)	باحترافية/بمهنية
profile(n)	ملف التعريف / الملف الشخصي
profit(ed) (n/v)	ربح - يربح/يستفيد
progress (n)	تَقَدُّم/تَحَسُّن
promote(d) (v)	يُروِّج لـ - يُرقِّي
promote(d) (v)	يُعزِّز/يدعم/يُطوِّر
proof(n)	دليل - بُرهان
proper(adj)	مناسب
property(n)	عقارات - مُمتَلَكات
protagonist(n)	بطل الرواية - زعيم قضية
protective(adj)	واقي - وقائي
proud(adj)	فخور
public(n/adj)	الجمهور - الشعب - عام - محبوب
publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
purpose(n)	غرض
pursue(d) (v)	يلاحق - يتعقَّب - يسعي

Qq

qualify(ied) (v)	يتأهل - يتخرج	question(ed) (v)	يسأل - يتشكك
quality(n)	سمة - خاصية	quietly(adv)	بهدوء
quantifier(n)	تحديد كمية - تعبير كمية	quote(d) (n/v)	اقتباس - يقتبس

Exercise **On Letters Pp, Qq**

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. In my articles, I often use .... by famous writers.
 a. progresses b. quotes c. piracies d. puns
2. Sometimes, there is clear .... against foreigners and strangers.
 a. prejudice b. perseverance c. port d. priority
3. "Being patient is a good quality." In this sentence, the word 'patient' is a/an ....
 a. noun b. pronoun c. adjective d. adverb
4. A high .... of students will get the full mark if they use El-Moasser's final revision.
 a. part-time b. percentage c. passionate d. petrified
5. Farmers do not cut down .... trees.
 a. productive b. preserved c. polite d. patient
6. The player's violent objection .... the referee against him.
 a. pouted b. promoted c. pursued d. prejudiced
7. I downloaded a .... to listen to while being on the train.
 a. podcast b. protagonist c. placement d. point of view
8. Einstein is the greatest .... ever.
 a. priest b. physicist c. political d. performer
9. If you trust someone, you don't .... what they say.
 a. question b. qualify c. profit d. procrastinate
10. You may change your opinion if you look at the matter from a different ....
 a. productivity b. procrastination c. perspective d. proof
11. I take .... in anyone that does something to benefit himself and others.
 a. property b. planet c. process d. pride
12. **A:** What a nice vase! **B:** It was .... from Khan Al-khalili by my brother.
 a. preserved b. picked up c. plugged d. paused
13. Such criminals must .... with their lives.
 a. profit b. pursue c. question d. pay
14. From Wednesday to Friday, I had a .... job as a cashier in a restaurant.
 a. part-time b. percentage c. passionate d. petrified
15. The police car .... the lorry that hit the child.
 a. pouted b. promoted c. pursued d. prejudiced
16. Pip is the narrator and .... of Great Expectations.
 a. podcast b. protagonist c. placement d. point of view
17. Do your jobs in time. Don't ....
 a. question b. qualify c. profit d. procrastinate

18. .... is the first step towards failure.
a. Productivity b. Procrastination c. Perspective d. Proof
19. The ageing .... may be slow, but it still takes place.
a. property b. planet c. process d. pride
20. The Ancient Egyptians knew how to .... the bodies of the dead thousands of years ago.
a. preserve b. pick up c. plug d. pause
21. This food is .... using chemicals.
a. prevented b. preserved c. reserved d. expected
22. He told me about his problem ...., away from anyone.
a. permanently b. patiently c. privately d. publicly
23. Patience and honesty are good .... everybody should have.
a. qualities b. physicists c. quantifiers d. quantities
24. I was shocked and .... at what I saw in the nightmare!
a. part-time b. content c. passionate d. petrified
25. We want to encourage, support and .... youth volunteerism in our community.
a. pout b. promote c. pursue d. prejudice
26. The .... of this piece of news on the first page shows it is of top importance.
a. podcast b. protagonist c. placement d. point of view
27. I am satisfied with the .... I've made so far.
a. progress b. quote c. piracy d. pun
28. There's no .... that he is to blame for the problem.
a. productivity b. procrastination c. perspectively d. proof
29. We live on a .... called the Earth, a member of the solar system.
a. property b. planet c. process d. pride
30. My son is .... about football. He's always watching it, playing it, or talking about it.
a. part-time b. frightened c. passionate d. petrified
31. When I shouted at the child, she looked at me sadly .... her lips.
a. pouting b. promoting c. pursuing d. prejudicing
32. Your .... is your opinion or what you think.
a. podcast b. protagonist c. placement d. point of view
33. The key to increasing agricultural .... may lie in educating farmers.
a. productivity b. procrastination c. perspective d. proof
34. Everything here is my own .... and I will pursue those who steal it.
a. planet b. property c. process d. pride
35. Safaga is an important .... on the Red Sea.
a. prejudice b. perseverance c. port d. priority
36. You needn't hurry. Be .... and everything will be OK.
a. productive b. preserved c. polite d. patient
37. I .... stopped smoking. I no longer smoke.
a. permanently b. publicly c. privately d. temporarily
38. Sometimes, the banking .... are complex owing to security measures.
a. processions b. procedures c. pandemics d. pieces

2 Important vocabulary

39. COVID-19 is the latest .... that affected all fields of life all over the world.
a. procession b. procedure c. pandemic d. pace
40. Switzerland is one of the most .... countries in the world. It has very beautiful landscape.
a. proper b. pointless c. picturesque d. persuasive
41. "Seven days without food makes one weak". There is a .... on the words "week" and "weak".
a. progress b. quote c. piracy d. pun
42. My sister .... as a teacher last year.
a. questioned b. qualified c. profitted d. procrastinated
43. The charger is .... in but it does not charge the battery.
a. preserved b. picked up c. plugged d. paused
44. The safety of workers has the .... over anything else.
a. prejudice b. perseverance c. port d. priority
45. Your health problems will disappear if you eat in a .... way.
a. proper b. pointless c. picturesque d. persuasive
46. He continued his talk after a short .... for a drink.
a. preserve b. pick up c. plug d. pause
47. 'Many', 'much', 'little' and 'few' are ....
a. prepositions b. nouns c. quantifiers d. conjunctions
48. "The food served here is .... good." I like it.
a. productive b. pointless c. persuasive d. pretty
49. All citizens will .... from the current economic reforms.
a. question b. qualify c. profit d. procrastinate
50. Your objection is .... The VAR has cancelled the goal.
a. proper b. pointless c. picturesque d. persuasive
51. The coach asked us to walk ten .... back.
a. processions b. procedures c. pandemics d. paces
52. Some students can learn better from their class .... than from their teachers.
a. priests b. physicists c. quantifiers d. peers
53. The internet has made book .... easier. Those thieves violate copyright and publish others' books.
a. progress b. quote c. piracy d. pun
54. Those who have .... will surely achieve their goals.
a. prejudice b. perseverance c. profit d. persevere
55. Those who .... will surely achieve their goals.
a. prejudice b. perseverance c. profit d. persevere
56. My sister is .... She easily gets what she wants from her father.
a. proper b. pointless c. picturesque d. persuasive
57. The king's .... moved from the airport towards the palace.
a. procession b. procedure c. pandemic d. pace
58. Being .... to everyone is what makes you morally respectful.
a. productive b. preserved c. polite d. polar

Rr

radioactivity(n)	النشاط الإشعاعي	remarkable(adj)	ملحوظ/بارز
raise(d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد - يُحسّن - يجمع مال	rent(ed) (v/n)	يستأجر - إيجار
raise(d) (v)	يطرح (قضية/موضوع)	represent(d) (v)	يُمثّل/ينوب عن
ramp(n)	مُنحدَر	require(d) (v)	يتطلب/يستلزم
range(n)	نطاق/مَدَي	research(ed) (v/n)	يُجري أبحاث على - بحث
react(ed) (v)	يستجيب/يتجاوب مع	residential(adj)	سَكَني
reaction(n)	رد فعل - استجابة	resources(n)	موارد
real-life(adj)	حقيقي - واقعي	respected(adj)	محترم
recipe(n)	وصفة طهي	respond(ed) (v)	يستجيب
record(n)	سِجل - رقم قياسي	responsibility(n)	مسئولية
recover(ed) (v)	يفيق - يسترد وعيه - يستعيد	restate(d) (v)	يعيد صياغة
recycle(d) (v)	يُعيد تدوير	reviewer(n)	ناقد
reduce(d) (v)	يُقلل/يختصر	reward(ed) (n/v)	مكافأة - يكافئ
reflect(ed) (v)	يعكس/يُبيِّن - يتفكر	rhetorical (adj)	بلاغي
refresh(ed) (v)	يُنعش/يجدد نشاط	risk(ed) (n/v)	مُخاطرة/خطر - يخاطر
regard(ed) (v)	يعتبر - يُقدِّر/يُجلّ	role model(n)	قدوة - مَثَل أعلي
region(n)	منطقة/إقليم	room(n)	مكان - مجال - حجرة
regional(adj)	اقليمي	root(n)	أصل - منشأ - جِذر
regret(ted) (n/v)	الندم - يندم علي	rough(adj)	خشن/ غير منصقل
reign(n)	(فترة) حُكم	round(n)	جولة
reinvent(ed) (v)	يعيد تأهيل - يُشكّل من جديد	route(n)	طريق - مسار
		routine(n)	وتيرة يومية
relate(d) (v)	يتعلق بـ - يتفهّم	rowing(n)	التجديف
related(adj)	ذو قرابة - مُتعلق	royal(adj)	مَلَكيّ
relatives(n)	أقارب	rude(adj)	وقح - غير مُهذَّب
relevance(n)	ملائمة/ارتباط - صلة بالموضوع	ruins(n)	حُطام/أطلال
relevant(adj)	ملائم	ruin(ed) (v)	يُدمِّر - يُخرِّب
rely(ied) (v)	يعتمد	rule(d) (v/n)	يحكم - قاعدة
remain(ed) (v)	يبقي/يظل	ruler(n)	حاكم - مسطرة
remains(n)	بقايا/أطلال	runway(n)	ممر (هبوط وإقلاع الطائرات)

Exercise On Letter Rr

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The content of the film should be of .... to viewers.
   a. reaction b. role model c. route d. relevance
2. Her expression clearly .... her attitude towards the plan. She rejects it.
   a. ruins b. recovers c. reflects d. raises
3. Jealousy is the .... of the problem.
   a. ramp b. root c. record d. round

4. After the great success he had made as a footballer, he tried to .... himself as an actor.
a. reinvent b. relate c. react d. risk
5. Dr Zewail is the best .... for ambitious young scientists.
a. reaction b. role model c. route d. relevance
6. Could you kindly .... your voice a bit, sir? We can hardly hear what you say.
a. ruin b. recover c. reflect d. raise
7. The .... of the meal are still on the table.
a. responsibility b. relatives c. remains d. resources
8. Try to control your .... You are quick to get angry.
a. reaction b. role model c. route d. relevance
9. The police managed to .... the stolen money.
a. ruin b. recover c. reflect d. raise
10. He suffers from smoking-......... health problems.
a. remarkable b. rough c. related d. rude
11. The Egyptian team lost the first ...., but they won the match.
a. ramp b. root c. record d. round
12. "We've collected a lot of money for the charity." The verb 'collected' in this sentence is a synonym of ....
a. raised b. ruled c. ruined d. relied
13. You can't write properly on a .... surface.
a. remarkable b. rough c. related d. rude
14. Coal, oil and wind power are natural ....
a. responsibilities b. relatives c. remains d. resources
15. Your behaviour should be socially ....
a. residential b. regional c. relevant d. rhetorical
16. "That is a serious matter that we should think about very carefully." In this sentence, we can replace 'think about' with ....
a. rely on b. relate to c. recover from d. reflect on
17. Sama has achieved .... progress so far.
a. remarkable b. rough c. related d. rude
18. This runner holds the world .... for long-distance races.
a. ramp b. root c. record d. round
19. The study .... a lot of social crimes to social media.
a. reinvents b. relates c. reacts d. risks

2 Important vocabulary

20. The .... is ready for the plane to land.
a. runway b. ruins c. room d. reign
21. In big cities, buses follow a fixed ....
a. reaction b. role model c. route d. relevance
22. The old man .... his life to rescue the boy who had fallen into the river.
a. reinvented b. related c. reacted d. risked
23. It is the role of a .... and a close friend to support you.
a. responsibility b. relative c. remain d. resource

24. It is better for the environment if we .... waste material.
a. recycle b. restate c. represent d. rule
25. Mr Nasser is highly .... by all his friends and colleagues.
a. responded b. researched c. rented d. regarded
26. The village was completely .... by the floods.
a. ruined b. recovered c. reflected d. raised
27. In a speech, the speaker sometimes asks .... questions they do not intend to get an answer to.
a. residential b. regional c. relevant d. rhetorical
28. Send the report to Mr Mohammed to .... it in a formal language.
a. recycle b. restate c. represent d. rule
29. I asked them to check the report carefully as there's no .... for mistakes.
a. runway b. ruins c. room d. reign
30. My cough .... to the injection. I soon got better.
a. responded b. required c. rented d. regarded
31. We all avoid him as he is always .... to us.
a. remarkable b. rough c. related d. rude
32. It is the .... of a teacher to make sure that their students achieve the learning objectives.
a. responsibility b. reservation c. remain d. resource
33. This multinational company has a .... office in Cairo.
a. real-life b. regional c. relative d. rhetorical
34. Mr Ayman .... our company in this conference.
a. recycles b. restates c. represents d. replies
35. Queen Elizabeth's .... over the United Kingdom started in 1952.
a. runway b. ruin c. room d. reign
36. This patient .... an urgent operation.
a. responds b. requires c. rents d. regards
37. A: How did she .... to your offer? B: She turned it down.
a. reinvent b. relate c. react d. risk
38. Traffic is quieter in modern .... areas. Streets are wide and all people live in villas.
a. residential b. rough c. relevant d. rhetorical
39. President Nasser .... Egypt for about sixteen years.
a. recycled b. restated c. replayed d. ruled
40. The .... of the old bridge can still be seen under water.
a. runway b. ruins c. room d. reign

Ss

sacred(adj)	مُقدَّس	spacecraft(n)	سفينة فضاء
safety(n)	أمان	spark(n)	شرارة
scar(n)	ندبة (أثر جرح في الجلد)	spark(ed) (v)	ينشأ - تنطلق شرارته
scare to death	يُخيف بشدة - يُصيب بالذعر	speaker(n)	سماعة - مُتحَدِّث
scare(d) (v)	يُخيف/يُفزع	specific(adj)	مُحدَّد - مخصوص
scary(adj)	مخيف - مرعب	spectacular(adj)	باهر/ مُذهِل
scene(n)	مَشْهَد - مكان حدوث		

scholarship(n)	منحة دراسية - زمالة
scold(ed) (v)	يعنّف/ يوبّخ
scream(ed) (v)	يصرخ
sculpture(n)	تمثال - فن النحت
search(ed) (v/n)	يبحث/يفتش - عملية بحث
seaweed(n)	عُشب البحر
second hand(adj)	مُستعمَل
section(n)	قسم
security(n)	أمن
self(n)	النفس - الذات - جوهر الشخص
self-care(n)	العنَايَةُ الذَاتيَّة
self-management (n)	الإدارة الذاتية
sell - sold(v)	يبيع - يحقق مبيعات
sensational(adj)	حِسِّيّ - مُثير
sense(n)	إحساس - حاسة
sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار - مِجَس
serve(d)(v)	يُقدِّم
session(n)	جَلسَة - دَورَة - مُقَابَلَة
set off (to) (phr. v)	ينطلق/يبدأ رحلة (إلي)
setting(n)	إعداد/تهيئة - مكان و زمان القصة
sew - sewed - sewn(v)	يخيط
shake(d) (v)	يَرُجّ - يرتعش
shape(d) (v/n)	يُشَكل - شَكل
share a screen	يشارك شاشة
share(d) (v/n)	يُشارك - مشاركة - نصيب
sheet(n)	حصة - صفحة - ورقة
shiny(adj)	لامع
shock(ed) (v/n)	يصدم - صدمة
short notice(n)	رسالة موجزة
shy(adj)	خجول
sigh(ed) (v/n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة
signal-hopping(n)	التنوع الترددي
significant(adj)	هام/ ذو مغزى - كبير
significantly(adv)	بشكل ملحوظ
signposting(n)	ارشاد - لافتة - دلالة
signposting language(n)	اللغة الدلالية
similarity(n)	تشابه
Siwi(n)	اللهجة السِيوية

spectacularly(adv)	بإبهار/بشكل مدهش
speculate(d)(v)	يتأمل - يتساءل بفضول - يتفكر
spider's web(n)	شبكة عنكبوت
spin - spun (v)	يُقنع بتزيين الكلام (يحوّر)
spin (n)	تلفيق - خلط الأمور
spoil - spoiled/spoilt (v)	يُفسد
sponsor(ed) (v/n)	يرعى - يمول - راعي - ممول
start-up(adj/n)	مبدئي - انطلاقة/بداية
state(d) (v)	يَذكُر - يقول
statement(n)	بيان (صحفي) - جملة خبرية
state-of-the-art(adj)	حديث جدًا/ آخر صيحة
steady(adj)	ثابت/رصين
steamer(n)	باخرة
stereotype(n)	فكرة نمطية ثابتة - نموذج نَمَطي - قالب
stir(red) (v)	يُقلِّب - يحرك - يحرض
story telling(n)	سرد القصص
strangely(adv)	بشكل غريب
strategy(n)	خطة/سياسة (استراتيجية)
straw(n)	قش
streaming(adj)	جارى / متدفق
stress(n)	الإجهاد/ الضغط
stressed(adj)	مضغوط/مُجهَد
stressful(adj)	مُرهِق/شاقّ/ضاغط
stretch(ed) (v)	يَمُط - يتمدد
stretch(ed) out (v)	يتمدد - يتَمَطّى
strict(adj)	صارم - حازم
structure(n)	مبنَى/بناء
struggle(d)(v/n)	يكافح/يناضل - كفاح - صراع
stuck(adj)	عالق - متورّط
study(n)	دراسة - بحث
stunning(adj)	مُذهِل/رائع
success(n)	النجاح
suit(ed) (v)	يُناسب/ يَصْلُح لـ
summarise/ze(d) (v)	يُلخص - يختصر
support(ed) (v/n)	يدعم - الدعم
suppose(d) (v)	يفترض/ يتصوّر
surface(n)	سطح

scholarship(n)	منحة دراسية - زمالة
scold(ed) (v)	يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ
scream(ed) (v)	يصرخ
sculpture(n)	تمثال - فن النحت
search(ed) (v/n)	يبحث/يفتش - عملية بحث
seaweed(n)	عُشب البحر
second hand(adj)	مُستعمَل
section(n)	قسم
security(n)	أمن
self(n)	النفس - الذات - جوهر الشخص
self-care(n)	العنَايَةُ الذَاتيَّة
self-management (n)	الإدارة الذاتية
sell - sold(v)	يبيع - يحقق مبيعات
sensational(adj)	حِسِّيّ - مُثير
sense(n)	إحساس - حاسة
sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار - مِجَس
serve(d)(v)	يُقدِّم
session(n)	جَلسَة - دَورَة - مُقَابَلَة
set off (to) (phr. v)	ينطلق/يبدأ رحلة (إلي)
setting(n)	إعداد/تهيئة - مكان و زمان القصة
sew - sewed - sewn(v)	يخيط
shake(d) (v)	يَرُجّ - يرتعش
shape(d) (v/n)	يُشَكِل - شَكل
share a screen	يشارك شاشة
share(d) (v/n)	يُشارك - مشاركة - نصيب
sheet(n)	حصة - صفحة - ورقة
shiny(adj)	لامع
shock(ed) (v/n)	يصدم - صدمة
short notice(n)	رسالة موجزة
shy(adj)	خجول
sigh(ed) (v/n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة
signal-hopping(n)	التنوع الترددي
significant(adj)	هام/ ذو مغزى - كبير
significantly(adv)	بشكل ملحوظ
signposting(n)	ارشاد - لافتة - دلالة
signposting language(n)	اللغة الدلالية
similarity(n)	تشابه
Siwi(n)	اللهجة السِيوية

spectacularly(adv)	بإبهار/بشكل مدهش
speculate(d)(v)	يتأمل - يتساءل بفضول - يتفكر
spider's web(n)	شبكة عنكبوت
spin - spun (v)	يُقنع بتزيين الكلام (يحوِّر)
spin (n)	تلفيق - خلط الأمور
spoil - spoiled/spoilt (v)	يُفسد
sponsor(ed) (v/n)	يرعى - يمول - راعي - ممول
start-up(adj/n)	مبدئي - انطلاقة/بداية
state(d) (v)	يَذكُر - يقول
statement(n)	بيان (صحفي) - جملة خبرية
state-of-the-art(adj)	حديث جدًا/ آخر صيحة
steady(adj)	ثابت/رصين
steamer(n)	باخرة
stereotype(n)	فكرة نمطية ثابتة - نموذج نَمَطي - قالب
stir(red) (v)	يُقلِّب - يحرك - يحرض
story telling(n)	سرد القصص
strangely(adv)	بشكل غريب
strategy(n)	خطة/سياسة (استراتيجية)
straw(n)	قش
streaming(adj)	جارى / متدفق
stress(n)	الإجهاد/ الضغط
stressed(adj)	مضغوط/مُجهَد
stressful(adj)	مُرهِق/شاقّ/ضاغط
stretch(ed) (v)	يَمُطّ - يتمدد
stretch(ed) out (v)	يتمدد - يتَمَطّى
strict(adj)	صارم - حازم
structure(n)	مبني/بناء
struggle(d)(v/n)	يكافح/يناضل - كفاح - صراع
stuck(adj)	عالق - متورِّط
study(n)	دراسة - بحث
stunning(adj)	مُذهِل/رائع
success(n)	النجاح
suit(ed) (v)	يُناسب/ يَصْلُح لـ
summarise/ze(d) (v)	يُلخص - يختصر
support(ed) (v/n)	يدعم - الدعم
suppose(d) (v)	يفترض/ يتصوَّر
surface(n)	سطح

sleeves(n)	أكمام	surgeon(n)	جراح
slide- slid(v)	ينزلق/يتزحلق	surgery(n)	جراحة
slide(n)	شريحة - زحليقة	surgical(adj)	جراحي
slip(ped) (v)	ينزلق	surprised(adj)	مُندهش
slowly(adv)	ببطئ	surround sound(n/adj)	الصوت المُجسَّم - ذو صوت مُجسَّم
social(adj)	اجتماعي	surround(ed) (v)	يحيط بـ/يكتنف
sociolinguist(n)	عالم لغويات اجتماعية	survey(ed) (v/n)	يُجري بحث استطلاعي - بحث استطلاعي
software(n)	برنامج (حاسوبى)		
solar system(n)	النظام الشمسي	survive(d) (v)	ينجو/يبقي حيًا
solar(adj)	شمسي	suspect(ed) (v/n)	يتُهم / مشتبه فيه
solar-powered(adj)	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	swap(ped) (v)	يتبادل
solution(n)	حَلّ	Swarm Robotics (n)	علم روبوتات السرب
space(n)	مكان - مساحة - فراغ	switch … off (phr. v)	يُوقف/يُطفئ
switch(ed) off (v)	يستريح لفترة قصيرة(يفصل)	switch … on (phr. v)	يُشغّل
		switch(ed) (n/v)	مُفتاح تشغيل - يُبدِّل

Exercise On Letter Ss

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. This road must have more .... to be safer for drivers and walkers.
   a. spacecraft b. signposting c. stereotypes d. solar panels
2. In wedding parties, giant .... are used.
   a. speakers b. surgeons c. surgeries d. surgical
3. If you have a problem, think of a .... and work hard to reach it.
   a. stereotype b. scholarship c. setting d. solution
4. Children are happy when you give them .... coins or new banknotes.
   a. shiny b. sensational c. significant d. strict
5. If you don't want to be late for work, you'd better .... early.
   a. switch off b. set off c. switch on d. stretch out
6. Egypt will never allow anyone to reduce its .... of the Nile water.
   a. spacecraft b. solar system c. share d. sensor
7. Snakes .... me to death.
   a. scar b. scare c. study d. steady
8. I .... as soon as I had seen the giant snake.
   a. scolded b. suspected c. sparked d. screamed
9. Use this .... to turn on/off the machine.
   a. switch b. surround sound c. stress d. self-care
10. Akram's knee needed a .... operation.
   a. social b. sensational c. shiny d. surgical
11. He was .... to find his lost key in his pocket.
   a. stressed b. stressful c. surprised d. solar-powered

12. Akram needed a .... to operate on his knee.
a. speaker b. surgeon c. surgery d. surgical
13. This .... car is environmentally friendly.
a. stressed b. stressful c. surprised d. solar-powered
14. Akram needed a .... to be done on his knee.
a. speaker b. surgeon c. surgery d. surgical
15. ...., the child preferred a cheese sandwich to a large bar of chocolate!
a. Strangely b. Slowly c. Spectacularly d. Significantly
16. A villa by the river provides a good .... for a romantic short story.
a. stereotype b. scholarship c. setting d. solution
17. Giving children too much money usually .... them.
a. struggles b. spoils c. spins d. shocks
18. On hearing the referee's whistle ending the match, Ammar .... on the grass breathing quickly.
a. switched off b. set off c. switched on d. stretched out
19. NASA launched a .... towards the moon with four astronauts on board.
a. spacecraft b. solar system c. share d. sensor
20. It is not easy to keep a mobile camera ....
a. scar b. scare c. study d. steady
21. This type of speakers produces ....
a. switch b. surround sound c. stress d. self-care
22. You don't need to finish the article today, I ....
a. scold b. suspect c. suppose d. scream
23. My grandfather's health has improved .... after the operation. That's clear.
a. strangely b. softly c. seriously d. significantly
24. This entrepreneur does not fit the .... of an organisation man. He is not the sort of man that just carries out tasks.
a. stereotype b. scholarship c. setting d. solution
25. He usually .... stories about his generosity. In fact, he is a miser.
a. struggles b. spoils c. shocks d. spins
26. At the meeting, just .... your head and I will know that something is not all right.
a. speculate b. shake c. spark d. set off
27. When it is completely dark, the lights are ....
a. switched off b. set off c. switched on d. stretched out
28. When it is daytime, the lights are ....
a. switched off b. set off c. switched on d. stretched out
29. These .... measure the response of different parts of your brain to the noises.
a. spacecrafts b. solar systems c. shares d. sensors
30. He suffers from .... as a result of continuous hard work.
a. switch b. surround sound c. stress d. self-care
31. We .... that the night watchman himself is a member of the gang.
a. scold b. suspect c. spark d. scream

32. The cut left a permanent .... on her face.
a. scar b. scare c. study d. steady

33. Positive criticism .... us to action.
a. speculates b. shakes c. spoils d. stirs

34. My loving parents have played a .... role in my life.
a. surgical b. sleeping c. significant d. stuck

35. When someone doesn't want to tell the truth, they usually put a ....
a. spin b. struggle c. spoil d. shock

36. The sun is the centre of the ....
a. spacecraft b. solar system c. share d. sensor

37. People who suffer from diabetes need a great deal of ....
a. selfishness b. summer c. stress d. self-care

38. Mum took Ramy away, ... him for his bad behaviour.
a. scolding b. suspecting c. supposing d. screaming

39. He is .... due to work pressure.
a. stressed b. stressful c. surprised d. solar-powered

40. I find this task ....
a. stressed b. stressful c. surprised d. solar-powered

2 Important vocabulary

41. My son won a .... to study medicine in the USA.
a. stereotype b. scholarship c. setting d. solution

42. A good leader should be ...., not cruel.
a. shiny b. stressful c. stuck d. strict

43. I am lucky to .... this car accident.
a. survive b. surround c. slip d. survey

44. No one would believe that such a successful TV star used to be a .... schoolboy.
a. stunning b. shy c. state-of-the-art d. start-up

45. The Holy Quran and the Bible are .... books.
a. social b. second hand c. sacred d. streaming

46. The last question has .... an argument.
a. speculated b. shook c. sparked d. shocked

47. A team of researchers are .... the causes of the street children phenomenon.
a. surviving b. surrounding c. slipping d. surveying

48. .... means belonging or relating to the most recent stage of technological development; having or using the latest techniques or equipment.
a. Stunning b. Shy c. State-of-the-art d. Start-up

49. You can watch the live performance on our .... platform.
a. spectacular b. second hand c. sacred d. streaming

50. You do not have the right to .... about other people's private life.
a. speculate b. shake c. spark d. stir

51. The death of Mr Khalid has .... us all.
a. spun b. struggled c. shocked d. spoilt
52. It is a good feeling to find yourself .... by your relatives and friends when you need them.
a. survived b. surrounded c. slipped d. surveyed
53. I know it is a small office, but it is just a .... step.
a. social b. stuck c. state-of-the-art d. start-up
54. Something that is .... is beautiful in a dramatic and eye-catching way.
a. spectacular b. second hand c. sacred d. streaming
55. My team has scored a .... four-goal victory.
a. stuck b. sensational c. surgical d. strict
56. A recent .... has found out that the world is getting warmer.
a. scar b. scare c. study d. steady
57. .... means extremely impressive or attractive.
a. Stunning b. Shy c. State-of-the-art d. Start-up
58. If a new car is costly for you, you can buy a .... one.
a. spectacular b. second-hand c. sacred d. streaming

Tt

tabloid(n)	صحيفة شعبية/ صحيفة إثارة	theory(n)	نظرية
take up(phr.v)	يحترف	timeless(adj)	خالد - أبدى
take my mind off	أحاول أن أنسي - أصرف ذهني عن	to be worth the effort	يستحق ما يُبذل من جهد
		to their full advantages	بكل مزاياهم
take revenge on	ينتقم من	tough(adj)	صارم - شديد - عصيب
tale(n)	حكاية	tour(ed) (v/n)	يتجول في - جولة
talent(n)	موهبة	tourist attraction	منطقة جذب سياحي
talk(n)	حديث/خطبة	tournament(n)	دورة مباريات
talkative(adj)	ثرثار	traditions(n)	التقاليد
task(n)	مَهمَّة/تكليف	translate as	تُترجَم كـ
team player(n)	شخص يجيد العمل في فريق	transport(ed) (v/n)	ينقل - النقل/المواصلات
tear(n)	دَمْعَة العين	trap(ped) (v)	يحتجز - يحبس - يوقع بـ
technical(adj)	تقني/فني	treasures(n)	كنوز
technique(n)	تقنية/أسلوب	treat(ed) (v)	يُعامِل - يعالج
teen = teenager(n)	مراهق	treatment(n)	علاج - تعامُل - تناوُل
temple(n)	مَعبَد	trick(ed) (n/v)	خدعة - يخدع
temporary(adj)	مُؤقَّت	T-ring(n)	نظام صوتي ورقي دائري
tend(ed) (v)	يميل - يُفضِّل	trouble(n)	مشكلة/مأزق
terrifying(adj)	مُرعِب	turn ... down (phr. v)	يُخفِّض الصوت - يرفض
3D = three dimensional(adj)	ثلاثي الأبعاد	turn ... up (phr. v)	يرفع الصوت
		typical(adj)	نَمَطِيّ - نَمُوذَجِيّ
throughout(adv)	في كل أرجاء - طوال	time management(n)	إدارة الوقت
tie(d) up (v)	يُقيِّد - يربط	trifing(adj)	تافه - عابث
tight(adj)	ضيق - محكم	theme(n)	موضوع

Exercise On Letter Tt

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Salah scored two goals in the semi-final in one of the best games of the ....
   a. treasure b. tabloid c. treatment d. tournament
2. The angry hero of the film wants to .... those who killed his father.
   a. be worth the effort b. take revenge on
   c. take mind off d. the full advantage of
3. .... is a basic factor of success.
   a. Tourist attraction b. Team player
   c. Three dimensional d. Time management
4. Aswan and Luxor have a lot of ancient ....
   a. T-rings b. tears c. temples d. talks
5. Being talented and fit, I recommend he .... football.
   a. translate as b. take up c. turn down d. turn up
6. Those who seek news about celebrities and excitement usually read a ....
   a. treasure b. tabloid c. treatment d. tournament
7. I am sure this project ....
   a. is worth the effort b. takes revenge on
   c. takes my mind off d. to its full advantage
8. The sound of the speaker is too low to hear. I'll ....
   a. trace it to b. turn it down c. turn it up d. translate it as
9. I saw .... fill my mother's eyes when I told her that I intended to travel abroad.
   a. tales b. tears c. temples d. talks
10. Most young people prefer .... clothes.
    a. talkative b. timeless c. temporary d. tight
11. I got tired of thinking about this problem. I do not know how ....
    a. to be worth the effort b. to take revenge on it
    c. to take my mind off d. to its full advantage
12. Egypt is full of unique ....
    a. tourist attractions b. team players
    c. three dimensional d. time managements
13. This is a great offer. I can't ....
    a. trace it to b. turn it down c. turn it up d. translate it up

2 Important Vocabulary

14. My friend's father .... me as a member of his family.
    a. treats b. tours c. traps d. tricks
15. The youth is the real .... of our country.
    a. treasure b. tabloid c. treatment d. tournament

16. Try to make full use of this application to reach ....
   a. to be worth no effort b. to take revenge on
   c. to take your mind off d. to its full advantages
17. Being a good ...., he will play an important role in the group.
   a. tourist attraction b. team player
   c. three dimensional d. time management
18. We look forward to a more detailed .... of the subject.
   a. treasure b. tabloid c. treatment d. tournament
19. A fable is a .... in which animals are the main characters.
   a. tale b. tear c. temple d. treasure
20. Working as a part-time secretary is a .... solution. I am looking for a full-time job.
   a. typical b. talkative c. temporary d. tight
21. I intend to .... Luxor and Aswan in the mid-year holiday.
   a. treat b. tour c. trap d. trick
22. You will need this pair of glasses to watch .... films.
   a. tourist attraction b. team player
   c. three-dimensional d. time management
23. I was chosen to give my company's .... in the conference.
   a. tale b. tear c. temple d. talk
24. This decent behaviour is .... of a gentleman like you.
   a. typical b. trifling c. talkative d. tight
25. My mother has gone to work and locked the front door. Now I am .... inside.
   a. treated b. toured c. trapped d. tricked
26. To .... from English to Arabic, you have to follow how sentences are formed in Arabic.
   a. turn down b. tear c. trick d. translate
27. No one would enjoy the company of such a .... fellow.
   a. typical b. technical c. talkative d. tight

Uu

uncertain(adj)	غير متأكد / مؤكَد	unpleasant(adj)	غير سار - غير ودود
uncover(ed) (v)	يكتشف - يكشف عن	unused(adj)	غير مُستَخدَم
underneath(adv)	أسفل - تحت	update(d) (n/v)	تحديث - يُحدِّث
unearth(ed) (v)	يستخرج بالحفر في التربة	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت
unique(adj)	فريد/مُمَيَّز	upset(adj)	مُنزعِج
universal(adj)	شامل- شائع- عامّ	up-to-date(adj)	حديث
universe(n)	الكون	urgent(adj)	عاجل/ مُلِحّ

Vv

value(d) (n/v)	قيمة - يعرف قيمة	violate(d) (v)	يخالف - ينتهك
variety(n)	التنوع - التعددية	virtual(adj)	افتراضي
various(adj)	متنوع	visual(adj)	بصري
vary(ied) (v)	يُنوِّع - يتنوع - يُغيِّر	visuals(n)	مؤثرات بصرية - مرئيات
vehicle(n)	مَركَبة	voice call(ed) (v)	يجرى مكالمة فيديو

veil(n)	نقاب - بُرقُع - حِجاب	vital(adj)	هام / حيوى
verbally(adv)	شَفهياً	volunteer(ed) (v/n)	يتطوع - متطوع
version(n)	نُسخة/إصدار	vote(d) (n/v)	تصويت/اقتراع - يُصوِّت/يقترع

Ww

wander(ed) (v)	يتجوّل - يهيم	while(n/conj)	فترة - بينما
want(n)	الحاجة/الرغبة	whilst(conj)	بينما - برغم أن
warn(ed) (v)	يُحذِّر	whisper(ed) (v/n)	يهمس - همسة
warning(n)	تحذير	widely-spoken (adv)	يتم التَحَدُّث بها على نطاق واسع
waste(n)	تضييع/إهدار	willing(adj/n)	مُستعد/راغب في - رغبة
wealthy(adj)	ثري	win(n)	فوز
welfare(n)	ازدهار - راحة	wisdom(n)	الحكمة
well-worth (adj)	جدير بـ	wonder(ed) (v)	يتساءل/يستفسر
well-balanced (adj)	مُتَّزن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	wonders(n)	عجائب
well-being(n)	العَافيَة/ السلامة/السعادة	working knowledge(n)	المعرفة العملية
well-known(adj)	معروف/مشهور	working life(n)	الحياة العملية
well-paid(adj)	مُجزي	world record(n)	رقم قياسي عالمي
well-preserved(adj)	مُحنَّط جيداً - جيد الحفظ	wrap(ped) (v)	يُغلِّف
Welsh(n/adj)	اللغة الويلزية - ويلزيّ	wrist(n)	مِعصَم اليدّ
wetlands(n)	مستنقعات		

Exercise On Letters Uu / Vv / Ww

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I .... if you could help me understand this lesson, Mr Ali.
   a. wander b. vary c. wrap d. wonder
2. A bright white .... covered the bride's head.
   a. variety b. veil c. universe d. wisdom
3. The Egyptian Museum is .... a visit
   a. universal b. unpleasant c. wealthy d. well-worth
4. To enjoy .... means to be comfortable, healthy and happy.
   a. working knowledge b. well-being c. world record d. working life
5. Professor Magdy Yacoub is a .... heart surgeon.
   a. well-being b. well-built c. well-known d. well-timed
6. She .... something in her mother's ear and soon the mother looked upset.
   a. whispered b. warned c. unearthed d. voted
7. I will go and see if things are OK with Omar. He looks ....
   a. up-to-date b. urgent c. unused d. upset
8. Temperatures .... according to the time of the day and the time of the year.
   a. value b. vary c. wrap d. wonder

9. We believe that the whole seen and unseen .... was created by Allah.
a. variety b. veil c. universe d. wisdom

10. Facing the coronavirus pandemic is a/an .... issue.
a. universal b. willing c. wealthy d. Welsh

11. A .... diet keeps you healthy and exercise keeps you fit.
a. well-balanced b. well-paid c. well-known d. well-preserved

12. We have been .... not to make private calls during duty hours.
a. whispered b. warned c. unearthed d. voted

13. His knowledge, his passion and his .... from years of experience were very valuable to our program.
a. variety b. veil c. universe d. wisdom

14. It is said that being healthy is better than being ....
a. universal b. unpleasant c. wealthy d. well worse

15. I trust his .... as he has been working in this field for twenty five years.
a. working knowledge b. well-being c. world record d. working live

16. This company produces .... foods that do not go rotten quickly.
a. well-balanced b. well-paid c. well-known d. well-preserved

17. The nurse .... the bandage around the injured finger.
a. valued b. varied c. wrapped d. wondered

18. None of us liked the .... comment you have made.
a. universal b. unpleasant c. wealthy d. well worth

19. English and Arabic are .... languages. A high percentage of the world's population use them in communication.
a. well-balanced b. widely-spoken c. well-known d. well-preserved

2 Important Vocabulary

20. I am thinking of a good way to benefit from the .... space on the roof.
a. up-to-date b. urgent c. unused d. upset

21. He .... to collect money for the charity.
a. updated b. violated c. wondered d. volunteered

22. This swimmer has set a new .... for the 100-metre race.
a. working knowledge b. well-being c. world record d. working life

23. The archaeologists .... a tomb full of ancient treasures.
a. whispered b. warned c. unearthed d. voted

24. We chatted for a ....
a. visual b. while c. win d. want

25. I am .... about her last decision. She might accept the offer or turn it down.
a. unique b. virtual c. willing d. uncertain

26. Try to keep your applications ....

a. up-to-date b. urgent c. unused d. upset

27. Try to .... your applications every now and then.

a. update b. violate c. wander d. volunteer

28. I .... for Salah in the FIFA Best-Player Award.

a. whispered b. warned c. unearthed d. voted

29. There have been very good results after our 3-0 .... over Libya.

a. visual b. while c. win d. want

30. Egypt is famous for its .... ancient monuments.

a. unique b. virtual c. willing d. uncertain

31. You must pay more attention to .... issues because they necessitate تستلزم immediate action.

a. up-to-date b. urgent c. unused d. uncertain

32. He had nothing to do, so he went out and .... aimlessly around the town.

a. updated b. violated c. wandered d. volunteered

33. He earns enough money as he has a .... job.

a. well-balanced b. well-paid c. well-known d. well-preserved

34. The film has picturesque .... that impress the viewers.

a. visuals b. whiles c. wins d. wants

35. .... meetings have become common during the coronavirus pandemic.

a. Unique b. Virtual c. Willing d. Uncertain

36. A good citizen is not supposed to .... the law.

a. update b. violate c. wander d. volunteer

37. I think .... in opinions enriches the discussion.

a. variety b. veil c. universe d. wisdom

38. He is very successful in his ...., but he is not so successful in his personal affairs.

a. working knowledge b. well-being c. world record d. working life

39. Our old house is in .... of repair.

a. visual b. while c. win d. want

40. She is .... to help you after she finishes the job in hand.

a. unique b. virtual c. willing d. uncertain

41. True innovators .... good work.

a. value b. vary c. wrap d. wonder

2 Definitions

في هذا القسم :

- جميع التعريفات (Definitions) الخاصة بالمنهج بالكامل (٣٠٥ تعريف)
- التعريفات حسب النسخة الأخيرة المعتمدة للكتاب المدرسي
- التعريفات مرتبة ابجدياً
- التعريفات من أهم نواتج التعلم التي يستهدفها واضع الامتحان

acquit(ted)(v) يُبرِّئ - يُخلي سبيل	to tell a person officially بشكل رسمي that they did not commit a crime
admirer(n) مُعجَب - مُغرَم	someone who likes a particular مُعيَّن person
adopt(ed)(v) يتبنى	to take legal قانونية responsibility for a person
adore(d)(v) يعشق - يحب ... بشدة	to love someone or something very much
alter(ed)(v) يُغيِّر - يتغيَّر	to change, or to make someone or something change
analyse(d)(v) يُحلِّل	to examine or think about something carefully, in order to understand it
ancestor(n) جدّ	a member of your family who lived a long time ago
announce(d)(v) يُعلِن	to officially رسمياً tell people about something, especially about a plan or a decision
apart from باستثناء	except for ما عدا
apply(ied)(v) يتقدم بطلب لـ	to make a formal request, usually written, for something such as a job, a place at a university, or permission إذن to do something
apprenticeship(n) تدريب مهني	the job of being an apprentice مُتدرِّب, or the period of time in which you are an apprentice
approach(n) نَهج/ تَوَجُّه/مَنحى	a way of viewing or doing something
appropriate(adj) ملائم	correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose غرض
argument(n) جدال - نقاش (حاد)	a situation in which two or more people disagree, often angrily
arrogant(adj) مغرور - متغطرس	someone who thinks they're better or more important than they really are
ashamed(adj) خجُول/ مَخزِيّ/ مُستَح	feeling embarrassed مُحرَج or bad about something
assess(ed)(v) يُقيِّم	to make a judgment حُكم about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it
astonished(adj) مَذهُول - شديد الاندهاش	extremely surprised
astronaut(n) رائد فضاء	someone who travels and works in a spacecraft سفينة فضاء
astronomer(n) عالم فلك	a scientist who studies the stars and planets الكواكب

award(n) جائزة - منحة	a prize or symbol رمز given to recognise an achievement انجاز
balanced(adj) متوازن - مُحايد	giving equal متساوي attention to all sides or opinions
banking procedures(n) الإجراءات المصرفية	steps that workers need to follow to complete a process in a bank
bar graph(n) رسم بياني بالأعمدة	a diagram رسم توضيحي that uses lines or narrow rectangles (= bars) مستطيلات/أعمدة of different heights ارتفاعات to show different amounts, so that they can be compared
bargain(n) صفقة	something on sale معروض للبيع cheaper than its real value
be convinced يكون مقتنعاً	to be completely sure that something is true
be in charge مسئول	to be responsible for or have responsibility for
behave yourself أحسِن التَصَرُّف	not to do things that annoy or offend يضايق people
benefactor(n) متبرِع/ مُتَصَدِّق	a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life
bias(n) تَحَامُل/ تَحَزُّب/ تَحَيُّز	an opinion about whether a person, group, or idea is good or bad that influences يؤثر علي how you deal تتعامل with it
bilingual(adj) ثنائي اللغة/مُجيد للغتين	able to speak two languages well
blacksmith(n) حَدَّاد	a person who makes things from iron الحديد, especially horseshoes حدوة الحصان
blog(ged)(v) يقوم بالتدوين	to keep a blog مُدوَّنة; to write something in a blog
boast(ed)(v) يتفاخر	to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements; or possessions ممتلكات
brainstorm(ed)(v) يستثير الفكر- يعصف ذهنياً	to have a discussion or meeting with other people at work, to suggest a lot of ideas for an activity or for solving a problem
bride(n) العروسة	a woman who is getting married
broadsheet(n) صحيفة رسمية	a newspaper printed مطبوعة on large sheets of paper, especially a serious جاد newspaper
burnout(n) الإنهاك/استنفاد الطاقة	a situation where you can't do anything because you're so tired and stressed
call(ed) on(phr.v) يَزور	to visit someone for a short time
candidate(n) مُرشَّح(الوظيفة)	a person who is interested in getting a specific job
candle(n) شمعة	something made of wax الشمع you burn to produce light
career direction(n) تَوَجُه/تَحَوُّل (وظيفي)	the way that someone is changing or developing their working life
carry on(phr.v) يستمر في	to continue doing something
catch(v) يقبض علي	to find a criminal or enemy and stop them from escaping

catch up with(phr. v) يواكب/يساير	to improve يتحسن and reach the same standard مستوى as other people in your class, group etc.
catch up with(phr. v) يلحق بـ	to come from behind الخلف and reach someone in front of you by going faster
challenge(n) تحدّي	something that tests strength, skill, or ability, especially in a way that is interesting
cheat(n) غشاش	someone who behaves in a dishonest غير أمين way in order to get something
cheer(ed)(v) يُهلّل - يبتهج	to give a shout of encouragement or joy
cheerful(adj) مبتهج/بشوش	happy, or behaving in a way that shows you are happy
chivalry(n) الشهامة	behaviour that is honourable, kind, generous, and brave, especially men's behaviour towards women
chop(ped)(v) يُقطّع - يُجزّئ	to cut into pieces
citizen journalism(n) صحافة المواطن	reports and pictures of events recorded مُسجّلة by ordinary people and shown especially on the internet
claim(ed)(v) يزعُم/يدّعي	to say something is true, although it has not been proved يثبت
clear-cut(adj) بيِّن/ مُحَدّد/ مُعَيّن/ وَاضِح	easy to understand or be certain about
clear off يزول - يُغادر مسرعاً	to leave a place quickly
clerk(n) مُوظّف (مكتبي)	a person who works in an office
client(n) عميل/زبون	someone who pays a person for a service or advice
coincidence(n) مصادفة	when things happen at the same time in a way that seems surprising or unusual
colossal(adj) جَسيم - هائل	very large - massive
column(n) عمود	a tall solid صلب upright رأسي stone post عمود used to support a building or as a decoration
commit (a crime) يرتكب جريمة	to do something which is illegal غير قانوني
common sense(n) حُسْن التَدَبّر	a simple understanding of how something works
compensate(d)(v) يُعوِّض	to replace or balance يوازن the effect of something bad
conclusion(n) الخلاصة/الخاتمة	the end of something such as a speech or a piece of writing
confirm(ed)(v) يؤكّد أن	to show that something is definitely true, especially by providing more proof برهان
conflict(n) صِراع	a situation in which you have to choose between two or more opposite needs, influences, etc.

contribution(n) مُساهَمَة/ مُشارَكَة	something you do to help make something successful
convict(n) مَسجُون - مُذنِب	someone who is in prison السجن for a crime
cope(d)(v) يساير/ يَتصدَّى / يُذلل	to deal with difficult situations
court(n) ملعب	an area made for playing games such as tennis
court(n) مَحْكَمَة	The place where a trial مُحاكمة is held تُعقَد, or the people there, especially the judges القُضاة
creature(n) مَخلوق/كائن	anything that is living, such as an animal, fish, or insect, but not a plant
criminal(n) مُجرِم	someone who commits a crime someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty of a crime
cross(adj) غاضب/ساخط/مُقاطِع	annoyed مضايق or quite angry
crouch(down)(v) يجلس القرفصاء	to lower your body close to the ground by bending your knees completely
cruel(adj) قاسي	deliberately عمداً hurting people or animals
curriculum vitae(CV)(n) السيرة الذاتية	a summary of a person's education, experience and skills
dam(n) سد	a special wall built across a river or stream to stop the water from flowing, especially in order to make a lake or produce electricity
dare(d)(v) يجرؤ	to be brave شجاع enough to do something
dark(adj) مُظلِم - كئيب	- if it is dark, there is little or no light - if you have dark feelings or thoughts, you are very sad or worried
decline(d)(v) ينخفض بشدة - ينهار	to decrease in quantity الكمية or importance الأهمية
dedicated(adj) مُخصَّص/مُكرَّس	made for or used for only one particular purpose غرض مُعيَّن
deep-seated(adj) مُتأَصِّل/ مُتَجذِّر	strong and very difficult to change
deliberately(adv) عمداً/عن قصد	done in a way that is intended مقصود or planned
demand(ed)(v) يطالب - يأمر	to ask for something in a very strict صارم and serious way
desert(ed)(v) يهجر - يترك	to leave someone or something and you no longer help or support them
dig up(phr.v) يعثر علي/يستخرج	to remove يزيل something from the ground
disaster(n) كارثة/مصيبة	big problems or accidents

dismiss(ed)(v) يفصل من العمل	to make someone leave their job
dominant(adj) سائد – مُنتشِر – مُسَيطِر	more important or noticeable ملحوظ
drugs(n) أدوية – عقاقير	medicines or things that make medicines
dusty(adj) مُغْبَر / يَعْلوهُ الغُبارُ	covered with dust الغبار
editorial(n) افتتاحية	a piece of writing in a newspaper that gives the editor's opinion about something, rather than reporting facts
efficiency(n) كفاءة	the quality of doing something well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy
elaborate(adj) مُركَّب- مُتقَن – مُعقَّد	very complicated and detailed; carefully prepared and organized
elegant(adj) أنيق – ذكي	- beautiful, attractive, or graceful - an idea or a plan that is elegant, it is very intelligent and very simple
elegant(adj) أنيق	having an attractive and graceful حَسَن appearance
embrace(d)(v) يَتَبَنَّى – يعانق – يحتوي	to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion etc.
employment(n) التوظيف – التشغيل	when someone is paid to do a job
entertaining(adj) مُسَلٍّ/مُمتِع	amusing and interesting
entrepreneur(n) رائد أعمال	someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals صفقات in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks مخاطرات مالية
eternal(adj) أبدي – أزلي	continuing for ever and having no end
evaluate(d)(v) يُقَيِّم	to judge يحكم how good, useful, or successful something is
evidence(n) دليل	facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true
exhausted(adj) مُنهَك/مُرهَق	describing the feeling of being very tired
expectations(n) أحلام – تَطَلُّعات	feelings that good things will happen
experiment(ed)(v) يُجري تجربة /يُجرِّب	to use scientific methods طُرق to find something out or discover something
extravagant(adj) مُسرِف/مُبذِّر – مُغالى	someone who spends too much money
eye contact(n) التواصل البصري	when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you
fable(n) الحكاية الرمزية	a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals

faint(adj) مصاب بدوار	feeling weak and as if you are about to become unconscious because you are very ill, tired, or hungry غير واعي
fear(ed) (v) for يخشى على	the feeling you get when you are afraid or worried that something bad is going to happen to someone or something
fiancé(n) خاطب	a man who has promised to marry someone
fiercely(adv) بعنف	strongly or severely
file(n) مِبْرَد	a metal tool with rough خشن surfaces for shaping تشكيل or smoothing صقل metal
flood(ed)(v) يفيض - يغمر بالمياه	to cover land with a large amount of water
follow-up(n) متابعة	something that is done to make sure that earlier actions have been successful or effective
fortune(n) ثروة	a lot of money
from now on من الآن فصاعداً	an action that starts at a specific مُحدَّد point in time and continues into the future
frown(ed)(v) يعبس/يتجهَّم- يقطب حاجبيه	to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression; moving your eyebrows حاجبين together
full-time(adj) بدوام كامل	a job someone does for the whole of the working week
funeral(n) جنازة	a religious ceremony for burying someone who has died
gatekeeper(n) بواب - حارس عقار	a person whose job is to guard يحرس an entrance مَدخَل
gateway(n) بوابة/ مَعبَر	a place through which you can go to reach another larger place
get away(phr. v) يهرب	to escape
get engaged تتم خطبته/خطبتها	to formally promise to marry someone
gloomy(adj) مظلم	dark, especially in a way that makes you feel sad
gloomy(adj) كئيب/ متشائم	sad because you think the situation will not improve
grab(bed)(v) يجذب/يشد	to get hold of something suddenly or roughly بعنف
grateful(adj) شاكرٌ للجَميل/ ممتن	feeling thankful and lucky
grumpy(adj) حاد الطبع /مُتَأفِّف	bad-tempered معكر المزاج and easily annoyed
guide(d)(v) يُرشد	to take someone to a place
half-brother(n) أخ غير شقيق	someone who is the son of one of your parents
hammer(n) شاكوش	a tool with a heavy piece of metal at the end of a long handle مقبض

hand in(phr. v) يُسلّم (شيء لمسئول)	to give something to someone in authority
handcuffs(n) قيود (كلابشات) اليدين	two metal rings حلقتين linked together which are locked مقفولة around a prisoner's wrists معصم
handle(n) مقبض	the part of an object that you use for holding it
heritage site(n) موقع تراث	a place which has a historic importance
highlight(n) الجزء الأبرز	the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports competition
honourable(adj) شريف/مُبجّل	behaving in a way that is morally أخلاقياً correct and shows you have high moral standards معايير
human being إنسان	a human/a person
human resources (HR) قسم الموارد البشرية	the department قسم/ديوان that finds people to work and organises training at a company
humble(adj) متواضع	not considering yourself or your ideas to be as important as other people's
identity(n) هويّة	who you are as a person
immerse(d)(v) يُبهر - يجذب	- to become or make somebody completely involved in something - involve ينهمك/ يُورّط yourself deeply in
implement(ed)(v) يُطبّق/يُنفّذ	to start using a system
impression(n) انطباع	the opinion or feeling you have about someone or something because of the way they seem
impressive(adj) مُبهر	making you admire it because it is very good, large, important, etc.
improve(d)(v) يَتحسّن	to get better
in charge(adj) مسئول	being responsible for
inaccurate(adj) خاطئ/ غير دقيق	not completely correct
incident(n) حادث / حدث	- an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent - a formal word meaning 'event'
inconvenient(adj) غير ملائم	causing difficulties or problems
incredible(adj) رائع - خرافي - غير معقول	too strange غريب to be believed, or very difficult to believe
independent(adj) مُستقل	confident واثق and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people
influence(d)(v) يؤثّر على	to have an effect on the way someone behaves
inherit(ed)(v) يرث	to receive money from someone after they die

innovation(n) الابتكار/الإبداع	- the introduction of new ideas or methods طُرُق - a new idea, method, or invention
inspiration(n) إلهام	- a person, experience, place, etc. that gives you new ideas for something you do - a good idea about what you should do, write, say, etc., especially one which you get suddenly
install(ed)(v) يُثبّت/يُنصّب	to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used
intern(n) مُتدرب مهني	a person who is working at a company for a short time to get work experience
internship(n) التدريب المهني	when someone works for a company to get work experience
investigate(d)(v) يُحقّق	to try to find out the truth الحقيقة about something such as a crime, accident, or scientific problem
IT= information technology(n) تكنولوجيا المعلومات	the study or use of electronic processes عمليات and equipment for storing تخزين information and making it available
jealous(adj) حاقد - حاسد - غيور	feeling unhappy and angry because someone else has something you want
join(ed)(v) ينضم إلي	to begin to take part in يشارك في an activity that other people are involved in يقوم بـ
keep away from يبقي بعيداً عن	to avoid going to or seeing
knight(n) فارس	a man with a high rank in the past who was trained to fight while riding a horse
landmark(n) مَعلَم بارز	an important building or object شيء
lawyer(n) محامي	a person who can help you with legal problems مشكلات قانونية
lecturer(n) مُحَاضِر	a person who teaches at a university
legend(n) أسطورة	an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical سحري events
leg-irons(n) قيود (كلابشات) القدمين	two metal rings linked with a chain سلسلة, which are attached to a prisoner's ankles كاحل
life experience(n) خبرة أو تجربة حياتية	the knowledge you gain from life
life-changing يؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة	something so important that it results in يؤدى إلى your life being different
lodging(n) مأوي/مَسْكَن	a room or rooms in a house that a person rents
long-term(adj) بعيد المدي	continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future

look back(phr. v) ينظر للخلف - يُفكر فيما مضى	- to look at something behind you - to think about something that happened in the past
look into(phr. v) يبحث عن/في - يُحقق في	to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc. in order to solve it
majority(n) أغلبية	most of the people or things in a group
marsh(n) مُستنقع	low ground which is usually wet
mass-produced(adj) مُنتَج بكميات كبيرة	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine
mausoleum(n) ضريح	a large stone building made specially to contain the body of a dead person, or the dead bodies of an important family
measure(n) معيار - اجراء - مقياس	- an action, especially an official one, that is intended to deal with a particular problem
mental health(n) الصِّحَّةُ النَّفْسِيَّة/ العقليّة	how a person thinks and the emotions مشاعر they feel
minority(n) أقلية	a small group of people or things within a much larger group
miserable(adj) بائس/تعيس	extremely unhappy, for example because you feel lonely, cold, or badly treated يَلْقي معاملة سيئة
mislead - misled(v) يُضلّل/يخدع	to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete
monolingual(adj) أحادى اللغة	able to speak only one language
moral(n) مَغْزَى أخلاقي	a practical عملي lesson about what to do or how to behave, which you learn from a story or from something that happens to you
mother tongue(n) لغة المَنشأ - اللغة الأم	the first language you learn as a baby
moving(adj) مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر	making you feel strong emotions مشاعر, especially sadness or sympathy التعاطف
multicultural(adj) مُتعدِّد الثقافات	including people with many different customs عادات and beliefs معتقدات
multilingual(adj) متعدد اللغات	able to speak a number of languages
murder(ed)(v) يقتل	to kill a person
must-see(n) جدير بالرؤية	- something that is so good, exciting, or interesting that you think people should see it - highly recommended as worth seeing
mute(d)(v) يكتم/يُصمِّت	to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely
my heart is set on عازم - مُصمِّم	when you really want something or want to do something

my heart sinks يتتابني الياس	I lose hope or confidence
myth(n) أسطورة	an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events
mythology(n) علم الأساطير/ أسطوريات	a set of ancient myths
naughty(adj) شقي/مُشاغب	doing something that is not right صواب or good, but is not very serious خطير
night watchman(n) حارس ليليّ	someone whose job is to guard a building at night
occur(red)(v) يَحدُث	to happen or exist in a particular مُحدَّد place or situation
omission(n) الحذف - الاستبعاد	- the act of not including somebody/something or not doing something - the fact of not being included or done
organisational(adj) تنظيمي - مؤسسي	relating to the way an organization and its activities are planned and arranged
pandemic(n) جائحة	a disease that affects people over a very large area or the whole world
part-time(adj) بدوام جزئي/لبعض الوقت	a job someone only does for some of the working week
patient(adj) صبور	able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept يتقبل difficulties, people's annoying behaviour, etc. without becoming angry
pay off(phr. v) يُسدِّد (دَيْن)	to give someone the money you owe them
percentage(n) نسبة مئوية	an amount expressed يُعبَّر عنه as if it is part of a total مجموع which is 100
permanent(adj) دائم	continuing to exist for a long time or for all the time in the future
perspective(n) مفهوم/ منظور	a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences
physicist(n) فيزيائي/خبير في الفيزياء	an expert خبير in physics
pick up(phr.v) يشتري	to buy something cheaply
picturesque(adj) خلّاب - بديع المنظر	beautiful and possibly old
piracy(n) القرصنة - السرقة الأدبية/العلمية	when someone illegally بشكل غير قانوني copies and sells someone's work
placement(n) وَضع (في مكان مُعيَّن)	the act of placing something somewhere
planet(n) كوكب	a very large round object in space that moves around the Sun or another star

podcast(n) إذاعة رقمية - منصة صوتية	a file of recorded sound and sometimes pictures that you can download from the Internet
point of view رأي/وجهة نظر	the particular attitude توجُّه or opinion that somebody has about something
port(n) ميناء	a town or city with a harbour مَرسي or docks رصيف شحن where ships can be loaded يشحن or unloaded يُفرِّغ
pout(ed)(v) يستاء (يُبوِّز/يُكشِّر)	to push out your lower lip الشفة السُفلي because you are annoyed or unhappy
prejudice(n) انحِيَاز/ تَحَامُل/ ظلم	an unfair غير عادل or unreasonable غير منطقي opinion because you do not have enough knowledge معرفة
pride(n) الفخر	a feeling that you are proud of something that you or someone connected with you has achieved
priority(n) أولوية	the thing that you think is most important and that needs attention before anything else
process(n) عملية/نظام	a method of producing something
procrastinate(d)(v) يُسوِّف/يُماطِل	to delay doing something that you ought to do, usually because you do not want to do it
procrastination(n) التسويف/المماطلة	the act of delaying something that you should do, usually because you do not want to do it
productive(adj) مُثمِر - مُنتِج	producing or achieving a lot
productivity(n) الإنتاجية	the rate مُعدَّل at which goods are produced, and the amount produced
progress(n) تَقدُّم/تَحسُّن	the process عملية of getting better التَحَسُّن at doing something, or getting closer to finishing or achieving something
promote(d)(v) يُروِّج لـ	to tell people about something
promote(d)(v) يُعزِّز/يدعم/يُطوِّر	to help something to develop or increase
proof(n) دليل - بُرهان	an object or some information that shows something is true
property(n) عقار	a building that belongs to you
qualify(ied)(v) يتأهل - يتخرَّج	to successfully finish a training course so you can do a job
quality(n) سِمة - خاصية	something that people may have as part of their character, for example courage or intelligence
quote(d)(v) يقتبس	to give a piece of information that is written down somewhere
raise(d)(v) يرفع - يزيد	to increase an amount, number, or level
raise(d)(v) يُربِّي	to help a child grow up
record(n) سِجل	information about something that is written down مُدوَّنة or stored مُخزَّنة on computer, film etc. so that it can be looked at in the future

recover(ed)(v) يشفي - يسترد عافيته	to get better from an illness or injury إصابة
reflect(ed)(v) يعكس/يُبيِّن	to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling
reinvent(ed)(v) يعيد تأهيل - يُشكِّل من جديد	to change who you are, e.g., by starting a different job
relate(d)(v) يتفهَّم	to feel that you understand someone's problem, situation, etc.
related(adj) ذو قرابة	an adjective to describe that you are part of the same family as another person
remains(n) بقايا/أطلال	the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared
residential(adj) سَكَني	a residential part of a town consists of private houses, with no offices or factories
role model(n) قدوة - مَثَل أعلى	a person young people can look up to يُقدِّر/يُبجِل and try to be like them
root(n) أصل - منشأ - جِذر	the origin or main part of something such as a custom, law, activity, etc. from which other things have developed
rough(adj) خشن/ غير منصقل	something that has an uneven غير مستوٍ surface; not smooth مصقول
round(n) جولة	one of the parts of a competition that you have to finish or win before you can go on to the next part
rowing(n) التجديف	the action of moving a boat on water using long sticks
ruin(ed)(v) يُدمِّر	to completely spoil something
scold(ed)(v) يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ	to angrily criticize ينتقد someone, especially a child, about something they have done
scream(ed)(v) يصرخ	to make a loud high noise with your voice because you are hurt, frightened, excited, etc.
self-care(n) العِنَايَةُ الذَاتِيَة	taking care of رعاية your body and how you feel
sensor(n) جهاز استشعار - مِجَس	a piece of equipment that can find or measure يقيس light, heat, sound etc.
set off(phr.v) ينطلق/يبدأ رحلة	to begin a journey
shake(d)(v) يَرُجّ	to move quickly from side to side or up and down
share(d)(v) يُشارك - يتقاسم	- to have or use something with other people - to divide something so that each person gets a part of it
shocked(adj) مصدوم	very surprised and upset مُنزعِج
sigh(ed)(v) يتنهد	to breathe in and out making a loud sound
significant(adj) هام/ ذو مغزى	having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future

solar system(n) النظام الشمسي	the Sun and the planets that go around it
spacecraft(n) سفينة فضاء	a vehicle مَرْكَبة that is able to travel in space
spark(n) شرارة	a very small piece of burning material produced by a fire or by hitting or rubbing احتكاك two hard objects together
speaker(n) سماعة	a device جهاز through which sound is heard
spectacularly(adv) بإبهار/بشكل مدهش	- in an extremely good, exciting, or surprising way - in a very impressive مُبهر way
spider's web(n) شبكة عنكبوت	a net of thin threads خيوط made by a spider to catch insects
spin(n) تلفيق - خلط الأمور	the way someone talks about information or a situation, especially in order to influence the way people think about it
spoil - spoiled/ spoilt(v) يُفسِد	to have a bad effect on something so that it is no longer attractive جذاب, enjoyable, useful, etc.
start-up(adj.n) مبدئي - انطلاقة/بداية	connected with starting a new business
steady(adj) ثابت/رصين	keeping the same regular pace الوتيرة المعتادة
steamer(n) باخرة	a large ship that uses steam to produce power
stereotype(n) فكرة نمطية - قالب	a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like, which is often not true in reality الواقع
stir(red)(v) يُقلِّب	to mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it
strategy(n) خطة/سياسة (استراتيجية)	a planned series سلسلة of actions for achieving something
stress(n) الإجهاد/ الضغط	a feeling of being very worried and scared خائف
stretch out(v) يتمدد - يتَمَطى	to extend يفرد your arms and legs
suppose(d)(v) يفترض	to think that something is probably true, based on استناداً إلى what you know
surface(n) سطح	the outside or top layer طبقة of something
surgeon(n) جَرَّاح	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better
surgery /operation(n) جراحة - عملية جراحية	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged
surround sound(n) الصوت المُجسَّم	a system of four or more speakers used so that sounds from a film or television programme come from all directions
surround(ed)(v) يُحيط بـ	to be all round (someone or something)
suspect(ed)(v) يتّهِم	- to think that someone is probably guilty مُذنِب of a crime - to think that something is probably true, especially something bad

switch ... off(phr.v) يُوقف/يُطفئ	to turn off a machine, light, radio, etc. using a switch مفتاح
switch ... on(phr.v) يُشغِّل	to turn on a machine, light, radio, etc. using a switch
switch(ed) off(v) يستريح لفترة قصيرة(يفصل)	to relax for a short time
tabloid(n) صحيفة شعبية / صحيفة صفراء	tabloid newspapers have small pages and short articles with a lot of pictures and stories about famous people, and are often thought of as less serious than other newspapers
take my mind off أحاول أن أنسي - أصرف ذهني عن	to stop thinking about something which is negative
take revenge on ينتقم من	to do something bad because someone has upset you or made you sad
team player(n) شخص يجيد العمل في فريق	someone who works well as a member of a team, especially in business
tear(n) دَمْعَة العين	a drop قطرة of liquid which comes from the eye when you are sad
temple(n) مَعبَد	a building used for a religious ديني reason
tie(d) up(phr.v) يُقيِّد	to tie someone's arms, legs, etc. so that they cannot move
tight(adj) ضيق	fitting closely to your body and sometimes uncomfortable
time management(n) إدارة الوقت	organising when you do things and for how long
to be worth the effort يستحق ما يُبذل من جهد	something that is useful or good but difficult to do
tourist attraction منطقة جذب سياحي	a place that many tourists visit
tournament(n) بطولة	a competition in which players compete يتنافس against each other in a series سلسلة of games until there is one winner
treatment(n) علاج - معالجة	something to try and make you feel better after an injury إصابة or when you are ill
turn ... down(phr.v) يُخفض الصوت/ الحرارة	to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio, etc. so that it produces less heat, sound, etc.
turn ... up(phr.v) يرفع الصوت/ الحرارة	to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio, etc. so that it produces more heat, sound, etc.
universal(adj) شامِل- شائع- عامّ	involving everyone in the world or in a particular group
universe(n) الكون	all space, including all the stars and planets
unpleasant(adj) غير سار - غير ودود	- not pleasant or enjoyable - not kind or friendly

upset(adj) مُنزعج	unhappy and worried because something unpleasant غير سار or disappointing مُخيِّب للآمال has happened
vary(ied)(v) يُنوِّع - يتنوع - يُغيِّر	to be different from each other in size, shape, etc.
veil(n) نِقاب - بُرقُع - حِجاب	a piece of fine material قماش ناعم worn to protect or hide your face
wait with bated breath ينتظر بفارغ الصبر	a phrase meaning waiting with a lot of nervousness التوتُّر and excitement
well-balanced(adj) جيد التوازن - مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	sensible حكيم and does not allow strong emotions مشاعر to control their behaviour
well-being(n) العَافِيَة/ السلامة/السعادة	how good you feel in your body and how happy you are
well-known(adj) معروف/مشهور	known by a lot of people
whisper(ed)(v/n) يهمس - همسة	to say something very quietly
wisdom(n) الحكمة	the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions
working knowledge(n) المعرفة العملية	a basic level of practical knowledge

Test 1 Noun Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A .... is something you do to help make something successful.
a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition

2. A/An .... is a prize or symbol given to recognise an achievement.
a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

3. A/An .... is a competition in which players compete against each other in a series of games until there is one winner.
a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

4. A .... is a person young people can look up to and try to be like them.
a. lecturer b. physicist c. sportswoman d. role model

5. A/An .... is an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent.
a. incident b. aircraft c. tabloid d. broadsheet

6. A/An .... is a newspaper printed on large sheets of paper, especially a serious newspaper.
a. incident b. aircraft c. tabloid d. broadsheet

7. .... newspapers have small pages and short articles with a lot of pictures and stories about famous people, and are often thought of as less serious than other newspapers.
a. Incident b. Aircraft c. Tabloid d. Broadsheet

8. .... is an opinion about whether a person, group, or idea is good or bad that influences how you deal with it.
   a. Placement   b. Omission   c. Spin   d. Bias
9. Your .... is the particular attitude or opinion that somebody has about something.
   a. citizen journalism   b. point of view
   c. exaggeration   d. act of placement
10. .... is the way someone talks about information or a situation, especially in order to influence the way people think about it.
   a. Placement   b. Omission   c. Spin   d. Bias
11. .... means reports and pictures of events recorded by ordinary people and shown especially on the internet.
   a. Citizen journalism   b. Point of view
   c. Exaggeration   d. The act of placement
12. .... is the act of finding somebody a suitable job or place to live.
   a. Placement   b. Omission   c. Spin   d. Bias
13. A .... is low ground which is usually wet.
   a. marsh   b. convict   c. soldier   d. character
14. A .... is a person who makes things from iron, especially horseshoes.
   a. plumber   b. blacksmith   c. mechanic   d. receptionist
15. A .... is someone who is in prison for a crime.
   a. marsh   b. convict   c. soldier   d. character
16. .... are two metal rings linked with a chain, which are attached to the prisoner's ankles.
   a. File   b. Blacksmith   c. Leg-irons   d. Handcuffs
17. .... are two metal rings linked together which are locked around a prisoner's wrists.
   a. Files   b. Blacksmiths   c. Leg-irons   d. Handcuffs
18. A .... is a metal tool with rough surface for shaping or smoothing metal.
   a. file   b. blacksmith   c. leg-iron   d. handcuff
19. .... is an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you do not have enough knowledge.
   a. Tournament   b. Award   c. Round   d. Prejudice
20. A .... is a fixed idea about what a person or thing is, like which is often not true in reality.
   a. stereotype   b. contribution   c. court   d. competition

Test 2 Adjectival Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... means unhappy and worried because something unpleasant or disappointing has happened.
   a. To be worth the effort   b. To be from now on
   c. My heart was set on   d. Upset
2. To be .... means to be completely sure that something is true.
   a. persuasive   b. convinced   c. grumpy   d. jealous
3. .... means causing difficulties or problems.
   a. Illustrated   b. Inconvenient   c. Mass-produced   d. Essential

4. .... means made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine.
a. Illustrated b. Inconvenient c. Mass-produced d. Essential
5. .... means covered with dust.
a. Connected b. Dusty c. Gloomy d. Individual
6. .... means dark, especially in a way that makes you feel sad.
a. Connected b. Dusty c. Gloomy d. Individual
7. .... means feeling thankful and lucky.
a. Miserable b. Ashamed c. Grateful d. Grumpy
8. The adjective .... means below the temperature at which water turns to ice.
a. freezing b. scared c. petrified d. frightening
9. To be .... means to be extremely frightened, especially so frightened that you cannot move or think.
a. scaring b. terrifying c. petrifying d. petrified
10. To be .... to death means to be frightened.
a. terrific b. terrifying c. petrifying d. scared
11. If something is ...., it is extremely frightening.
a. terrified b. terrifying c. scared d. petrified
12. The adjective .... means not completely correct.
a. balance b. balanced c. accurate d. inaccurate
13. To be .... means giving equal attention to all sides or opinions.
a. balance b. balanced c. accurate d. inaccurate
14. .... means extremely unhappy, for example because you feel lonely, cold, or badly treated.
a. Naughty b. Grumpy c. Miserable d. Inspiring
15. The adjective .... means having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future.
a. cruel b. cross c. patient d. significant
16. .... means deliberately hurting people or animals.
a. Cruel b. Cross c. Patient d. Significant
17. To be .... is to be able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept difficulties, people's annoying behaviour, etc without becoming angry.
a. cruel b. cross c. patient d. significant
18. The adjective .... means doing something that is not right or good, but is not very serious.
a. naughty b. grumpy c. miserable d. inspiring
19. A/An .... person is bad-tempered and easily annoyed.
a. naughty b. grumpy c. miserable d. inspiring
20. .... means feeling embarrassed or bad about something.
a. Miserable b. Ashamed c. Grateful d. Grumpy

Test 3 Noun Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The .... is all space, including all the stars and planets.
a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system

2. A/An .... is a vehicle that is able to travel in space.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
3. The .... is the Sun and the planets that go around it.
a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system
4. A/An .... is a method of producing something.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
5. A/An .... is someone who travels and works in a spacecraft.
a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. physicist
6. A .... is an area made for playing games such as tennis.
a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition
7. A/An .... is one of the parts of a competition that you have to finish or win before you can go on to the next part.
a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice
8. A .... is an expert in physics.
a. lecturer b. physicist c. chemist d. biologist
9. A/An .... is the end of something such as a speech or a piece of writing.
a. conclusion b. introduction c. inspiration d. bar graph
10. A/An .... is an amount expressed as if it is part of a total which is 100.
a. prejudice b. eye contact c. percentage d. body
11. .... means a small group of people or things within a much larger group.
a. Minority b. Majority c. Podcast d. Stereotype
12. .... is when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you.
a. Prejudice b. Eye contact c. Percentage d. Bar graph
13. .... means most of the people or things in a group.
a. Minority b. Majority c. Podcast d. Stereotype
14. A/An .... is a diagram that uses lines or narrow rectangles of different heights to show different amounts, so that they can be compared.
a. pie graph b. eye contact c. percentage d. bar graph
15. The noun .... means a lot of money.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride
16. A .... is a piece of fine material worn to protect or hide your face.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride
17. A .... is something made of wax you burn to produce light.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride
18. A .... is a woman who is getting married.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride
19. A .... is the outside or top layer of something.
a. surface b. planet c. universe d. solar system
20. A/An .... is a way of viewing or doing something.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation

Test 4 Verbal Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To .... is to deal with difficult situations.
   a. cope b. promote c. alter d. pour
2. To .... is to angrily criticize someone, especially a child, about something they have done.
   a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose
3. To .... is to help something to develop or increase.
   a. cope b. promote c. alter d. improve
4. To .... is to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression, moving your eyebrows together.
   a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose
5. To .... means to get better.
   a. cope b. promote c. alter d. improve
6. To .... means to become or make somebody completely involved in something.
   a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
7. To .... yourself means not to do things that annoy or offend people.
   a. behave b. lay c. lead d. evolve
8. To .... is to think that something is probably true, based on what you know.
   a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose
9. To .... is to send people away from a dangerous place to a safe place.
   a. plunge b. rescue c. evacuate d. skid
10. To .... is to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete.
    a. petrify b. mislead c. skid d. plunge
11. To .... means to begin a journey.
    a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away
12. To .... means to escape.
    a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away
13. To .... means to do something which is illegal.
    a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away
14. To .... means to get hold of something suddenly or roughly.
    a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away
15. To .... is to successfully finish a training course so you can do a job.
    a. honour b. generate c. extract d. qualify
16. To .... is to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling.
    a. raise b. speculate c. reflect d. pause
17. To .... is to mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it.
    a. stir b. prejudice c. stereotype d. shake
18. To .... is to start using a system.
    a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
19. To .... is to be all round someone or something.
    a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse

20. To .... is to use scientific methods to find something out or discover somethin

a. experiment   b. surround   c. implement   d. immerse

Test 5 Noun Definitions

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An .... is a tool with a heavy piece of metal at the end of a long handle.
   a. expectation   b. hammer   c. proof   d. property
2. A/An .... is a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life
   a. astronaut   b. astronomer   c. counsellor   d. benefactor
3. A/An .... is an object or some information that shows something is true.
   a. expectation   b. hammer   c. proof   d. property
4. A/An .... is a building that belongs to you.
   a. expectation   b. hammer   c. proof   d. property
5. .... means taking care of your body and how you feel.
   a. Mental health   b. Well-being   c. Self-care   d. Burnout
6. .... is a feeling of being very worried and scared.
   a. Time management   b. Stress   c. Well-being   d. Mental healt
7. .... are feelings that good things will happen.
   a. Expectations   b. Hammers   c. Proofs   d. Properties
8. .... means how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.
   a. Mental health   b. Well-being   c. Self-care   d. Burnout
9. A/An .... is a device through which sound is heard.
   a. astronomer   b. astronaut   c. speaker   d. extremist
10. A .... is a very large round object in space that moves around the Sun or another sta
    a. surface   b. planet   c. universe   d. solar system
11. .... is the study or use of electronic processes and equipment for storing information and making it available.
    a. AI   b. IT   c. PhD   d. CV
12. A/An .... is information about something that is written down or stored on computer, film etc. so that it can be looked at in the future.
    a. approach   b. innovation   c. record   d. process
13. A .... is a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.
    a. speaker   b. sensor   c. device   d. podcast
14. A/An .... is when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove somethin that is damaged.
    a. treatment   b. surgery   c. operation   d. b & c
15. A/An .... is a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better.
    a. surgeon   b. astronomer   c. astronaut   d. operator
16. .... are medicines or things that make medicines.
    a. Apps   b. Applications   c. Drugs   d. a & b
17. A spider's .... is a net of thin threads made by a spider to catch insects.
    a. web   b. nest   c. cage   d. argument

18. A/An .... is a situation in which two or more people disagree, often angrily.
a. web b. nest c. cage d. argument

19. .... is the job of being an apprentice, or the period of time in which you are an apprentice.
a. Teacher b. Apprentice c. Apprenticed d. Apprenticeship

20. .... means organising when you do things and for how long.
a. Time management b. Stress c. Well-being d. Mental health

Test 6 Verbal & Adjectival Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To be .... means to often be in a bad mood.
a. persuasive b. convinced c. grumpy d. jealous

2. To be .... means feeling unhappy and angry because someone else has something you want.
a. persuasive b. convinced c. grumpy d. jealous

3. To .... is to agree to marry someone and give them a ring.
a. get engaged b. adore c. dare d. inherit

4. To .... is to be different from each other in size, shape, etc.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary

5. To .... is to decrease in quantity or importance.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary

6. To .... is to make a judgment about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary

7. To .... revenge on means to do something bad to someone who was unpleasant to you.
a. take b. adopt c. inherit d. share

8. To .... is to receive something from someone after they die.
a. adopt b. get engaged c. dare d. inherit

9. To .... is to be strong or brave enough.
a. adopt b. get engaged c. dare d. inherit

10. To .... is to legally take someone else's child into your family.
a. adopt b. get engaged c. dare d. inherit

11. To .... is to turn a machine, light, radio, etc. off using a switch.
a. switch … on b. switch … off c. look into d. catch up with

12. To .... is to begin to take part in an activity that other people are involved in.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install

13. To .... is to come from behind and reach someone in front of you by going faster.
a. switch … on b. switch … off c. look into d. catch up with

14. To .... is to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install

15. To .... is to turn on a machine, light, radio, etc. using a switch.
a. switch … on b. switch … off c. look into d. catch up with

16. To .... is to have or use something with other people.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install
17. To .... is to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio, etc. so that it produces more heat, sound etc.
a. switch ... on b. turn ... up c. switch ... off d. turn ... down
18. To .... is to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces less heat, sound, etc.
a. switch ... on b. turn ... up c. switch ... off d. turn ... down
19. To .... is to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install
20. To .... is to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime, etc. in order to solve it.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. catch up with

Test 7 Verbal Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To .... is to buy something cheaply.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
2. To .... is to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion, etc.
a. shape b. participate c. influence d. embrace
3. To .... is to give something to someone in authority.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
4. To .... is to find something by chance.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
5. To .... is to help a child grow up.
a. rise b. arise c. arouse d. raise
6. To .... is to have a discussion or meeting with other people at work to suggest a lot of ideas for an activity or for solving a problem.
a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
7. We say something is .... when it is useful or good but difficult to do.
a. worth the effort b. from now on c. my heart was set on d. upset
8. To .... is to cut into pieces.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
9. To .... means to be responsible for or have responsibility for.
a. be charged b. trace c. be in charge d. apply
10. To .... is to change who you are, e.g., by starting a different job.
a. cycle b. recycle c. invent d. reinvent
11. To .... is to think that someone is probably guilty of a crime.
a. adapt b. suspect c. upset d. remain
12. To .... is to delay doing something that you ought to do, usually because you do not want to do it.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
13. To .... is to relax for a short time.
a. delay b. achieve c. raise d. switch off

14. To .... is to increase an amount, number, or level.
a. delay b. achieve c. raise d. switch off
15. To .... is to judge how good, useful, or successful something is.
a. blog b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
16. To .... is to keep a blog; to write something in a blog.
a. blog b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
17. To .... is to examine or think about something carefully in order to understand it.
a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
18. To .... is to continue doing something.
a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
19. To .... is to extend your arms and legs.
a. look back b. stretch out c. cheer d. boast
20. To .... is to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions.
a. look back b. stretch out c. cheer d. boast

Test 8 Noun Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An .... is something that tests strength, skill, or ability, especially in a way that is interesting.
a. inspiration b. value c. challenge d. role model
2. A/An .... job is a job that someone only does for some of the working week.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time
3. A .... is a person who works in an office.
a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé
4. A .... is a man who has agreed to marry someone.
a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé
5. A .... is someone who is the son of one of your parents.
a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé
6. .... is the quality of doing something well and effectively without wasting time, money, or energy.
a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
7. .... is the act of delaying something that you should do, usually because you do not want to do it.
a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
8. .... is the rate at which goods are produced, and the amount produced.
a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
9. .... means facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.
a. Blog b. Priority c. Evidence d. Strategy
10. The .... is the department that finds people to work and organises training at a company.
a. human resources b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship
11. A/An .... is a person who is interested in getting a specific job.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate

12. A/An .... is a person who is working at a company for a short time to get work experience.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate

13. A/An .... is big problems or accidents.
a. human resource b. disaster c. curriculum vitae d. internship

14. A/An .... is a summary of a person's education, experience, and skills.
a. human resource b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship

15. A/An .... is when someone works for a company to get work experience.
a. human resources b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship

16. A/An .... job is one someone does for the whole of the working week.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time

17. A/An .... means a person.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate

18. A/An .... is the thing that you think is most important and that needs attention before anything else.
a. blog b. priority c. evidence d. strategy

19. .... means to often be in a bad mood.
a. Glad b. Jealous c. Persuasive d. Grumpy

20. A/An .... is a good idea about what you should do, write, say, etc., especially one which you get suddenly.
a. inspiration b. value c. challenge d. role model

Test 9 Noun Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... is the simple understanding of how something works.
a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense

2. .... means doing something to make a difference to a situation.
a. Working knowledge b. Contribution c. Life experience d. Career direction

3. .... means the knowledge you gain from life.
a. Working knowledge b. Contribution c. Life experience d. Career direction

4. .... is when someone is paid to do a job.
a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense

5. A .... is a place which has a historic importance.
a. myth b. heritage site c. tourist attraction d. remains

6. A .... is an important building or object.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

7. .... are the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared.
a. Myths b. Heritage sites c. Tourist attractions d. Remains

8. A .... is a town or city with a harbour or docks where ships can be loaded or unloaded.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

9. A .... is a place that many tourists visit.
a. myth b. heritage site c. tourist attraction d. remain

10. A .... is a building used for a religious reason.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

11. A/An .... is the opinion or feeling you have about someone or something because of the way they seem.
 a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial
12. A/An .... is a disease that affects people over a very large area or the whole world.
 a. editorial b. start-up c. impression d. pandemic
13. A/An .... is something that is done to make sure that earlier actions have been successful or effective.
 a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial
14. A/An .... is connected with starting a new business.
 a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial
15. A .... is someone who works well as a member of a team, especially in business.
 a. journalist b. journalism c. player d. team player
16. A .... is a tall solid upright stone post used to support a building or as a decoration.
 a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column
17. A .... is something on sale cheaper than its real value.
 a. myth b. bargain c. tourist attraction d. remain
18. A .... is a special wall built across a river or stream to stop the water from flowing, especially in order to make a lake or produce electricity.
 a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway
19. .... is the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions.
 a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense
20. .... is a basic level of practical knowledge.
 a. Working knowledge b. Contribution
 c. Life experience d. Career direction

Test 10 Adjectival Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... means producing or achieving a lot.
 a. Individual b. Productive c. Impossible d. Common
2. .... means making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness or sympathy.
 a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving
3. .... means confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people.
 a. Specific b. Independent c. Extreme d. Impressive
4. Something that is .... makes you admire it because it is very good, large, important, etc.
 a. specific b. independent c. extreme d. impressive
5. Something that is .... is continuing forever and having no end.
 a. eternal b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time
6. Something that is .... is very large.
 a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time
7. .... means correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose.
 a. Organisational b. Permanent c. Residential d. Appropriate

8. .... means consisting of private houses, with no offices or factories.
a. Organisational b. Permanent c. Residential d. Appropriate

9. The adjective .... means continuing to exist for a long time or for all the time in the future.
a. organisational b. permanent c. residential d. appropriate

10. Someone who is .... is able to speak a number of languages.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural

11. A person who is .... is sensible and does not allow strong emotions to control their behaviour.
a. well-balanced b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural

12. .... means including people with many different customs and beliefs.
a. Monolingual b. Bilingual c. Multilingual d. Multicultural

13. The adjective .... means strong and is very difficult to change.
a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. elaborate

14. The adjective .... means relating to the way an organization and its activities are planned and arranged.
a. organisational b. permanent c. residential d. appropriate

15. .... means continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future.
a. Organisational b. Long-term c. Residential d. Appropriate

16. Something that is .... is so important that it results in your life being different.
a. potential b. life-changing c. enabled d. up-to-date

17. .... means made for or used for only one particular purpose.
a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving

18. When something is ...., it is known by a lot of people.
a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. unknown

19. .... means relating to the work of managing a company or organization.
a. Sacred b. Elaborate c. Administrative d. Picturesque

20. The adjective......... describes something beautiful and possibly old.
a. sacred b. elaborate c. dedicated d. picturesque

Test 11 Noun Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A .... is something that is so good, exciting, or interesting that you think people should see it.
a. highlight b. must-see c. mausoleum d. gateway

2. .... is a feeling that you are proud of something that you or someone connected with you has achieved.
a. Pride b. Proud c. Gap d. Generation

3. A/An .... is a member of your family who lived a long time ago.
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. mixture

4. A/An .... means the origin or main part of something such as a custom, law, activity etc., from which other things have developed.
a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact

5. A .... is a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals.
   a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
6. .... is a set of ancient myths.
   a. Mythology b. Conflict c. Solution d. Setting
7. A .... is a large stone building made specially to contain the body of a dead person, or the dead bodies of an important family.
   a. highlight b. must-see c. mausoleum d. gateway
8. A .... is the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports competition.
   a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway
9. A .... is a place through which you can go to reach another larger place.
   a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway
10. Your .... is who you are as a person.
   a. second language b. identity c. mother tongue d. ability
11. Your .... is the first language you learn as a baby.
   a. second language b. identity c. mother tongue d. ability
12. Something that is .... is more important or noticeable.
   a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. dominant
13. A .... is an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events.
   a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
14. A .... is an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events.
   a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
15. A .... is anything that is living, such as an animal, fish, or insect, but not a plant.
   a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature
16. A .... is a situation in which you have to choose between two or more opposite needs, influences, etc.
   a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting
17. A .... is a drop of liquid which comes from the eye when you are sad.
   a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
18. A .... is a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences.
   a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature
19. The .... is the end or final part of something.
   a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature
20. .... means how a person thinks and the emotions they feel.
   a. Mental health b. Well-being c. Self-care d. Burnout

Test 12 Mixed Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... means very complicated and detailed; carefully prepared and organized.
   a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving

2. Someone who is .... is able to speak two languages well.
   a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural
3. When a piece of information is ...., it is easy to understand or be certain about.
   a. well-known b. deep-seated c. clear-cut d. dominant
4. To .... is to give a shout of encouragement.
   a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
5. To be .... means behaving in a way that is morally correct and shows you have high moral standards.
   a. honourable b. humble c. steady d. generous
6. To .... is to think about something that happened in the past.
   a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
7. To .... means to do two different activities at the same time.
   a. combine b. flood c. look back d. cheer
8. A .... means a member of a council.
   a. counsellor b. councillor c. conclusion d. creature
9. To .... is to cover land with a large amount of water.
   a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
10. To be .... means not considering yourself or your ideas to be as important as other people's.
   a. humble b. generous c. polite d. fed up
11. To .... is to feel that you understand someone's problem, situation, etc.
   a. intend b. approach c. relate d. bounce
12. .... means amusing and interesting.
   a. Relevant b. Universal c. Entertaining d. Boring
13. .... means involving everyone in the world or in a particular group.
   a. Relevant b. Universal c. Entertaining d. Boring
14. To be .... means keeping the same regular pace.
   a. honourable b. humble c. steady d. generous
15. .... means annoyed or quite angry.
   a. Cruel b. Cross c. Patient d. Significant
16. He is a cruel person who's a ....
   a. broken heart b. heart of stone c. change of heart d. good heart
17. .... means in an extremely good, exciting or surprising way.
   a. Extremely b. Hopefully c. Potentially d. Spectacularly
18. '.........' is an adjective that describes the feeling of being very tired.
   a. Mental b. Exhausted c. Poor d. Urgent
19. You say '.........' when you really want something or want to do something.
   a. to be worth the effort b. from now on
   c. my heart is set on d. upset
20. We say '.........' to describe an action that starts at a specific point in time and continues into the future.
   a. to be worth the effort b. from now on
   c. my heart is set on d. upset

PART 2

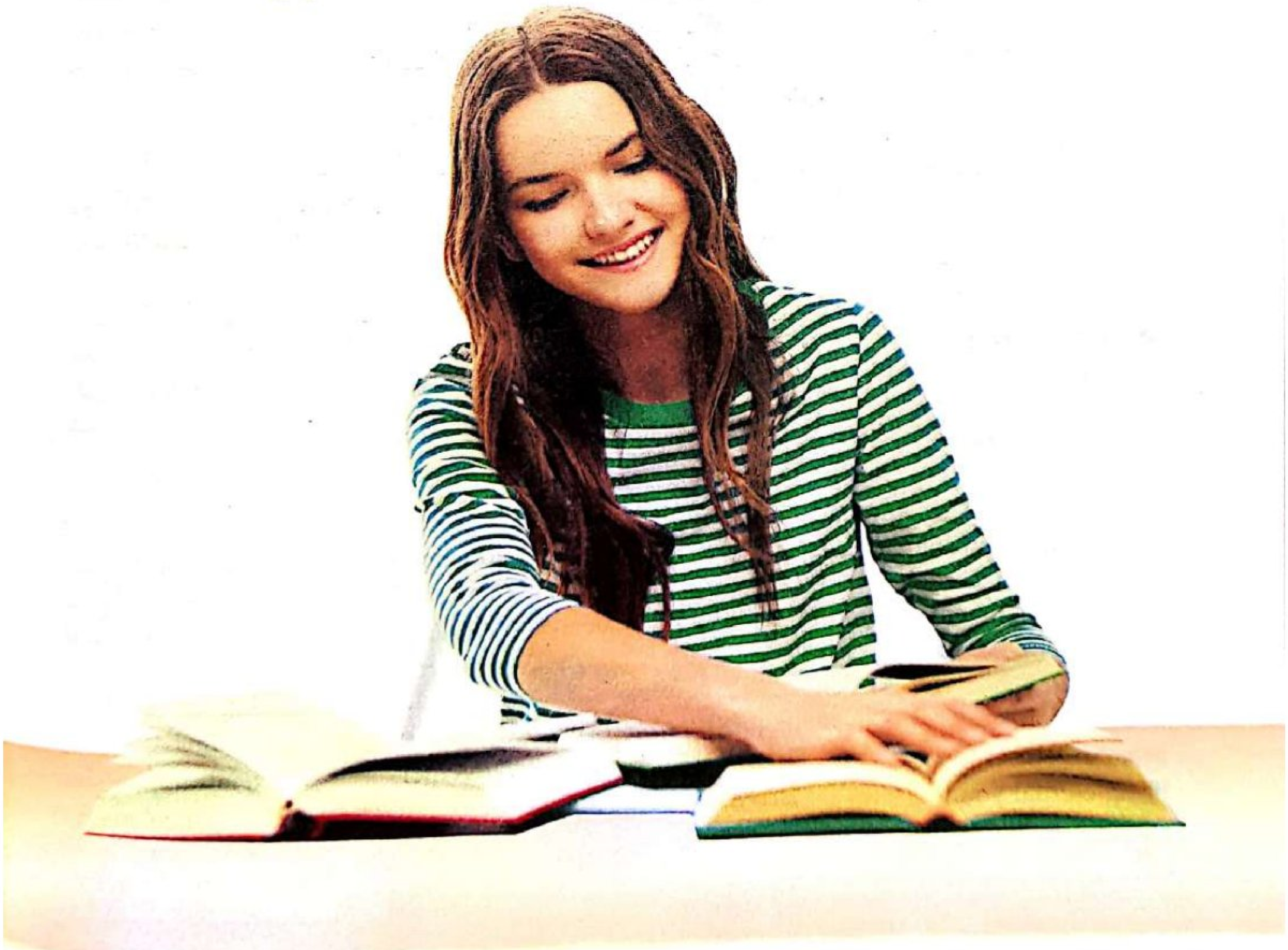
Excellence File

A Three-day Revision based on Vocabulary Study and Language Notes

في هذا الجزء

- أهم المتلازمات اللفظية المرتبطة بالأفعال (Verbal Collocations) بالترتيب الأبجدي والتصنيف + التدريبات
- أهم المترادفات والمتضادات (Synonyms & Antonyms) + التدريبات
- خلاصة التعبيرات والمصطلحات (Expressions & Idioms) + الملاحظات والتدريبات
- أهم الأفعال المرتبطة بحرف جر (Verb + Preposition) + الملاحظات والتدريبات
- المعاني والمشتقات المختلفة للكلمات الرئيسية (Derivatives) + التدريبات
- قواعد ما بين السطور (Grammatical Hints) + التدريبات

• Understand • Apply • Create



Section 1 Verbal Collocations

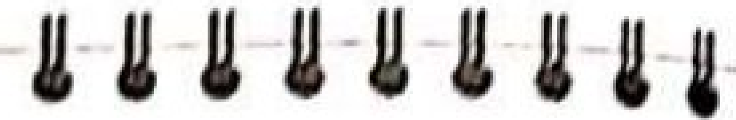
في هذا القسم :

جميع المتلازمات اللفظية (Verbal Collocations) الاكثر اهمية في المنهج.

المتلازمات مرتبة ابجدياً.

تم تصنيف المتلازمات الخاصة بأكثر الأفعال شيوعا في جداول مستقلة.

Remember



❶ يتلازم الفعل مع الاسم بغض النظر عن الصفة التي تفصل بينهما:

- do voluntary work يقوم بعمل تطوعي
- do work يقوم بعمل
- do physical work يقوم بعمل بدني
- do manual work يقوم بعمل يدوي

❷ يتلازم الاسم مع أكثر من فعل بمعاني مختلفة، لاحظ:

- get a job يحصل علي وظيفة
- do a job يقوم بعمل
- change jobs يُغيّر وظيفته
- take/follow advice يعمل بالنصيحة
- give advice ينصح/يقدم النصح

1 Alphabetically classified Collocations

Achieve

achieve firsts	يحقق الريادة	achieve success	يحقق نجاح
achieve a position	يُحقق مكانة	achieve career goals	يحقق أهداف مهنية
achieve set goals	يُحقق الأهداف الموضوعة		

Avoid

avoid prejudice	يتجنب التَحَيُّز	avoid the negative effects	يتجنب الأثار السلبية
avoid doing	يتجنَّب القيام بـ.....	avoid burnout	يتجنب الإنهاك

Be

be a team player	يجيد العملِ ضمن فريق	be proud of	يفخر بـ
be a success	يكون ناجحاً	be debatable	يكون مثيراً للجدل
be aware	يكون على علم بـ	be immersed in	يندمج في
be an inspiration to	يكون مصدر إلهام لـ		

Become

become the main source of	يصبح المصدر الرئيسي لـ	become addicted to	يصبح شغوفًا / مدمناً لـ
become practical	يصبح عملياً	become more productive	يُصبح أكثر إنتاجية
become a member of a club	ينضم لنادي	become free	يُصبح متاحاً

Bring

bring benefits	يجلب منافع	bring attention to	يلفت الإنتباه لـ
bring ... closer to	يُقرِّب ... من	bring ... together	يُجمِّع - يَضُم
bring eternal youth	يَجلب الشباب الدائم		

entrepreneurship(n)	ريادة الأعمال -المجازفة الاقتصادية	essential(adj)	جوهري/ضروري
equality(n)	المساواة	extravagant(adj)	مُسرف/مُبذر - متطرف
error(n)	خطأ	eye contact(n)	التواصل البصري
escape(d)(n-v)	مهرب - مفر - يهرب	eyewitness(n)	شاهد عيان
ESB Robotics(n)	علم الروبوتات الوسيطة	extinct(adj)	مُنقرض - خامد

Exercise On Letter Ee

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Your .... is what will help you achieve real success.
   a. efficiency b. equality c. entrepreneur d. emergency
2. We are all .... about our next match. I can't wait.
   a. embarrassed b. exhausted c. elaborate d. enthusiastic
3. All families must be .... from this very old building. It is about to collapse.
   a. enquired b. embraced c. evacuated d. experimented
4. I wish the two sisters would stop their .... arguments. They are always arguing about one thing or another.
   a. eternal b. elastic c. elderly d. economic
5. Children gain .... support from their family.
   a. entrepreneurial b. emotional c. entertaining d. experienced
6. The .... of solar energy to generate electricity helps reduce pollution.
   a. employment b. expectation c. expedition d. explanation
7. It is rather .... to buy five suits of the same colour and material.
   a. endangered b. entertaining c. essential d. extravagant
8. .... know when exactly to take risk.
   a. Exaggerations b. Entrepreneurs c. Eye contacts d. Eyewitnesses
9. Taking risk المجازفة is the essence of ....
   a. efficiency b. equality c. entrepreneurship d. emergency
10. Long working hours leave me totally ....
    a. embarrassed b. exhausted c. elaborate d. enthusiastic
11. Omar .... about where I lived.
    a. enquired b. embraced c. evacuated d. experimented
12. The office can't do without this .... secretary.
    a. entrepreneurial b. emotional c. extended d. efficient
13. Everyone has their own .... which they would like to achieve.
    a. employments b. expectations c. expeditions d. explanations
14. It is necessary to make .... with those to whom you talk.
    a. exaggeration b. entrepreneur c. eye contact d. eyewitness
15. My guest felt .... when she dropped and broke a vase.
    a. embarrassed b. exhausted c. elaborate d. enthusiastic
16. Scientists usually .... on mice.
    a. enquire b. embrace c. evacuate d. experiment

17. She looked great in her .... dress.
a. entrepreneurial b. emotional c. elegant d. efficient
18. The museum is full of ...., mostly statues and mummies.
a. expenses b. exhibits c. excerpts d. exceptions
19. I have no clear .... that he commited this crime, so I can't arrest him.
a. evidence b. editorial c. extinct d. except
20. The museum has an .... security system.
a. embarrassed b. exhausted c. elaborate d. enthusiastic
21. When I returned home, my mother .... me warmly.
a. enquired b. embraced c. evacuated d. educated
22. He has such an .... spirit that he is always waiting for the next challenge.
a. entrepreneurial b. emotional c. elegant d. efficient
23. .... for Sama, no one else refused to eat their burgers.
a. Evidence b. Editorial c. Extinct d. Except

2 Important vocabulary

24. Law must guarantee يضمن .... among citizens in rights and duties.
a. efficiency b. equality c. entrepreneurship d. emergency
25. I have never .... such a situation before. That's why I was puzzled.
a. experienced b. electric-powered c. evacuated d. extended
26. A judge sometimes depends on the testimony شهادة of a trustworthy ....
a. exaggeration b. entrepreneur c. eye contact d. eyewitness
27. Your unreasonable decisions .... the future of the organisation.
a. evaluate b. evolve c. endanger d. exaggerate
28. A material is .... when it recovers its shape.
a. external b. elastic c. elderly d. economic
29. All citizens without any .... must follow the law.
a. expense b. exhibit c. excerpt d. exception
30. Without ...., Salah is the most successful Egyptian footballer ever.
a. exaggeration b. entrepreneur c. eye contact d. eyewitness
31. Sinai is the .... part of Egypt.
a. experienced b. electric-powered c. easternmost d. extended
32. The injured man was taken to the .... department.
a. efficiency b. equality c. entrepreneurship d. emergency
33. Khalid is an .... friend. We all enjoy his company.
a. endangered b. entertaining c. essential d. extravagant
34. Like the panda, polar bears are .... species of animals that are about to die out.
a. endangered b. entertaining c. essential d. extravagant
35. It will not be easy for the actors to perform this .... scene.
a. experienced b. electric-powered c. easternmost d. extended
36. My old shop has .... into this large supermarket.
a. evaluated b. evolved c. endangered d. exaggerated
37. When an animal is ...., this means it has already died out.
a. evidence b. editorial c. extinct d. except

Develop

develop a new approach	يُطوِّر طريقة جديدة	develop a start-up idea	يطور فكرة مبدئية
develop a printing process	يُطور طريقة طباعة	develop new skills	يُنمّي مهارات جديدة
develop a social media strategy	يُطوِّر استراتيجية للتواصل عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	develop key skills	يُطوِّر المهارات الأساسية

Do

do (carry out) an operation	يُجري جراحة	do exams	يحل امتحانات
do a job	يقوم بعمل - يؤدي مهمة	do exercise	يتمرن
do a project	يقوم بدراسة/بحث	do hobbies	يمارس هوايات
do a session	يقوم بجلسة	do procrastination	يُماطل/يُسوِّف
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	do research	يُجري أبحاث
do a study	يقوم بدراسة/بحث	do revision	يُراجع
do a task	يؤدي مهمة	do some writing	يؤلِّف
do a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية	do the best you can	يبذل أقصى ما بوسعه
do an activity	يمارس نشاط	do the housework	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية
do an experiment	يُجري تجربة	do well	يؤدي بشكل جيد
do an internship	يقضي فترة تدريب مهني	do work	يقوم بعمل
do business	يقوم بنشاط اقتصادي	do/ conduct a survey	يجرى إستطلاع رأى

feel

feel afraid	يشعر بالخوف	feel like	يرغب في/يريد - يشعر وكأنه
feel exhausted	يشعر بالإرهاق	feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
feel free to	لا تتردد في أن - لديك الحرية في أن	feel positive	لديه شعور ايجابي
feel frustrated	يشعر بالإحباط	feel stressed about	يشعر بالتوتر من
feel good	يشعر انه بخير	feel safe	يشعر بالأمان

follow

follow advice	يعمل بالنصيحة	follow his passion	يتبع شغفه
follow the direction arrows	يتتبع إتجاه الأسهم	follow the correct route	يأخذ المسار الصحيح

get

get (better) grades	يحصل على درجات (أفضل)	get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	get married	يتزوج
get angry	يَغْضَب	get older	يكبر في السن
get anxious	يتوتر - يقلق	get paid to	يتقاضى أجراً لكي
get better organised	يُصبح أكثر تنظيماً	get regular updates	يحصُل على تحديثات منتظمة
get bored	يسئم/يمل	get stressed about	يتوتر من
get cross with	يخاصم / يقاطع / يغضب من	get the same results	يحصل على نفس النتائج
get dirty	يتسخ	get together	يلتقي - يتجمَّع
get distracted	يتشتت	get very impatient	ينفذ صبره
get enough sleep	ينام بشكل كاف	get wet	يصيبه البلل
get engaged	تتم خطبته/خطبتها	get started	يبدأ

give

give … confidence	يمنح … الثقة	give examples	يعطي أمثلة
give … responsibility	يُكلف … بمسئولية	give feedback on	يقدم بعض الملاحظات عن
give a lecture	يُحاضر	give reasons	يعطي مبررات
give a presentation	يُقدِّم عرضاً تقديميًا	give talks	يلقي خطب
give a shout	يُطلِق صيحة	give the situation	يوضِّح الموقف
give an answer to	يجيب علي	give training	يدرِّب
give an explanation	يُقدِّم تفسيراً	give work	يوظف
give evidence	يُقدِّم الدليل/يبرهن		

Have

have … in common	لديهم …. مشترك	have an accident	يتعرض لحادث
have a break	يأخذ استراحة	have an effect on	لديه تأثير علي
have a career	لديه مهنة	have an impact on	لديه تأثير
have a copy of	لديه نسخة من	have an influence on	لديه تأثير علي
have a difficulty	يواجه موقف صعب	have contact (with)	لديه تواصل (مع)
have a memory of	لديه ذكرى	have control over	لديه تحكم في
have a passion for	لديه شغف بـ	have fun	يمرح - يستمتع
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	have internet access	لديه امكانية الدخول على الإنترنت
have a problem with	لديه مشكلة في	have little interest in	لديه اهتمام قليل بـ
have a social responsibility	عليه مسئولية اجتماعية	have pride in	لديه شعور بالفخر بـ
have a talk about	يتحدث عن	have the power to	لديه القوة لـ
have a tough time	يمر بوقت عصيب	have their own agenda	لديهم مصالح خاصة
have a broken heart	حزين جداً	have a virtual meeting	لديه اجتماع افتراضي
have a good heart	ذو قلب طيب	have... back	يستعيد …

Introduce

introduce laws	يُصدر / يسن قوانين	introduce a technology	يُطوِّر تكنولوجيا
introduce reasons	يُقدِّم أسباب	introduce an idea	يطرح فكرة

Keep

keep active	يظل نشيطاً	keep going	يستمر في التقدم
keep a diary	يُسجِّل مذكرات	keep up-to-date with	يواكب

Make

make … a success	يجعل … ناجحاً	make every effort	يبذل قصارى جهده
make a career in …	يتخذ … كمهنة	make eye contact	يقوم بالتواصل البصري
make a choice	يختار	make friends	يصادق
make a conclusion	يستنتج - يختتم	make history	يحقق مجد/ يصنع تاريخ
make a contribution to/in	يُقدِّم اسهامات لـ/في	make it clear that	يوضح أن
make a decision	يقرر	make links between	يربط بين
make a difference	يُحدث فرقاً	make medical treatment	يقوم بالعلاج الطبي
make a film	يُنتِج فيلم	make money	يكسب مال

make a fortune	يُكوّن ثروة	make noise	يُحدث ضجيجاً
make a list	يكتب قائمة	make predictions	يتنبأ
make a mistake	يُخطئ	make progress	يُحقق تقدماً
make a note	يُدوّن ملاحظة	make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
make a plan	يُعد خطة	make sure	يتيقن
make a speech	يُلقي خطبة	make the best of	يُحسن استغلال
make a successful student	يجعل الطالب ناجحاً	make the situation worse	يجعل الموقف أسوأ
make a summary of	يُعدّ تلخيص لـ	make time for	يوفر الوقت لـ
make an argument	يُقدم تبريراً - يطرح نقاش	make traps	ينصب فخاخاً
make an impression	يُكوّن انطباع	make videos	يُسجّل فيديو
make changes to	يُحدث تغييرات في		

Play

play the drums	يُطبّل - يدق الطبلة	play music	يُشغّل موسيقي/يعزف موسيقي
play the violin	يعزف علي الكمان	play a trick on	يُدبّر مقلباً لـ / يخدع
play a greater role	يلعب دوراً أكبر		

raise

raise a child	يُربّي طفلاً	raise productivity	يرفع الإنتاجية
raise a question	يطرح سؤال/موضوع	raise efficiency	يرفع كفاءة

Receive

receive a punishment for	يتعرض لعقوبة بسبب	receive a big reaction	يحصل على مردود (رد فعل) قوي
receive warnings from	يتلقى تحذيرات من	receive a scholarship	يحصل علي منحة دراسية

Share

share knowledge with	يتبادل المعلومات مع	share screen	يُشارك الشاشة
share ... on social media	يشارك ... على وسائل التواصُل	share documents	يشارك/يعرض وثائق

Show

show a decline in	يُظهر وجود نقص في	show respect to	يُظهِر الاحترام لـ
show ... how to	يوضّح لـ ... كيف	show ... online	يعرض ... على الإنترنت

Take

take a break	يأخُذ استراحة	take control of	يتحكّم في
take a course	يأخذ برنامج تدريبي	take exercise	يتمرن
take a day off	يحصل على يوم إجازة	take notes	يدوّن ملاحظات
take a different approach	يتخذ نهجا مختلفا	take place	يحدث
take a look	يلقي نظرة	take pride in	يفتخر بـ
take a photo/photograph	يلتقط صورة	take responsibility for	يتولى مسئولية
take a rest	يأخذ استراحة	take some snacks	يتناول وجبة خفيفة
take a ride	يذهب في جولة	take the risk	يغامر/ يخاطر
take a seat	يجلس	take time	يستغرق وقت
take action	يتصرف	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
take care of	يرعي - يعتني بـ		

Win

win a scholarship	يفوز بمنحة دراسية	win running races	يفوز بسباقات الجري
win the chance	يحصل على فرصة	win an award	يفوز بجائزة
win the vote	يفوز في اقتراع (انتخابات)		

2 Other Collocations

accept	the challenge يقبل التحدي	lose	his balance يفقد توازنه
accept	change يقبل بالتغيير	manage	time يُنظِّم الوقت
apply	a lesson يُطبِّق درساً مستفاداً	miss	identity يفتقد الهوية
assess	productivity levels يُقيِّم مستويات الإنتاجية	miss	friends يفتقد الأصدقاء
attach	a document يُرفق وثيقة - يرسل وثيقة كمرفق	miss	opportunities يُضيِّع الفُرَص
attend	a school يدرس في مدرسة	miss	school يتغيب عن المدرسة
award	… a prize يمنح … جائزة	monitor	your health/fitness تراقب صحتك/لياقتك
brainstorm	ideas يقوم بالعصف الذهني للأفكار	move	abroad يسافر للخارج
break down	stereotypes/ prejudices يُحطم الأفكار النمطية / التَحَيُّز	move	house ينتقل من بيت لآخر
build	a website يُنشئ موقع الكتروني	negotiate	the price يتفاوض على السعر
build	a solar-powered car يصمم سيارة تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	obtain	a PhD يحصل على الدكتوراه
build	a sense of pride يخلق إحساس بالفخر	offer	someone a job يعرض وظيفة على شخص
catch	a disease يُصاب بمرض	offer	a position يمنح/يعرض وظيفة
catch	up with your work تلحق بعملك	organise	a picnic يُنظِّم نُزهة خلوية
cause	serious damage to يسبب ضرر جسيم لـ	overcome	a challenge يكسب التحدِّي
cause	burnout يُسبِّب الإنهاك	overcome	the difficulties and prejudice يتغلب على الصعوبات والتَفرقَة (التحيُّز)
cause	a change يُسبب تغييراً	own	rights to يمتلك حقوق ..
celebrate	the contributions يحتفل بإسهامات	pass	the driving test يجتاز اختبار القيادة
celebrate	traditions يحتفي بالتقاليد	pass	Exams يجتاز الامتحانات
change	people's minds يُغيِّر رأي الناس	pay	debts يدفع ديون
change	(career) direction يُغير توجهه أو اتجاهه (مهنته)	pay	attention to يولي اهتمام بـ
check	the internet connection يتحقق من الاتصال بالإنترنت	pay	a large sum of money يدفع مبلغ كبير من المال
come	true يتحقق	perceive	change يلاحظ / يدرك التغيُّر

come	together يلتقي	**gain**	working knowledge يكتسب خبرة في العمل
compensate	... financially يُعوِّض ... مالياً	**perform**	mental tasks يؤدي مهام عقلية
cover	news stories يقوم بتغطية الأخبار	**perform**	an operation يُجري جراحة
create	a charity يُنشئ جمعية خيرية	**plan**	a multicultural festival يُعدّ لمهرجان مُتعدِّد الثقافات
create	opportunities يخلق فُرَص	**prepare**	a presentation يجهز عرض تقديمي
create	a study system يبتكر نظام استذكار	**present**	a view يُقدِّم رأي
cross	the finishing line يعبر خط النهاية	**present**	an idea يقوم بعرض فكرة
cry	tears يُذرف الدمع/يبكي	**promote**	the importance of يُعزِّز أهمية
cut	open يفتح - يَشُقّ	**put**	... in place يضع ... في المكان الصحيح
defend	himself يدافع عن نفسه	**put**	... in prison يحبس - يضع ... في السجن
defy	prejudice يتحدى التحيُّز	**put**	... in order يُرتِّب
defy	stereotypes يتمرد على الصور النمطية	**reach**	a long-term goal يحقق هدف على المدي الطويل
demand	a better pay يطالب بأجر أفضل	**reach**	a conclusion يصل لاستنتاج
discover	new cures يكتشف علاجات جديدة	**recognise**	her contribution to يعترف بإسهاماتها في
discover	new ideas يكتشف أفكار جديدة	**reflect**	the stereotype يعكس الصورة النمطية
draw	a conclusion يصل لاستنتاج	**require**	strength يتطلب قوة
email	the students يراسل الطلاب عن طريق البريد الإلكتروني	**ruin**	the surprise يُفسِد المفاجأة
embrace	change يتبني التغيير	**save**	lives ينقذ حياة
experience	stress يواجه ضغوطاً	**send**	... by air ينقل ... بالطائرات
experience	burnout يتعرض للإنهاك	**send**	... by ship ينقل ... بالسُفُن
explain	why يوضح السبب	**set**	a goal يضع هدفاً
explore	a culture يستكشف الثقافة	**set**	an alarm يضبط المنبه
face	challenges يواجه تحديات	**set**	a world record يُسجِّل رقماً قياسياً عالمياً
find	employment يجد عملًا	**shape**	personality يُشكِّل الشخصية
find	a proof يجد دليل	**solve**	complicated problems يحل المشكلات المُعقَّدة
find	a chance for يجد فرصة لـ	**sound**	like يبدو وكأنه
focus	attention on يركز الاهتمام علي	**spread**	false information ينشر أخبار كاذبة

gain	wisdom يكتسب الحكمة	**start**	a company يبدأ شركة
gain	life experience يكتسب خبرات حياتية	**stay**	connected to يبقي مرتبطاً /مُتصلاً
generate	electricity يولِّد كهرباء	**stay**	healthy يبقي بصحة جيدة
go	wrong يتعطل - يصاب بعطب	**stay**	in touch with يبقي على تواصل مع
go	back يعود/يرجع للوراء	**study**	... to a very high level يدرس ... حتي مستوي مُتقدِّم
go	down ينخفض - يهبط	**suggest**	a special technique يقترح تقنية خاصة
highlight	the problem يُبرز المشكلة	**suggest**	a solution يقترح حل
highlight	important details يُظَلِّل/يُبرز التفاصيل المهمة	**support**	each other يدعم بعضهم البعض
hold	a cultural festival يُقيم مهرجان ثقافي	**support**	an argument يدعم رأياً
hold	sporting events يُقيم أحداث رياضية	**support**	your opinion تدعم فكرتك
identify	the reasons يُحدد الأسباب	**survive**	extreme temperatures يبقي حياً في ظل درجات الحرارة المتطرفة
immerse	the audience يبهر الجمهور	**teach**	a lesson يُلقِّن درساً
improve	health care يُحسِّن الرعاية الصحية	**tell**	a story يحكي قصة
improve	well-being يزيد من الرفاهية	**tell**	the media يُخبر وسائل الإعلام
improve	productivity يُحسِّن الإنتاجية	**tour**	the world يطوف العالم
increase	the chances يزيد من فُرَص	**treat**	... with respect يعامل ... باحترام
increase	awareness of يرفع الوعي بـ	**try**	your best تبذل ما بوسعك
install	a software يُنصِّب / يُثبِّت برنامج	**unmute**	a microphone يلغي كتم الميكروفون
interpret	research يُفسِّر/يُحلِّل البحث	**use**	green technology يستخدم تكنولوجيا صديقة للبيئة
invent	a technology يخترع وسيلة تكنولوجية	**use**	a strategy يستخدم خطة (استراتيجية)
join	a virtual meeting ينضم لاجتماع افتراضي	**vary**	study habits يُغيِّر عادات المذاكرة
lead	a life يعيش حياة	**violate**	(copyright) law ينتهك قانون (حقوق النشر)
lead	downwards يؤدي لأسفل	**waste**	time and energy يهدر الوقت والجهد
leave	a comment يترك تعليقاً	**wear**	a heavy armour يرتدي درعاً ثقيلاً
look	real يبدو حقيقياً	**work**	part-time يعمل بدوام جزئي
look	Exhausted يبدو مُنهَكاً		

Tests
On Collocations

Test 1

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Be fair, man! Prejudice should be ....
a. achieved b. avoided c. held d. become
2. Arab people have many things in common, which should .... them together.
a. bring b. develop c. do d. feel
3. I've .... fed up with your procrastination. Get the job done, Amir.
a. had b. gave c. done d. got
4. He .... a warning from the bank. He has to pay back the loan. القرض
a. introduced b. played c. received d. took
5. .... a child is not easy. Children need a lot of care and interest.
a. Making b. Raising c. Doing d. Sharing
6. Winners never .... an opportunity.
a. win b. show c. miss d. monitor
7. Productivity level can be .... by raising the staff's pay.
a. negotiated b. accepted c. broken down d. assessed
8. His determination helped him .... prejudice and difficulties.
a. catch b. cause c. obtain d. overcome
9. Mr Ashraf noticed that I wasn't .... attention to what he was saying.
a. paying b. owning c. changing d. compensating
10. The new project will .... about 5,000 more jobs.
a. promote b. cut c. create d. perform

Test 2

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We all should .... negative stereotypes to get rid of the negatives in our customs.
a. reach b. defy c. demand d. draw
2. I really .... burnout. I haven't taken a break for ages.
a. experience b. demand c. role-play d. embrace
3. He works hard to reach the goals he has .... for himself.
a. explored b. fallen c. set d. focused
4. When you write a summary, only .... important details.
a. gain b. stay c. set d. highlight
5. The performance of the actors at the play .... the audience.
a. immersed b. toured c. tried d. led

6. Only great scientists and researchers .... firsts.

a. achieve b. avoid c. give d. bring

7. Mr Mohammed is good at .... start-up ideas.

a. playing b. developing c. doing d. missing

8. The photography session has been .... perfectly.

a. lost b. made c. done d. accepted

9. I know that the driving test needs more training, but I have decided to .... the risk.

a. introduce b. play c. receive d. take

10. A doctor needs to .... up-to-date with the latest developments in their field.

a. make b. raise c. keep d. share

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The family's doctor .... my mother's health.

a. wins b. loses c. misses d. monitors

2. Prices are not .... in this shop. They're final.

a. negotiated b. built c. attached d. assessed

3. Some people have to work for two or more employers, which .... burnout.

a. catches b. causes c. obtains d. overcomes

4. I haven't achieved much success as a journalist, so I need to .... my career direction.

a. pay b. own c. change d. compensate

5. In some cases, surgeons have to .... patients bodies open and operate on them.

a. promote b. cut c. create d. perform

6. In the last paragraph of an essay, the writer .... conclusions.

a. teaches b. defies c. ruins d. draws

7. After you have proven your efficiency, you can .... a better pay.

a. experience b. demand c. reflect d. embrace

8. I have travelled to many countries and had the chance to .... different cultures.

a. explore b. fall c. set d. focus

9. The so many life situations have made him .... wisdom.

a. gain b. stay c. support d. highlight

10. Don't worry about your success. Only .... your best.

a. immerse b. tour c. try d. lead

Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I can't take everything you say for granted! Some of your ideas can .... debatable.

a. achieve b. avoid c. be d. develop

. I .... positive about the recent decisions.

a. bring b. develop c. do d. feel

. The positive feedback we receive......... us confidence.

a. has b. gives c. does d. feels

. What role does your cousin Malak .... in your life?

a. raise b. play c. receive d. make

. If you find the screen of the mobile small, you can .... the video on the smart TV screen.

a. make b. raise c. keep d. share

5. Who .... the vote will be the leader.

a. wins b. shows c. misses d. monitors

7. Studying our great history at school .... a sense of pride in the fact that we are Egyptians.

a. negotiates b. builds c. breaks down d. attends

8. Professor Mansour .... his PhD in 2005.

a. caught b. caused c. obtained d. overcame

9. Those whose houses had been damaged in the earthquake were financially ....

a. paid b. owned c. changed d. compensated

10. Talk show discussions have .... the importance of developing the educational system.

a. promoted b. cut c. put d. performed

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't tell her what is wrapped inside. Do not .... the surprise.

a. reach b. defy c. ruin d. draw

2. We should .... change. The world is changing at a speedy pace.

a. defy b. fall c. solve d. embrace

3. It's better for the environment if we .... green technology.

a. focus b. use c. sit d. fine

4. He gave enough evidence to .... his argument.

a. survive b. stay c. support d. go

5. I wish I could .... the whole world one day.

a. immerse b. tour c. try d. unmute

6. Don't let young children .... addicted to online games.

a. achieve b. avoid c. have d. become

7. Graduates usually .... internships to gain practical experience.

a. bring b. develop c. do d. feel

8. The environment has an .... on us.

a. effect b. impact c. influence d. a, b & c

2. I .... positive about the recent decisions.
   a. bring b. develop c. do d. feel
3. The positive feedback we receive......... us confidence.
   a. has b. gives c. does d. feels
4. What role does your cousin Malak .... in your life?
   a. raise b. play c. receive d. make
5. If you find the screen of the mobile small, you can .... the video on the smart TV screen.
   a. make b. raise c. keep d. share
6. Who .... the vote will be the leader.
   a. wins b. shows c. misses d. monitors
7. Studying our great history at school .... a sense of pride in the fact that we are Egyptians.
   a. negotiates b. builds c. breaks down d. attends
8. Professor Mansour .... his PhD in 2005.
   a. caught b. caused c. obtained d. overcame
9. Those whose houses had been damaged in the earthquake were financially ....
   a. paid b. owned c. changed d. compensated
10. Talk show discussions have .... the importance of developing the educational system.
   a. promoted b. cut c. put d. performed

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't tell her what is wrapped inside. Do not .... the surprise.
   a. reach b. defy c. ruin d. draw
2. We should .... change. The world is changing at a speedy pace.
   a. defy b. fall c. solve d. embrace
3. It's better for the environment if we .... green technology.
   a. focus b. use c. sit d. fine
4. He gave enough evidence to .... his argument.
   a. survive b. stay c. support d. go
5. I wish I could .... the whole world one day.
   a. immerse b. tour c. try d. unmute
6. Don't let young children .... addicted to online games.
   a. achieve b. avoid c. have d. become
7. Graduates usually .... internships to gain practical experience.
   a. bring b. develop c. do d. feel
8. The environment has an .... on us.
   a. effect b. impact c. influence d. a, b & c

9. New laws have been .... to improve the investment activity in Egypt.
a. introduced b. played c. received d. taken

10. As a gold merchant, he's .... a fortune.
a. made b. played c. showed d. shared

Test 6

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This bar graph .... a decline in the number of deaths due to coronavirus.
a. wins b. shows c. misses d. moves

2. He was a great leader who .... racial عُنصريّ stereotype.
a. applied b. built c. broke down d. assessed

3. Do your best to .... up with your work.
a. catch b. cause c. obtain d. overcome

4. This company .... rights to all the films it has produced.
a. pays b. owns c. changes d. compensates

5. Dr Alaa .... an operation on an eighty-year-old man.
a. performed b. did c. creates d. a & b

6. Plan well and work hard in order to .... your long-term goals.
a. reach b. defy c. ruin d. draw

7. He has refused to give his sister her share of the inheritance, الميراث which .... his prejudice against women.
a. experiences b. demands c. reflects d. saves

8. Now, let's .... our attention on the next step.
a. explore b. fall c. set d. focus

9. I wish I could .... in touch with my friends after I leave university.
a. gain b. stay c. support d. highlight

10. As a child, he .... a happy life.
a. immersed b. toured c. interpreted d. led

Section II Synonyms & Antonyms

في هذا القسم :

- جميع المترادفات (Synonyms) للمفردات الرئيسية في المنهج بالكامل.
- جميع المتضادات (Antonyms) للمفردات الرئيسية في المنهج بالكامل.
- المترادفات والمتضادات حسب النسخة الأخيرة المعتمدة للكتاب المدرسي.
- المترادفات والمتضادات مرتبة ابجدياً.
- المترادفات والمتضادات من أهم نواتج التعلم المرتبطة بالمفردات والتي يستهدفها واضع الامتحان.

1 Synonyms المترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
achieve (v)	يُنجز - يحقق	reach / realise / fulfill / carry out
ancestors (n)	أجداد / أسلاف	forebears / forefathers
approach (n)	نَهْج/ تَوَجُّه/مَنحى	attitude/ method
approach (n)	طلب	proposal
approach (v)	يدنو من	go nearer/come near
artificial(adj)	اصطناعي - غير طبيعي	synthetic / unnatural
artificial(adj)	مُخْتَلَق - مُفْتَعَل -زائف	pretended / false
assess(ed) (v)	يُقيِّم	analyse / judge / evaluate
aware(adj)	علي علم بـ	conscious of, acquainted with, informed about/ of / familiar with / alert to
balanced(adj)	متوازن - عادل	fair / unbiased/ objective
bar graph(n)	رسم بياني بالأعمدة	bar chart/ diagram
be charged with	مسئول عن	be accused of
be in charge	مسئول	be responsible / have responsibility
bias(n)	تَحامُل/ تَحزُّب/ تَحَيُّز	prejudice/ partiality
brave (adj)	شُجاع/جَسور	courageous / fearless
casualty(n)	حالة وفاة	mortality/death
casualty(n)	ضحية/مُتضرِّر	victim/sufferer
Casualty(n)	قسم الطوارئ	Emergency
chance(n)	حظ/ مصادفة	luck
cheat (n)	غشاش	cheater/ deceiver
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن/ مُحَدَّد، مُعَيَّن/ وَاضِح	definite / clear
colossal (adj)	جَسيم - هائل - ضخم	very large
come across (phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة	run into / find by chance / meet by chance

common sense(n)	الحذس - الفطرة السليمة - الذوق العام	wit/sound judgement/wisdom
compensate for (v)	يُعوّض	make up for
complicated(adj)	مُعقّد - مُركّب	complex/elaborate
confidence(n)	الثقة	trust/belief/ reliance
conquer (v)	يهزم	defeat/beat
conquer (v)	يغزو	occupy/seize
conquer (v)	يتغلب علي	overcome
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر	modern/present-day/current
cross(adj)	غاضب/ساخط/مُقاطِع	angry/ annoyed
cruel(adj)	قاسي	savage/inhuman/barbaric
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة	reduce/decrease
decline(d) (v)	ينهار	deteriorate
decline(d) (v)	يرفض	turn down/reject/refuse
dedicated(adj)	متفاني	committed/devoted
deep-seated(adj)	مُتَأَصّل/ مُتَجذِّر	deep-rooted/permanent
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدى - يخالف/يعصي	challenge/resist/disobey
demand (v)	يطالب	call for/ask for/request
dig up (phr. v)	يكتشف	uncover
dig up (phr. v)	يعثر علي/يستخرج بالحفر	unearth/discover
disaster(n)	كارثة/مصيبة	calamity
dominant(adj)	سائد - مُنتَشِر - مُسَيطِر	presiding/ruling/ governing/ controlling
drug(n)	دواء - عقار	medicine
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	effectiveness / productivity/competence
elaborate(adj)	مُتقَن / دقيق	intricate/ detailed
elaborate(adj)	مُعقّد	complex/ complicated
embrace (v)	يَتَبَنّي - يؤيد	welcome/ take up/adopt
embrace (v)	يعانق/يحتضن	hug
embrace (v)	يُضَمّن - يضع ... ضمن	include/ take in/ cover
employment(n)	وظيفة	job/ post/ position
employment(n)	التوظيف - التشغيل	hiring/ taking on
employment(n)	استغلال/استخدام	use / implementation
entertaining(adj)	مُسَلّي/مُمتع	amusing and interesting

exhausted(adj)	مُنهَك/مُجهَد/مُرهَق	worn out
grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع /مُتأفّف	bad-tempered/irritable
highlight (n)	الجزء الأبرز	best part
highlight (v)	يُبرز	focus on / focus attention on / spotlight
honourable(adj)	شريف/مُبجَّل	decent / respectable / polite
human being	إنسان/كائن بشري	man / person
humble(adj)	متواضع	respectful / polite
immerse (v)	يغمُر (في سائل)	submerge/sink/soak
immerse (v)	ينغمس في/ينشغل تماماً بـ	involve
implement (n)	أداة	tool/gadget
implement (v)	يُطبِّق/يُنفِّذ	execute/apply/ carry out
impressive(adj)	مُبهر	admirable
improve(d) (v)	يُحسِّن	make better/ enhance
improve(d) (v)	يَتَحسَّن	get better/ become better/ develop
inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ/ غير دقيق	inexact /imprecise/ incorrect/ wrong
independent(adj)	مُستقل	self-reliant
innovative(adj)	ابتِكاريّ/ إبداعيّ	innovatory/advanced
inspiration(n)	إلهام	motivation
install(ed) (v)	يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب (برنامج)	set up
install(ed) (v)	يُركِّب/يُثبِّت (جهاز)	put - position
legendary(adj)	مشهور	famous / well-known
look into (phr. v)	يتحقق من - يَدْرس	investigate/ explore/ research
lucky(adj)	محظوظ	fortunate
mental(adj)	ذهني/عقلي	intellectual/psychological
misleading(adj/n)	مُضلِّل - التضليل	deceptive /confusing/ deceiving/false
moral(n)	مَغْزَى أخلاقي	a practical lesson / message
mother tongue(n)	لغة المَنشأ	native language / native tongue
moving(adj)	مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر	emotional / affecting / touching
mute (adj)	صامت	silent / very low
myth(n)	أُسطورَة/ خُرَافَة	fallacy
naughty(adj)	شقي/مُشاغب	badly behaved/disobedient
nosy(adj)	مُتطفِّل (حِشَريّ)	curious/ spying
not to be missed	لا يُفَوَّت	essential

occur (v)	يَحدُث	happen/take place
omission(n)	الحذف	deletion/ leaving out/ exclusion
operation(n)	عملية جراحية	surgery
passionate(adj)	شغوف/مُتحمِّس	very keen / very enthusiastic / addicted to / devoted to
patient(adj)	صبور	forbearing /even-tempered
perspective(n)	مفهوم/ منظور / وجهة نظر	outlook / view / viewpoint / point of view
picturesque(adj)	خلّاب - بديع المنظر	attractive
prejudice(n)	انحيَاز/ تَحَامُل/ ظُلم	bias/ partiality/ discrimination
pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء	self-esteem
pride(n)	التَكَبُّر - الغرور	arrogance / vanity
procrastinate(d) (v)	يُسوِّف/يُماطل/يؤجِّل	put off / postpone/delay
productive(adj)	مُبدِع - خلّاق	inventive/creative
productive(adj)	مُثمِر - مُنتِج	useful / fertile/fruitful
progress (n)	تَقَدُّم/تَحَسُّن	advance /advancement/ development
proud(adj)	مُتكبِّر	arrogant / conceited
raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد	increase
raise (d) (v)	يُربِّي	bring up
raise (d) (v)	يُحسِّن	improve
reinvent(ed) (v)	يُصلِح	reform
relate(d) (v)	يتفهَّم	understand
relevant(adj)	ملائم	to the point / to the purpose
root(n)	أصل - منشأ	source / origin / starting point
ruin (v)	يُدمِّر	destroy/wreck
scold(ed) (v)	يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ	tell off
steady(adj)	ثابت/رصين	stable / balanced / firm / fixed
stress(n)	الإجهاد/ الضغط	pressure
switch	يُغيِّر/يتغير/يتبدل	change
switch … on(phr.v)	يُشغِّل	turn … on (phr. v)
universal(adj)	شامل- شائع- عامّ	comprehensive
vary(ied) (v)	يُنوِّع - يُغيِّر	change/diversify/modify/ alter
vary(ied) (v)	يتنوع - يختلف	differ / change
violate (v)	يخالف	break/disobey

well-balanced (adj)	جيد التوازن – مُتَّزن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	sensible / rational
well-known(adj)	معروف/مشهور	famous / familiar / popular
win(n)	فوز	triumph/victory
wisdom(n)	الحكمة – البصيرة	insight
(well) worth (adj)	يستحق – جدير بـ	beneficial / valuable / invaluable / useful
worth (n)	قيمة – جدارة	value

2 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (=opposite)	
achieve (v)	يُنجز – يحقق	fail / miss	يفشل
ancestor (n)	أجداد / أسلاف	descendant / successor	حفيد – خليفة
approach (v)	يدنو من	leave	يغادر/يفارق
artificial(adj)	اصطناعي – غير طبيعي	natural	طبيعي
artificial(adj)	مُخْتَلَق – مُفْتَعَل -زائف	genuine	حقيقي / أصلي
aware(adj)	علي علم بـ	unaware / ignorant	غير واعٍ – جاهل
balanced(adj)	متوازن	biased/ partial/ imbalanced	مُتحيِّز
be charged	مُتَّهم	be innocent	بريء
be charged	مشحون	be empty / dead	فارغ / غير مشحون
be charged	مُكلَّف – مدفوع	be free	متفرغ/مجاني
beat (v)	يهزم	lose to	يخسر من
bias(n)	تَحَامُل/ تَحَزُّب/ تَحَيُّز	objectivity/ fairness/ impartiality	الموضوعية – الحيادية
brave (adj)	شُجاع/جَسور	cowardly / fearful	جبان
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن/ مُحَدَّد/ مُعَيَّن/ وَاضِح	indefinite / vague	غير مُحدَّد/غامض
colossal(adj)	جَسِيم – هائل	tiny / minute / little	ضئيل الحجم
common sense(n)	الحدْس – الفطرة السليمة – الذوق العام	folly	الحماقة
competitive(adj)	تنافُسي	uncompetitive	غير قادر على المنافسة
complicated(adj)	مُعقَّد – مُركَّب	easy/simple	سهل/بسيط
confidence(n)	الثقة	distrust/doubt/ uncertainty	انعدام الثقة/الشك

conquer (v)	يهزم	lose to	ينهزم من
conquer (v)	يغزو	liberate	يُحرِّر
conquer (v)	يتغلب علي	yield to/ give up to / defy	يستسلم لـ
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر	old-fashioned / out of date	عفا عليه الزمن
cross(adj)	غاضب/ساخط/مُقاطِع	cheerful/pleased	بشوش/سعيد/مَرِح
cruel(adj)	قاسي	kind / merciful	طيب/حنون/رحيم
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة	increase	يزداد
decline(d) (v)	ينهار	flourish	يزدهر
decline(d) (v)	يرفض	accept	يقبل
dedicated(adj)	متفاني	indifferent / apathetic	غير مبالي - غير مهتم
deep-seated(adj)	مُتَأَصِّل/ مُتَجذِّر	temporary	مُؤقت/عرض
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدى	surrender/ give up	يستسلم
defy(ied) (v)	يخالف/يعصي	obey/follow	يطيع
dominant(adj)	سائد - مُنتَشِر - مُسَيطِر	secondary / trifling	ثانوي / تافه
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	inefficiency / incompetence	عدم الفاعلية - عجز
elaborate(adj)	مُعقَّد	simple	بسيط
embrace (v)	يَتَبَنَّي - يؤيد	reject / oppose	يُعارِض/يرفض
embrace (v)	يُضَمِّن - يضع ... ضمن	exclude / leave out	يستثني/يستبعد
employment(n)	التوظيف - التشغيل	unemployment	البطالة
entertaining(adj)	مُسَلِّي/مُمتِع	boring	مُمِلّ
equality(n)	المساواة	inequality/prejudice	عدم المساواة/ التحيُّز
generous(adj)	كريم	mean	بخيل
grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع /مُتَأَفِّف	good-natured	ليِّن الطبع
honourable(adj)	شريف/مُبجَّل	dishonourable	شائن - مُخجل
humble(adj)	متواضع	proud / conceited	مُتَكَبِّر / مغرور
impressive(adj)	مُبهِر	unimpressive, ordinary	غير مُبهِر/عادي
improve(d) (v)	يُحسِّن	worsen /impair	يُضعِف
improve(d) (v)	يَتَحسَّن	worsen/ deteriorate	يتفاقم/ينهار
inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ/ غير دقيق	accurate/exact	دقيق

independent(adj)	مُستقل	dependent	مُعتمِد/متواكل
install(ed) (v)	يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب (برنامج)	remove/uninstall	يزيل
intelligence(n)	ذكاء	stupidity	غباء
join(ed) (v)	ينضم إلي	leave	يغادر/يترك
legendary(adj)	مشهور	unknown / obscure	غير معروف/نَكِرة
lucky(adj)	محظوظ	unlucky / unfortunate	منحوس
majority(n)	أغلبية	minority	أقلية
male	ذكر - ذكوري	female	أنثي - نسائي
mental(adj)	ذهني/عقلي	physical	بدني
mother tongue(n)	لغة المَنشأ	foreign language	لغة أجنبية
moving(adj)	مُؤثِّر/مُحرِّك للمشاعر	unemotional	غير عاطفي
naughty(adj)	شقي/مُشاغب	good/well-behaved/ obedient	صالح/حَسَنُ السلوك/مُطيع
omission(n)	الحذف	addition /inclusion	إضافة/تضمين
patient(adj)	صبور	impatient	قَلِيلُ الصَّبْر/ متعجل
picturesque(adj)	خلّاب - بديع المنظر	ugly	قبيح المنظر
pirated(adj)	مُقرصَن - مسروق	genuine/legal	أصلي/شرعي
pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء	shame	الخزي/العار
pride(n)	التَكَبُّر - الغرور	modesty / humility	التواضع - الزُهد
productive(adj)	مُبدِع - خلّاق	unproductive	غير مُبدع
productive(adj)	مُثمِر - مُنتِج	unproductive / sterile	غير مُنتج - عقيم
promote(d) (v)	يُرقِّي	demote / downgrade	يُنزِّل الدرجة/ يُخَفِّض الرتبة
proud(adj)	فخور بـ	ashamed	خجلان/ مَخْجُول
proud(adj)	مُتكبِّر	humble	متواضع
raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد	lower/reduce	يُقلِّل/يُخفِّض
relevant(adj)	ملائم	irrelevant	غير ملائم
ruin (v)	يُدمِّر	restore / save	يستعيد/يُنقِذ
safety(n)	أمان	danger/risk	خطر/مخاطرة
scold(ed) (v)	يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ	praise/compliment	يمتدح
significant(adj)	هام/ ذو مغزى - كبير	insignificant	غير هام - ضئيل
steady(adj)	ثابت/رصين	unstable / loose	غير مُستقِر/ مُهلهل
stress(n)	الإجهاد/ الضغط	relaxation	الراحة / الإسترخاء

4. "He is a productive novelist." This means he is a .... novelist.
   a. useful b. creative c. fertile d. produced
5. "The moving scene touched my heart." In this sentence, the adjective 'moving' can be replaced by ....
   a. effectless b. ineffective c. emotional d. unemotional
6. "Such a great woman has raised three children on her own." The verb 'raised' in this sentence can be replaced by ....
   a. brought up b. increased c. improved d. rose
7. 'Male' is to 'female' as '......... tongue' is to 'foreign language."
   a. father b. mother c. second d. third
8. "El-Moasser's final revision is well worth waiting for." This means that El-Moasser's revision is ....
   a. valuable b. invaluable c. useful d. a, b & c
9. "Ronaldo is a legendary player." The antonym of the adjective "legendary" in this sentence is ....
   a. obscure b. well-known c. known d. famous
10. 'Insight' is to '.........' as 'famous' is to 'well-known'
   a. sight b. value c. wisdom d. triumph

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "He usually makes .... decisions." Complete with a synonym of 'well-balanced'
   a. quick b. sensitive c. rational d. irrational
2. "This piece of information is inaccurate." The adjective 'inaccurate' is an antonym of ....
   a. exact b. inexact c. incorrect d. false
3. "A criminal is a person who breaks laws." The verb 'breaks' here is a synonym of ....
   a. obeys b. disobeys c. violates d. b & c
4. "His health has improved a lot." The antonym of the main verb "improved" is ....
   a. got better b. became better c. deteriorated d. a & b
5. "Fertilisers raise productivity." This means fertilisers .... productivity.
   a. bring up b. increase c. remove d. rise
6. 'Remove' is to '.........' as 'join' is to 'leave'.
   a. uninstall b. install c. disconnect d. delete
7. "My income increases at a steady rate." The adjective 'steady' here is synonymous with ....
   a. fixed b. variable c. various d. different
8. "He gave an impressive speech." This means his speech was not ....
   a. impressed b. wonderful c. ordinary d. a & b
9. "My father scolded me after shouting at my sister." This means my father ....
   a. reinvented me b. rewarded me c. switched me off d. told me off
10. "He is generous with his money." The antonym of 'generous' here is ....
   a. kind-hearted b. mean c. unmute d. careless

Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I have achieved great success so far." The verb 'achieved' in this sentence gives the opposite of ....
   a. passed b. missed c. felt d. filled
2. "I know you are angry and I relate to that." This means I feel I .... why you are angry
   a. understand b. connect c. disconnect d. contact
3. To my great ancestors, I am a ....
   a. grandparent b. grandpa c. descendant d. parent
4. "A group of young men raise money for charity work." The verb 'raise' in this sentence is a synonym of ....
   a. bring up b. increase c. improve d. collect
5. "Her beauty is artificial." The speaker here does not think that her beauty is ....
   a. false b. natural c. wrong d. a & c
6. If someone does ...., this means they put off what they should do or say.
   a. raise b. reinvent c. procrastinate d. ruin
7. "My mobile is charged." The opposite of the adjective 'charged' here is ....
   a. empty b. innocent c. free d. a, b & c
8. To be .... about something means to be enthusiastic about it.
   a. picturesque b. passionate c. relevant d. steady
9. "We need clear-cut evidence." The adjective 'clear-cut' is an antonym of ....
   a. vague b. indefinite c. definite d. a & b
10. "He is an independent person." The adjective 'independent' means he is ....
    a. self-reliant b. dependent c. reliant d. lazy

Section III Derivatives

في هذا القسم :

• أهم مشتقات (Derivatives) الكلمات الرئيسية حسب النسخة النهائية المعتمدة للكتاب المدرسي
• المشتقات مرتبة أبجدياً ويتبعها إختبارات تقيس جميع مستويات التفكير حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم
• المشتقات من أهم نواتج التعلم التي يستهدفها واضع الامتحان

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	accuracy الدقة inaccuracy عدم الدقة	accurate دقيق - مضبوط inaccurate خاطئ - غير دقيق	accurately بدقة
achieve يُنجز - يحقق	achievement إنجاز	achievable يمكن تحقيقه	
	ancestor جَدّ/سَلَف	ancestral سَلَفيّ - موروث	
announce يُعلِن - يُقِرّ بـ	announcement إعلان - بيان announcer مُعلِن / مُذيع	announced مُعلَن	unannounced سراً - بشكل غير مُتوقَّع

apply يتقدم بطلب/ يُطبِّق	application/app تطبيق application طلب انضمام applicant مُتقدِّم بطلب	applied تطبيقي applicable ملائم/منطبق - متاح	
approach يدنو من/يقترب - يطلب	approach نَهج/طريقة - طَلَب - مَدخَل - اقتراب	approachable ودود/ليِّن الجانب	
assess يُقيِّم - يُقدِّر (الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة)	assessment تقييم - تقدير (الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة) assessor مُثمِّن / مُقدِّر/ مُقيِّم		
attract يجذب/يشد انتباه	attraction جذب -جاذبية - عامل جذب	attractive جذاب	attractively بشكل جذاب
award يمنح جائزة	award جائزة - مِنحة awardee الشخص الفائز بالجائزة	award- winning فائز بجائزة	
balance يتوازن - يوازن	balance توازن - ميزان	balanced متوازن - مُتَّزن - موضوعي	
bargain يتفاوض (على صفقة)	bargain صفقة		
	bilingual شخص يجيد التحدث بلغتين بنفس الكفاءة	bilingual ثنائي اللغة/مُجيد للغتين	bilingually بلغتين
bias يتحامل - يتحزَّب - يُحرِّض	bias تَحامُل/ تَحَزُّب/ تَحَيُّز	biased/biassed مُتحامِل - مُتحيِّز unbiased موضوعي	
boast يتفاخر - يحتوي على	boast مصدر فخر boaster شخص مُتكبِّر boastfulness التفاخُر - التَكَبُّر	boastful مُتفاخر - مُتكبِّر	boastfully بتفاخر
challenge يتحدى	challenge تَحَدِّي	challenging صعب	
cheat يغش / يخدع	cheat/ cheater غشاش cheating الغِش		
cheer يُهلِّل - يبتهج	cheer صيحة فَرَح	cheering مُفرِح- مُبهِج cheerful مُبتهِج/سعيد	cheerfully بابتهاج
chop يُقطِّع - يُجزِّئ - يُخرِّط claim يَزعم/يدَّعي - يطالب بـ	chopper ساطور claim زَعْم/ادعاء - مُطالبة colossus شيْءٌ ضَخم/عملاق	colossal جسيم/ضخم/هائل	colossally بشكل هائل

conclude يختتم - يستنتج	conclusion الخلاصة/الخاتمة - استنتاج	concluding ختامي conclusive باتّ / جازِم/ قاطع	conclusively بشكل قاطع
contribute (to) يساهم/يشارك (في)	contribution مُسَاهَمَة/ مُشَارَكَة contributor مُسَاهِم/ مُشَارِك	contributory مُساهِم - مُشارِك	
cross يُغضِب - يعبر / يجتاز - يتقاطع cross يضع علامة (+) أو (×)	cross هجين/ مزيج cross علامة (+) أو (×)	cross غاضب/ متضايق	crossly بغضب
decline ينخفض بشدة - ينهار - يرفض	decline انخفاض - انهيار	declining مُتناقِص - مُنخفِض	
dedicate يُكرِّس/يُخصِّص - يتفانى	dedication تفاني - تكريس	dedicated مُخصَّص/مُكرَّس - متفاني	
dominate يَسُود - يُهيمِن على	domination سيادة - سطوة - نفوذ dominance سيادة - انتشار	dominant/ dominating سائد - مُنتَشِر - مُسَيطِر	
drug يُخدِّر/يضع مُخدِّر	drug مادة مخدرة/دواء druggist صيدلاني	drugged مُخدَّر/تحت تأثير مادة مُخدِّرة	
	efficiency كفاءة - جودة	efficient كفء	efficiently بكفاءة
embrace يَتَبنَّى - يعانق - يحتوي	embrace عِناق		
employ يُوَظِّف / يُشَغِّل	employee عامل / موظَّف employer صاحب العمل / موظف employment التوظيف / التشغيل - وظيفة - استخدام unemployment البطالة	employable مُؤَهَل للعمل unemployed عاطل	
	entrepreneur رائد أعمال entrepreneurship ريادة الأعمال -المجازفة الاقتصادية	entrepreneurial ريادي - ينطوي على مجازفة	

exhaust(ed) يُرهِق - يستنفد	exhaust شكمان - عادم السيارة exhaustion إرهاق - استنفاد	exhaustive شامِل - كُلّي exhausted مُرهَق/مُتعَب بشدة exhausting مُرهِق/مُسبب للإرهاق	exhaustively بشكل شامل
experiment يُجري تجربة /يُجرِّب	experiment تجربة experimentation التجريب/ إجراء التجارب experimenter مُجَرِّب، مُختَبِر	experimental تجريبي	experimentally بشكل تجريبي
	fable حكاية رمزية	fabled = legendary أسطوري/ خُرافي	
flood يفيض - يغمر بالمياه - تَغمُره المياه	flood فيضان flooding الفيضان		
frown يعبس/ يقطب جبينه	frown/ frowning عبوس/قَطْب الجبين		
grump يتذمَّر - يُكثِر من الشكوى	grump شخص مُتذمِّر (كثير الشكوى) grumpiness التذمُّر - كثرة الشكوى	grumpy حاد الطبع /مُتَأَفِّف/ مُتذمِّر	grumpily بتأفُّف - بتذمُّر
identify يُحدِّد هويَّة - يتعرف على	identity (ID) هويَّة identification (ID) إثبات شخصية identification تحديد هوية	identifiable مميّز - القابلية للتمييز	
immerse يغمر (في سائل) - يندمج/ ينغمس في - يستحوذ علي/ يُبهِر	immersion غَمْر في سائل - انغماس في	immersed منغمس في- مندمج/مُنبهِر immersive مُبهِر/شديد الجاذبية	
implement يُطبِّق/يُنفِّذ	implement أداة implementation التنفيذ/التطبيق		
impress يُبهِر - يثير إعجاب	impression انطباع - تأثير - أثر	impressive مُبهِر - شديد التأثير	impressively بشكل مبهر
improve يُحسِّن/ يتحسَّن	improvement تَحَسُّن - تحسين	improved مُحَسَّن/مُعدَّل	
	independence استقلالية	independent مُستقل	independently باستقلالية

inspire يُلهِم - يوحي	inspiration إلهام - وحي	inspiring مُلهِم inspired مُلهَم inspirational تشجيعي - تحفيزي	
install يُثبّت/يُنصّب	installation تثبيت/تنصيب instalment/ installment التقسيط installer برنامج تثبيت التطبيقات - فني تركيب	installed مُثبّت - تم تنصيبه	
intern يعتقل	intern مُتدرب مهني - طبيب امتياز internship التدريب المهني - الامتياز	internal داخلي	
investigate يُحقّق في	investigator مُحقّق investigation تَحقيق	investigatory تحقيقي	
	journal صحيفة journalism الصحافة journalist صحفي journalese لغة الصحافة	journalistic مُتعلّق بالصحافة	
lecture يُحاضِر/ يُلقى محاضرة	lecture محاضرة lecturer مُحاضِر / أستاذ جامعي		
	legend أسطورة	legendary أسطوري legend جيد جداً	
manage يُدير - ينجح/يتمكن	management إدارة manager مدير	manageable مُطيع - مُذعِن - سهل	
mass-produce يُنتِج آلياً بالجملة	mass-production إنتاج آلي بالجملة	mass-produced مُنتَج آلياً بالجملة	
	mentality العقلية/القدرة على تَعَقُّل الأمور	mental عقلي/ذهني	mentally عقلياً/ذهنياً
mislead يُضلّل/يخدع	misleading تضليل - خداع	misleading مُضلّل - مُخادع	misleadingly بشكل مُضلّل
	multiculturalism تَعَدُّد الثقافات	multicultural مُتعدِّد الثقافات	multiculturally بثقافات متعددة
mute يكتم الصوت/يُصمِّت		muted-mute صامت mutable مُتَبَدِّل/ مُتَغيِّر	
	myth خرافة/ اسطورة mythology خرافة	mythological خرافي - اساطيري	

	naughtiness البذاءة - الشيطنة (الشقاوة)	naughty شقي/مُشاغب	naughtily ببذاءة (بشقاوة)
occur يَحدُث	occurrence حدوث		
operate يُشغّل (آلة) - يُجري جراحة	operation تشغيل (آلة) - عملية جراحية operator عامل التليفون		
	patient شخص مريض patience الصبر	patient صبور	patiently بصبر
	physics الفيزياء / علم الطبيعة physicist عالم فيزياء	physical بدني / جسدي physical مادي/ملموس/ طبيعي	physically بدنياً/جسدياً
pirate يُقرصِن - يستولي علي	pirate قُرصان piracy القرصنة - الاستيلاء على عمل الغير	pirated مُقَرصَن - مسروق	
place يضع	placement وَضْع - توظيف/تشغيل		
pout يُبوِّز/يُكشِّر	pout تكشيرة/تبويزة	pouty مُبوِّز/مكشر	
prejudice يُؤلِّب/يُحرِّض علي/يؤثِّر سلبياً علي	prejudice اِنحِيَاز/ تَحَامُل/ ظُلم	prejudiced عُنصُري prejudicial ضارّ/ مُؤذٍ	
pride (yourself) on يتباهى بـ	pride فخر - كبرياء - تَكَبُّر	proud فخور - مُتَكَبِّر	proudly بفخر - بتكُبر
procrastinate يُسوِّف/يُماطِل - يُؤجِّل	procrastination التسويف/المماطلة - التأجيل		
produce يُنتِج - يُحدِث - يوَلِّد	produce ناتج زراعي producer المُنتِج (شخص/شركة) production (عملية) الإنتاج product مُنتَج productivity الإنتاجية - العائد reproduction التكاثر - النَسْخ	productive مُنتِج - مُثمِر - مُفيد	productively بوفرة
progress يتقدم/يتطور - يتحسّن - يستمر	progress تَقَدُّم - تَحَسُّن progression تَقَدُّم/تَطَوُّر - تَسَلسُل/تتابع	progressive تَقَدُّمِيّ/ مُتَجَدِّد/ مُتَحَرِّر	

promote يروج لـ - يُرقّي - يُعزّز	promotion ترقية - ترويج promoter مُتَعَهّد (مُنظّم) - مُؤيّد		
qualify يتأهل - يتخرّج	qualification مُؤهّل دراسي - تأهُّل - تَخرُّج - شهادة دراسية	qualified حاصل على مؤهّل	
record يُسجّل	record سِجِلّ - مُحتوي مُسجّل - رقم قياسي recorder جهاز تسجيل recording التسجيل	recorded مُسجّل	
reflect يعكِس - يوضّح/يُبيّن - يتفكر في - يُعلق علي	reflection انعكاس - التفكير العميق reflector سطح عاكس	reflective عاكس - مُستغرِق في تفكير عميق	
remain يبقي/يظل	remains بقايا remainder المتبقي - بقية	remaining مُتبقّي	
scold يُعنّف/ يُوبّخ	scolding التوبيخ		
share يشارك - ينشر - يتقاسم	share نصيب - مشاركة sharing المشاركة - التقاسم	shared مشترك	
shock يَصْدِم/يفاجئ	shock صدمة	shocking shocked صادم - مصدوم	shockingly بشكل صادم
spin يلِفّ/يدور - يُلفّق/يخلط الأمور - يَغْزِل	spin لفة/دورة - تلفيق/خلط الأمور	spinning دَوّار	
steady(ied) يصبح ثابتاً - يستقر	steadiness ثبات - استقرار على وتيرة واحدة	steady ثابت - مستقر على وتيرة واحدة	steadily بثبات
succeed ينجح	success النجاح	successful ناجح	successfully بنجاح
suppose يفترض/ يتصوّر	supposition افتراض - تَصَوُّر	supposed مُفتَرَض	supposedly من المُفتَرَض
	surgeon جرّاح surgery الجراحة	surgical جراحي	surgically جراحياً
surround يحيط بـ/يكتنف - يُحاصِر- يتعلق بـ	surroundings البيئة المحيطة - الجوار	surrounding = nearby قريب/مُجاور	
switch يُبدّل - يتحول	switch مفتاح تشغيل - تَبَدُّل/تَغَيُّر		
vary يتنوع / يختلف - يُنَوّع	variety تَنوُّع - مجموعة متنوعة / اختلاف	various متنوع / مختلف variable مُتَغيِّر/ مُتَقَلّب	variably بشكل متغيّر
	wisdom الحكمة	wise حكيم	wisely بحكمة

Tests On Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Test 1

1. Thanks to Mr Omar's ...., we have overcome our crises.
   a. contributed b. contribution c. contributor d. contributory
2. Thanks to the .... role Mr Omar has played, we have overcome our crises.
   a. contributed b. contributions c. contributor d. contributory
3. We have overcome our crises thanks to Mr Omar who has .... much to solving them.
   a. contributed b. contribution c. contributor d. contributory
4. When she was young, she hated anyone who .... her.
   a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
5. When she was young, she hated anyone who was .... with her.
   a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
6. I put .... on the map to know where the port is.
   a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
7. I completely support the .... of solar power in making electricity.
   a. employ b. employees c. employers d. employment
8. I believe that we should .... solar power to make electricity.
   a. employ b. employees c. employers d. employment
9. Our company provides regular training courses for its ....
   a. employ b. employees c. employers d. employment
10. As a teacher in a public school, the government is my ....
   a. employ b. employee c. employer d. employment

Test 2

1. Most free .... include advertisements.
   a. applies b. applications c. apps d. b & c
2. The pay rise does not .... to part-time workers.
   a. apply b. application c. app d. b & c
3. The pay rise is not .... to part-time workers.
   a. apply b. application c. applicable d. applies
4. We have studied .... maths this term.
   a. apply b. application c. applicable d. applied
5. I sent my .... form as an email attachment.
   a. apply b. application c. applicable d. applied

6. You can't depend on information from this website as it lacks ....

a. accurate b. inaccurate c. accuracy d. inaccuracy

7. You can't depend on information from this website as it is ....

a. accurate b. inaccurate c. accuracy d. inaccuracy

8. You can't depend on information from this website as it is characterized by ....

a. accurate b. inaccurate c. accuracy d. inaccuracy

9. After the accident, the damage in her car was .... at 30 thousand pounds.

a. assessed b. assessment c. assisted d. assistant

10. I had to make a quick .... of the situation before I could do anything.

a. assessed b. assessment c. assisted d. assistant

Test 3

1. If the referee had been .... against us, we would have won the game.

a. bias b. biases c. biased d. unbiased

2. Unless the referee had been .... against us, we would have won the game.

a. bias b. biases c. biased d. unbiased

3. It was the referee's .... against us that caused us to lose the game.

a. bias b. biases c. biased d. unbiased

4. An honest person is not expected to be ....

a. cheat b. a cheat c. a & b d. cheater

5. An honest person is not expected to ....

a. cheat b. a cheat c. cheating d. cheater

6. .... is a bad behaviour that is not expected from an honest person.

a. Cheat b. A cheat c. Cheating d. Cheater

7. She is always talking .... about her important family.

a. boasts b. boastful c. boastfulness d. boastfully

8. She is always .... about her important family.

a. boasts b. boastful c. boastfulness d. boastfully

9. She never stops her......... about her important family.

a. boasted b. boastful c. boastfulness d. boastfully

10. She always .... about her important family.

a. boasts b. boastful c. boastfulness d. boastfully

Test 4

1. In ...., this problem needs an urgent solution.

a. conclude b. conclusion c. concluding d. conclusively

2. To ...., this problem needs an urgent solution.

a. conclude b. conclusion c. concluding d. conclusively

3. A writer can give their comment in the .... paragraph.
   a. conclude b. concludes c. concluding d. conclusively
4. The research has .... shown that there was no such danger from the vaccine.
   a. conclude b. conclusion c. concluding d. conclusively
5. He fell in deep sleep as his food was ....
   a. to drug b. drug c. drugged d. druggist
6. He fell in deep sleep as there was a .... in his food.
   a. to drug b. drug c. drugged d. druggist
7. Everything is mentioned in this .... report.
   a. exhaust b. exhausted c. exhausting d. exhaustive
8. .... from cars causes air pollution.
   a. Exhaust b. Exhausted c. Exhausting d. Exhaustive
9. That hard work is ....
   a. exhaust b. exhausted c. exhausting d. exhaustive
10. I am completely .... after all that hard work.
   a. exhaust b. exhausted c. exhausting d. exhaustive

Test 5

1. These .... games can be used for training and education.
   a. immerse b. immerses c. immersed d. immersive
2. I had to .... my hand in cold water to relieve يخفف the pain.
   a. immerse b. immersion c. immersed d. immersive
3. Most secondary three students are .... in their studies. They have no free time.
   a. immerse b. immersion c. immersed d. immersive
4. The .... of your burnt hand in ice-cold water may relive the pain.
   a. immerse b. immersion c. immersed d. immersive
5. I first joined this company as a/an .... to gain experience.
   a. intern b. internship c. legend d. legendary
6. I first worked for this company as a kind of .... to gain experience.
   a. intern b. internship c. legend d. legendary
7. Some people feel sorry for .... animals.
   a. experimental b. experiment c. experimentation d. a & b
8. .... on animals is rejected by some people.
   a. Experiment b. Experiments c. Experimentation d. Experimental
9. Scientists always carry out .... on animals.
   a. experiment b. experiments c. experimentation d. experimental
10. Scientists always .... on animals.
   a. experiment b. experiments c. experimentation d. experimental

Test 6

1. His lies have .... us.
   a. mislead b. misled c. misleading d. misleadingly
2. His lies have been .... to us.
   a. mislead b. misled c. misleading d. misleadingly
3. If you want to achieve your goals, do not ....
   a. procrastinate b. procrastination c. produce d. production
4. If you want to achieve your goals, avoid ....
   a. procrastinate b. procrastination c. produce d. production
5. I spent some time .... on what to do next.
   a. scold b. scolding c. reflecting d. reflection
6. It was a big mistake to .... my son in front of his little brother.
   a. scold b. scolding c. reflecting d. reflection
7. I should have avoided .... my son in front of his little brother.
   a. scold b. scolding c. reflecting d. reflection
8. He's .... enough to make the right decision.
   a. various b. variety c. wise d. wisdom
9. He's enough .... to make the right decision.
   a. various b. variety c. wise d. wisdom
10. I had a .... of options to choose from.
   a. various b. variety c. wise d. wisdom

Section IV Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

في هذا القسم :

- أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات الخاصة بالمنهج بالكامل
- التعبيرات والمصطلحات حسب النسخة الأخيرة المعتمدة للكتاب المدرسي
- تم تصنيف التعبيرات والمصطلحات ابجدياً في مجموعات حسب حروف الجر
- بعد كل مجموعة تم ادراج الملاحظات اللغوية الهامة المرتبط بنواتج التعلم
- التعبيرات والمصطلحات من أهم نواتج التعلُم التي يستهدفها واضع الامتحان

about

angry at/about	غاضب بسبب	open-minded about/ towards	منفتح بشأن
careful about	حريص علي	passionate about	لديه شغف بـ
confident about/of	واثق من	special about	مميز في
enthusiastic about	مُتحمِّس لـ	sure about/of	مُتأكد من

Clear the confusion:

angry

- **angry + about/at/over + noun** — غاضب من (شيء)
  - We all were angry about his bad behaviour.
- **angry + with/at + noun** — غاضب من (شخص)
  - My father was angry with me because I behaved badly.
- **angry + that + جملة** — غاضب من أن
  - My father was angry that I behaved badly.

careful

- **careful + about + something** — حريص في (ما يتم القيام به)
  - She is careful about how the meal is cooked.
- **careful + with + something** — حريص علي (شيء)
  - He is careful with his money.
- **careful + that + جملة** — حريص علي أن
  - Sama is careful that she does not make much noise.

sure

- **sure + about/of + noun** — متأكد من
  - I am sure about/of my success.
- **sure + that + جملة** — متأكد أن
  - I am sure that I will succeed.

as

as normal	كشيء طبيعي	go as far back as	يعود تاريخها إلي
as possible	قدر الإمكان	known as	معروف كـ
as well as you can	بأفضل ما تستطيع	present ... as ...	يُقدِّم ... كـ...
date back as far as	يعود تاريخه إلي	qualify as + وظيفة	يتأهل كـ
		regard .... as	يعتبر أن .... يكون ....

Clear the confusion:

as

لاحظ الاستخدامات المختلفة لـ (as) :

١. تستخدم (as) كحرف جر في تعبيرات المقارنة مثل:

- **as ... as / not so ... as/ the same ... as:**
  - I can't write as well as Rodayna.
  - My interest in football dates back as far as I can remember!

٢. تُستخدم (as) كحرف جر وبعدها اسم للتعبير عن الوظيفة أو الواجب أو الاستخدام أو المظهر:

- As a father, I must protect my children.
- Leen dressed up as an Arab princess.

٣. تُستخدم (as) ايضا للتعبير عما يُعتقد أو يُقال عن شخص أو شئ وتأتي مع أفعال مثل:

- **consider / regard/ see / describe / know / present... + n / gerund**
  - Salah is known as the 'Happiness Maker'.
  - He's presented as (being) a good leader.

٤. يأتي بعدها اسم أو صفة متبوعة باسم للدلالة على المرحلة أو الفئة العمرية:

- As a young man, Mr Mohammed used to go swimming nearly every day.

٥. تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة:

- I saw Tom as I was getting off the train. (= when /while)
- As it was getting darker, I went home. (= because)
- Lazy as he is, he is intelligent. (= although)

٦. أحياناً يُستخدم التصريف الثالث بعد (as) وهو هنا اختصار لجملة مبنية للمجهول:

- The coronation took place as planned. (= as it was planned)
- Egypt exports cotton as known. (= as it is known)

as well as

١. تستخدم (as well as) كصفة تَساوي بمعني (بنفس جودة/بنفس كفاءة):

- **as well as + obj.** بنفس جودة/بنفس كفاءة
  - Youssef drives as well as Amir.

٢. تستخدم (as well as) كمصطلح بمعني (بالإضافة إلي):

- **as well as + n/ (inf. + ing)** بالإضافة إلي
  - I am responsible for myself as well as my family.
  - As well as writing an essay, I revised unit 12.

٣. عندما تربط (as well as) فاعلين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول فقط من حيث الإفراد والجمع:

- Ahmed as well as his cousins is open-minded.
- I as well as my father am going to attend the party.

known

- **known + as** — معروف كـ
  - She is known as a kind lady.
- **known + for** — مشهور بـ/معروف بـ
  - She is known for her kindness.
- **known + to** — معروف لدي
  - Salah is known to all football fans.

at

at a competitive price	بسعر تنافسي (أقل من المنتجات المماثلة)	at least	علي الأقل
		at midday	في منتصف النهار
at a low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة	at the request of	بناء على طلب
at a steady pace	بُخطي ثابتة - بوتيرة منتظمة	none at all	لا شيء على الإطلاق
at an early age	في سن مبكرة	at all	على الإطلاق

Clear the confusion:

at + age

- **At the age of … = when he/she was … = aged …** — في سِن (+ العمر)
  - At the age of 36, I got married in 2011.
  - = When I was 36, I got married in 2011.
  - = I got married in 2011, aged 36.
- **in the age of …** — في عصر
  - We now live in the age of science and technology.
- **of + my/his/her/its/your/our/their/ …'s + age** — في نفس عمري/عمره/عمرها …
  - Most of my friends are of my age. (= of my own age)
  - This man is of your father's age.

by

by accident = by chance	بالصدفة/عن غير قصد	surrounded by	مُحاط بـ
		distracted by	يتشتت بـ/ ينشغل بـ

Clear the confusion:

by + noun/gerund

تُستخدم (by) كحرف جر للتعبير عن الطريقة أو الكيفية كالتالي:

- **… by + n / gerund** — عن طريق – بواسطة
  - You can keep fit by doing exercise.
  - True success is achieved by hard work.
  - I hadn't planned to meet him; it all happened by accident.

success(n)	النجاح	failure	الفشل
switch ... off (phr. v)	يُوقف/يُطفئ	turn ... on / switch on	يشغّل
vary(ied) (v)	يتنوع - يختلف	agree	يتوافق
violate (v)	يخالف	comply with/respect/ follow	يتّبع
well-balanced (adj)	جيد التوازن - مُتّزن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	unbalanced / silly	غير متوازن
well-known(adj)	معروف/مشهور	unknown / obscure	غير معروف/نَكِرة
(well) worth (adj)	يستحق - جدير بـ	worthless / valueless	عديم القيمة
win(n)	فوز	loss	خسارة
wisdom(n)	الحكمة	stupidity / folly	الغباء/الحماقة

Tests On Synonyms & Antonyms

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I wonder if we could try a different approach." Here, the word 'approach' means ....
   a. attitude b. proposal c. store d. size
2. Someone who is .... is not obscure.
   a. unknown b. knowing c. not known d. well-known
3. "I don't believe the artificial smile on the lips of such a jealous person." The word 'artificial' in this context is a synonym of ....
   a. synthetic b. natural c. pretended d. true
4. "This painting is worth a fortune." This means this painting is ....
   a. invaluable b. valueless c. worthless d. b & c
5. "I am one of the casualties of the accident." The noun 'casualties' here is synonymous with ....
   a. mortalities b. victims c. deaths d. suffering
6. "You should be proud of what you have achieved". Here, the adjective "proud" is an antonym of ....
   a. arrogant b. conceited c. ashamed d. a & b
7. "I can't conquer my fear of heights." In this utterance, 'conquer' can be best replaced by ....
   a. overcome b. occupy c. seize d. bite

8. Relaxation is to .... as success is to failure.
a. stressed b. stressful c. stress d. a & c
9. "My interest in football declined after my favourite player retired." The verb 'declined' here is a synonym of ....
a. increased b. refused c. rejected d. decreased
10. "My health improves at a steady pace." The adjective "steady" is an opposite of ....
a. stable b. unstable c. fixed d. a & c

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "He scolded me for making such a mistake." The antonym of 'scolded' here is ....
a. switched b. agreed with c. criticised d. praised
2. "The police have dug up some evidence against him." The phrasal verb 'dug up' here means "........." .
a. found hidden information by searching b. removed the surface
c. removed something from the earth d. earthed
3. "The flood ruined the old building." The antonym of the verb "ruined" in this sentence is ....
a. destroyed b. stored c. restored d. endangered
4. "Wow! What an elaborate piece of jewellery!" the adjective 'elaborate' in this sentence means ....
a. deep-rooted b. intricate c. permanent d. devoted
5. "The last promotion raised my income by 5%." The antonym of 'raised' in this sentence is ....
a. fixed b. doubled c. lowered d. increased
6. "My mother embraced me warmly when I returned home." This means that my mother .... me.
a. taken up b. taken in c. included d. hugged
7. 'Humble' is to '.........' as 'safety' is to 'danger'.
a. proud b. pride c. poor d. simple
8. "They've succeeded in the employment of their resources." In this sentence, the word 'employment' means ....
a. hiring b. post c. implementation d. job
9. "He was promoted to General Manager." The verb 'promoted' in this sentence is antonymous with ....
a. risen b. demoted c. punished d. raised
10. "I didn't watch the match, but I saw the highlights." The word 'highlights' here is a synonym of ....
a. best parts b. details c. record d. score

Test 3

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "A CV should highlight your skills and achievements." The word 'highlight' in this sentence means to ....
   a. make your skills and achievements clear so that people pay no attention to them
   b. mark written words with a special-coloured pen
   c. make your skills and achievements clear so that people pay attention to them
   d. mark words with a special colour on a computer
2. Something that is productive is not ....
   a. unproductive b. sterile c. fruitful d. a & b
3. "I left university and immersed myself in my private business." The verb 'immersed' here is a synonym of ....
   a. soaked b. submerged c. involved d. evolved
4. " The Egyptians have a sense of pride in their country." In this context, the word 'pride' is an antonym of ....
   a. trust b. shame c. weakness d. modesty
5. "He implements the instructions in full." The word 'implements' in this sentence is a synonym of ....
   a. tools b. applies c. carries out d. b & c
6. A/An .... copy is not genuine.
   a. original b. pirated c. authentic d. a & c
7. "You need to improve your writing skill." In this context. 'improve' is synonymous with ....
   a. enhance b. get better c. become better d. apply
8. "What a picturesque scene!" This means the scene is not ....
   a. beautiful b. pretty c. ugly d. wonderful
9. "The application has been installed." Here, 'installed' can be replaced by ....
   a. put b. set up c. positioned d. innovated
10. "Be patient and keep trying." In this context, the word 'patient' is an antonym of ....
   a. impatient b. healthy c. well d. patience

Test 4

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mental is to physical as .... is to addition.
   a. omission b. discussion c. increasing d. collection
2. "His pride would stop him from asking for help." The word 'pride' in this sentence is synonymous with ....
   a. self-esteem b. bias c. vanity d. a & c
3. "This child is naughty." The adjective "naughty" is antonymous with ....
   a. rude b. impolite c. well-behaved d. a & b

نُستخدم (by) كحرف جر قبل الفاعل في الجملة المبنية للمجهول:

• **... by + agent**
- I was distracted by the noise in the street.
- In the photo, Sama is surrounded by her family members.

for

be there for each other	مستعدون لدعم بعضهم البعض	grateful for	شاكر/مُمتَن لـ
be true for	صحيح بالنسبة لـ	just for you	من أجلك أنت فقط
except for	فيما عدا	make time for	يوفر الوقت لـ
for fun	للمتعة	real feel for	إحساس حقيقي بـ
for a while	لبعض الوقت	responsible for	مسئول عن
for ages	لمدة طويلة	revise for exams	راجع للامتحانات
for little money	بمقابل مادي بسيط	run for their lives	يهربون للنجاة بحياتهم
get ... for one-third of the initial price	يشتري ... بثُلث السعر المبدئي	show respect for	يُظهِر الاحترام لـ
good fit for	ملائم جدًا لـ	work best for	تتناسب على أكمل وجه مع

Clear the confusion:

for

لاحظ الاستخدامات المختلفة لـ (**for**):

١. تستخدم (for) كحرف جر بمعني (لأجل/من أجل):

- Close friends are always there for each other.
- We are grateful for your help and support.
- My whole life is just for you.
- I must make time for my family. Life is not only work.
- When the children saw the snake, they ran for their lives.

٢. تستخدم (for) كحرف جر بمعني (تجاه/لـ):

- You must show respect for people's culture and traditions.
- You are responsible for the happiness of your family.

٣. تستخدم (for) كحرف جر بمعني (بالنسبة لـ):

- What is true for you may not be true for other people.
- For me, Sherif is the best striker in Egypt.

٤. تستخدم (for) كحرف جر بمعني (المدة):

• **for + a duration of time**
- For a while, I stood silent not knowing what to say.
- I haven't seen Rokaya for ages.

٥. تستخدم (for) كحرف جر بمعني (المسافة):

• **for + a distance**
- We walked for miles to reach the village.

٦. تستخدم (for) كحرف جر بمعني (بسبب):
- **for = because of / as a result of**
  - You'll feel better for a break.
  - We could hardly see for the mist.

٧. تستخدم (for) كرابطة بمعني (لأن):
- **for = because**
  - I cannot say she is beautiful or not, for I have never seen her.

grateful

- **grateful for** ممتن/شاكر (+سبب الامتنان أو الشكر)
  - I am grateful for your help.
- **grateful to** ممتن/شاكر (+الشخص/الظروف)
  - I am grateful to Mr Ashraf who always helps me.
- **grateful that** ممتن/شاكر (+جملة)
  - I am grateful that you support me.

in/into

a degree in	شهادة جامعية في	in large numbers	بأعداد كبيرة
a study into productivity	بحث عن الإنتاجية	in luxury	في رفاهية
cut ... into pieces	يُقَطِع ... إلى أجزاء	in order of priority	بترتيب الأولوية
get into trouble	يقع في المشاكل	in spite of	بالرغم من
in 3-D	بنظام ثلاثي الأبعاد	in the first language	باللغة الأولي
in a certain way	بطريقة محددة	increase in	زيادة في / يزداد في
in a fit of anger	في نوبة غضب	just in time	في الوقت المناسب تماماً
in advance	مُقدَّماً	look into possibilities	يَدرس امكانية
in an emergency	في حالة طوارئ	put ... into practice	يُطَبِّق.../ يُدخل ... حيِّز التنفيذ
in authority	في السُلطة	put a lot of effort into	يبذل مجهوداً كبيراً في
in between	بين بين – وسطى	put (one's) finger on	يعرف يتعرف
in certain given countries	في بلدان معينة	research into	يجرى أبحاث على
in charge of	مسئول عن	still in	لا يزال في
in common (with)	مُشتَرَك (مع)	take pride in	يفتخر بـ
in danger of	في خطر	until late into the evening	حتى وقت متأخر من المساء
in different colours	بألوان مختلفة		
in her late 20s	في أواخر العشرينات من عمرها		

Clear the confusion:

in/on + ... way

- **on + ... way** في ... الطريق
  - On the way to the market, my car broke down.
- **in + ... way** بـ ... الطريقة / بطريقة
  - Keep calm! In this way, you will make less mistakes.
  - He wants to solve the problem in a certain way.

in a fit of anger في نوبة غضب

- I didn't really intend to leave my job. In a fit of anger, I decided to resign.

in charge of - charged with

• **in charge of**
- Mr Omar is in charge of the company. مسئول عن (+ مفعول)

• **in charge**
- You can talk to Mr Omar. He is in charge. مسئول (بدون مفعول)

• **charged with = accused of**
- He is charged with the robbery. يُتهم بـ (+ مفعول)

in common

• **have … in common (with somebody)** لديه ... مشترك (مع شخص)
- Alaa and Nasser have nothing in common.
- Alaa has nothing in common with Nasser.

• **have … in common (with something)** لديه ... مشترك (مع شيء)
- The cultures of Arab countries have a lot in common.

• **in common with …** بنفس طريقة / تماماً مثل
- Egypt, in common with other countries, has experienced the bad effects of the coronavirus pandemic.

in order of / in order to

• **in order of + noun**
- At the meeting, issues القضايا/ المسائل will be discussed in order of priority. بحسب / بترتيب

• **in order to = so as to = to + inf.**
- We work hard in order to achieve our goals. لكي

increase in/by

• **increase in**
- The animals on the farm have increased in number. يزداد في
- Plants increase in size as they grow.

• **increase by**
- The production of the farm has increased by 10%. يزداد بنسبة

look

• **look after**
- Mr Hossam looks after a big family. يرعى/يعتني بـ

• **look at**
- He looked straight at the sun and it hurt his eyes. ينظر إلى

• **look at**
- I need more time to look at the report. يفحص – يُحلِّل

• **look back**
- I looked back to see who was following me. ينظر للخلف

- **look back on/to** — يعيد التفكير في
  - Sometimes, I look back on what I did to make sure I was right.
- **look for** — يبحث عن
  - He was looking for the lost key.
- **look into** — يبحث - يَدرس- يتحقق من
  - I am looking into the possibility of moving to Aswan.
- **look up to + شخص** — يقتدي به
  - Young people should look up to great scientists.

still + in/on

- **be + still in** — لا يزال في
  - The car is still in the garage.
- **be + still on** — لا يزال مفتوحاً - لا زال يعمل
  - The lights of the car are still on.

take pride – be proud

- **take pride in + n / (inf. + ing)** — يَفخَر بـ
  - People take pride in the great things they do.
- **be/feel/look proud of + n / (inf. + ing)** — يَفخَر بـ
  - People are proud of the great things they do.
- **be/feel/look proud to + inf.** — يَفخَر بـ
  - People are proud to achieve great things.

of/off

an act of kindness	عمل طيب	the mental side of competing	الجانب الذهني في المنافسة
a day off	يوم إجازة	typical of	مثال نموذجي لـ
aware of	يكون على وعي بـ	waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
crime of piracy	جريمة القرصنة	wide range of	نطاق واسع من
have a change of heart	تتغير مشاعره نحو شيء ما	signs of burnout	أعراض الإنهاك
have a heart of stone	قاسي القلب	piece of wisdom	قول أو فعل حكيم
proud of	فخور بـ	sense of humour	حِسّ الفكاهة
of her age	من نفس سِنِّها	sense of identity	الشعور بالهوية
the latest version of	أحدث نسخة من		

Clear the confusion:

noun + of + noun

تستخدم (of) بين المُضاف والمضاف إليه كالتالي:

- مُضاف إليه + of + مُضاف
  - the latest version of the program
  - a waste of time
  - a piece of wisdom
  - signs of burnout
  - a heart of stone
  - a sense of humour

a waste of time/money + gerund

يأتي اسم الفعل (gerund) بعد التعبير التالي:

- it is a waste of time/money + (inf. + ing) ...
- It is a waste of money buying all this food.
- It is a waste of time arguing with her. She won't be convinced.

on

an impact on	أثر علي	on display	معروض
based partly on	قائمة جزئياً علي	on my own	بمفردي/دون مساعدة
from now on	من الآن فصاعداً	on social media	علي وسائل التواصل
from then on	منذ ذلك الوقت فصاعداً	on the banks of	علي ضفتي
my heart is set on	عازم - مُصمِّم	on the internet	علي شبكة الإنترنت
on a big scale	علي نطاق واسع	on the point of	علي وشك
on a call	مشغول في مُكالمة	on this occasion	بهذه المناسبة
on a journey	في رحلة	on time	في الوقت المُحدَّد
on a regular basis	بشكل منتظم	on a video call	مشغول بمكالمة فيديو
on average	في المتوسط	spend time on	يقضي الوقت في
on balance	إجمالاً/ إذا أَخذنا كلّ شيء في الاعْتِبار	still on	لا يزال يعمل/ لا يزال متصلاً
		take revenge on	ينتقم من

Clear the confusion:

be based on/in

- **be + based in** — مقره في (+مكان)
  - My business is based in Aswan.
- **be + based on** — قائم/مَبْنيّ علي (+ فكرة/موضوع)
  - This film is based on a true story.

from + now/then + on

- **from now on** — من الآن فصاعداً
  - I will depend on myself from now on.
  - From now on, don't ask me for money.
- **from then on** — منذ ذلك الوقت فصاعداً
  - She helped me when I was facing some problems. From then on, we have been close friends.

on balance

- **on balance** — إجمالاً - إذا نظرنا الى الموضوع من كافة الجوانب - إذا أَخذنا كلّ شيء في الاعْتِبار
  - On balance, I think it would be better to cancel the meeting.
  - Students are very responsible, on balance, when choosing El-Moasser.

on/of my own

- **on my own = by myself = without help = alone** بنفسي / بمفردي / دون مساعدة
  - Mum did the cooking on her own.
  - = Mum did the cooking by herself.
  - = Mum did the cooking without help.
  - = Mum did the cooking alone.
- **of my own = that belongs to me** ملكي / يخصني
  - In addition to the school tablet, Ali has a tablet of his own.
  - = In addition to the school tablet, Ali has a tablet that belongs to him.

on/in time

- **on time** في الوقت المُحدَّد / في الموعد المُتَفق عليه
  - Please, arrive on time.
- **in time (for)** في الوقت المناسب (ل)
  - You have arrived in time. I really need your help.
  - My father arrived in time for lunch.

spend + time/money

- **spend money on + n / gerund** يُنفق المال في/ ل
  - I spent 15.000 pounds on servicing my car.
  - He spends a lot of money on clothes.
- **spend money to + inf.** يُنفق المال لكي
  - I spent 15,000 pounds to service my car.
- **spend time + gerund** يقضي الوقت في
  - I spent two days looking after the plants in the garden.
- **spend time in/at + n** يقضي الوقت في (+مكان)
  - I spent the mid-year holiday in Aswan.
- **spend time with + n** يقضي الوقت مع (+شخص)
  - I spent a nice time with my old friends.

out / to

a window to another culture	نافذة على ثقافة أخري	get messages across to	يُعلِّم دروس مستفادة ل
allow ... to do	يُمكِّن ... أن يفعل ...	get used to	يعتاد علي
attached to/with	مُرفَق مع - متصل بـ	home to	يكون موطناً ل
be a mother to	تكون أماً ل	jump out of ... skin	يفزع - يخاف بشدة
be likely to	من المرجح أن	kind to	يكون طيباً مع
be limited to	مقصور علي	out of control	لا يمكن التحكم به/خارج عن السيطرة
burnt out	يرهق		
come back to	يعود إلي	related to	مرتبط/متعلق بـ

come to life	يُبعَث/ يعود للحياة	return to normal	يعود للوضع الطبيعي
connected to/with	متصل بـ	similar to	يشابه لـ
dedicated to	مُكرَّس لـ/ مُخصَّص لـ	solution to	حل لـ
different to/from	مختلف عن	suited to	يناسب لـ
feel free to	لا تتردد في أن	tears come to my eyes	تترقرق الدموع في عيناي
find it difficult to	يجد صعوبة في أن	to the present day	حتى الوقت الحاضر
from ... down to	من ... وصولاً إلي	try hard to	يحاول جاهداً أن
welcome to	أهلاً بـ ... في		

Clear the confusion:

to

تُستخدَم (to) كحرف جر في حالات كثيرة منها:

١. تُستخدَم بمعني (لكي/لـ) ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر:

- **... to لكي / لـ + inf. ...**
  - She looked at her mobile to check the time.

٢. تُستخدَم بعد بعض الأفعال ويقابلها في اللغة العربية (أن) ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر:

- **... to أن + inf. ...**
  - I want to have a cold drink.

٣. تُستخدَم بمعني (إلي) ويأتي بعدها مكان:

- **... to إلي + place ...**
  - He went to the mall to do some shopping.

٤. تُستخدَم أحياناً بدلاً من الفعل لتجنب تكراره:

- You can come with me if you want to. (= if you want to come.)

٥. تُستخدَم أحياناً بعد أدوات الاستفهام عندما تُستخدم بمعاني غير استفهامية:

- **...what/where/when/why/how/whether + to + inf. ...**
  - I got lost and I didn't know how to go back.
  - I don't know what to do.

٦. تُستخدَم بعد (am/is/are/was/were) للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية:

- The President is to give a speech in the conference.
- We are to arrive at the airport two hours before take-off.

٧. تُستخدَم بمعني (حتى / إلى):

- Sama counted from one to twenty.
- It is 110 km from Edfu to Aswan.

allow + to inf./gerund

١. في حالة وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدهما (to + inf.):

- **... allow + obj. + to + inf. ...**
  - The manager doesn't allow anyone to smoke here.

٢. في حالة عدم وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (n/gerund) :

- **... allow + (inf. + ing) ...**
  - The manager doesn't allow smoking here.

٣. لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- **obj. + be + allowed/not allowed + to + inf. ...**
  - You aren't allowed to smoke here.
  - Nobody is allowed to leave early.

jump out of ... skin

- **jump out of your skin = be very shocked or frightened** يُفزَع/ يخاف بشدة
  - A huge animal appeared and I nearly jumped out of my skin!
- **have a thin skin = be easily upset** سريع التأثر
  - A person who has a thin skin can't be a good team member.
- **have a thick skin = be not easily upset** لا يَتأثَّر بالانْتِقاد أو الإهانة ... إلخ
  - People who have thick skin do not pay much attention to criticism.

up / with

associated with	مصحوب بـ	made up of	يتكون من
happy with	سعيد بـ – راضٍ عن	popular with	مشهور لدي
impressed with	مُنبهر بـ	with bated breath	نافذ الصبر
keep up efficiency levels	يحتفظ بمعدلات الكفاءة مرتفعة		

Clear the confusion:

keep

- **keep + obj. + adj.** يُبقي ... في حالة ...
  - A jacket keeps you warm.
  - I always keep my room clean and tidy.
- **keep + adj.** يَبقي في حالة ...
  - I asked the children to keep calm because the baby was asleep.
- **keep + شخص + away** يُبعد – يُجنب أمور شخصية
  - Try to keep other people away from your private affairs.
- **keep + شخص/شئ + out** يُبقي ... بالخارج – يُبعد
  - The high wall keeps out animals that eat the plants on the farm.
- **keep + gerund = keep on + gerund** يستمر في ...
  - The child didn't hear me and kept running. (**Not:** kept to run)
  = The child didn't hear me and kept on running.
- **keep up** يحافظ علي
  - It is important to keep up efficiency levels.
  - Well done, Omar! Keep up hard work.
- **keep up with** يواكب – يساير – يلحق بـ
  - I ran quickly to keep up with the group.
  - Doctors need to keep up with the latest developments in medicine.

make

- **make ... of** — صنع ... مِن (طبيعة المادة لا تتغير بعد التصنيع)
  - This table is made of wood.
- **make ... out of = make ... from** — صنع ... مِن (طبيعة المادة تتغير بعد التصنيع)
  - We make glass out of sand. = Glass is made out of sand.
  - = We make glass from sand. = Glass is made from sand.
- **make ... into** — يحوِّل ... إلى
  - We make milk into cheese and butter.
  - = Milk is made into cheese and butter.
- **make ... up = invent** — يؤلِّف - يختلق
  - Some children make up stories when they make mistakes.
  - = Some children invent stories when they make mistakes.
- **make + شخص + شيء** — يُعِدّ شيء لشخص
  - She made me a sandwich.
- **make + obj. + inf./adj** — يجعل/يُجبِر .... (في المبني للمعلوم)
  - He made the boys study hard.
  - Cartoons make children happy.
- **Obj. + be + made + to + inf.** — يجعل/يُجبِر .... (في المبني للمجهول)
  - The boys were made to study hard.

Abbreviations & Acronyms

AI = artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي	**HR** = human resources	قسم الموارد البشرية
AD = Anno Domini - **CE** = Common Era	بعد الميلاد	**R.S.V.P./RSVP** = Répondez s'il vous plaît = please reply	نرجو الرد
BCE = before common era = before Christian era = **BC** = Before Christ	قبل الميلاد	**3-D** = three-D = three dimensional	ثلاثي الأبعاد
CV = resume = curriculum vitae	السيرة الذاتية	**UN** = United Nations	الأمم المتحدة

Other important expressions and idioms

average person	الشخص العادي	poor time management	سوء إدارة الوقت
behave yourself	أحسِن التَصَرُّف	port city	مدينة ساحلية
brainstorming session	جلسة عصف ذهني	positive consequences	نتائج إيجابية
burning question	سؤال مُلِحّ	possible casualties	الخسائر المحتملة
care homes	دور الرعاية	present self	الذات الآنية (الحاضرة)
code of behaviour	قواعد السلوك/ مُدوَّنة أخلاقية	productivity levels	مستويات الإنتاجية
colossal disasters	كوارث جسيمة		

computing and electronics	الحاسبات والإلكترونيات
constant cycle	حَلَقة/دورة مُتصلة
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة فيروس كورونا
crime court	محكمة جنائية
cultural identity	هوية ثقافية
cultural roots	الأصول الثقافية
culture gap	الفجوة الثقافية
current affairs	الأحداث الجارية
cyber security	الأمن السيبراني
cycle lane	حارة مخصصة للدراجات
deathly hallows	المقدسات القاتلة
deep down	فى الأعماق / فى الأصل
each other	بعضنا البعض
elastic band	شريط مطاطي
elderly people	كبار السن
even better	والأفضل من ذلك
even more real	أكثر واقعية
ever since	منذ
everyday life/lives	الحياة اليومية
evolving technology	التكنولوجيا المتطورة
fact sheet/file	مَلَفّ حقائق
feel like	يرغب في/يريد - يشعر وكأنه
fight through the obstacles	يحارب العقبات
find life tough	يجد الحياة قاسية
fine line	خط رفيع
first round	الجولة الأولى
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
go through a process	يخضع لعملية / لمعالجة
health problems	مشكلات صحية
human beings	البشر
human resources	الموارد البشرية
hunting contests	منافسات الصيد
I could not put my finger on what it is	لا أستطيع أن أحدد ما هو/هي
if this was the case	لو كان الأمر هكذا
instant messaging	الرسائل الفورية
internet cheat	الغش الإلكتروني/ الغش عبر الإنترنت
interpersonal skill	مهارة التعامل مع الآخرين
just like	تماماً مثل
key facts	حقائق أساسية

project management	إدارة المشروعات
proper measures	معايير مناسبة
react differently	يتصرف بشكل مُختلف
recent changes	التغيرات الأخيرة
record snowstorm	عاصفة جليدية استثنائية/ شديدة
research study	دراسة بحثية
rocky hilltop	قمة تل صخري
Round Table	المائدة المستديرة
royal family	الأسرة الملكية
science fiction films	أفلام الخيال العلمي
see a long way away	يرى مسافة طويلة
see no good reason why	لا يجد مبرراً قوياً لـ
senior manager	مدير أول
seriously ill	مريض بشدة
sleeping habits	عادات النوم
small minority	أقلية صغيرة
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
sporting achievements	إنجازات رياضية
sporting club	نادي رياضي
sporting contests	منافسات رياضية
sporting events	أحداث رياضية
sports people	الرياضيون
sports science	علوم الرياضة
square metre	متر مربع
stressful situations	المواقف العصيبة
study habits	عادات الاستذكار
study system	نظام استذكار
sum of money	مبلغ من المال
target audience	الجمهور المستهدف
team player	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي
technical problems	مشاكل فنية (تقنية)
That's your lot! = You won't get any more	هذا كل ما يَخُصك/ هذا كل ما لك
the mist is so thick	الشبورة كثيفة جداً
through hard work	عن طريق العمل الجاد
time management	إدارة الوقت
top tourist sites	أهم المواقع السياحية
town councillor	عضو مجلس المدينة
using social media	استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

overall purpose	الغَرَض الكُلّي	vast majority	لغالبية العُظمى
pirated copy	نسخة مُقرصَنة / مسروقة	video conference call	كالمة جماعية عبر الفيديو
ladies and gentlemen	سيداتي سادتي	virtual meeting	جتماع افتراضي
learning disability	صعوبة في التعلّم	visual aids	لوسائل المساعدة البصرية
long delay	تأخير لوقت طويل	voice memo	ذكرة صوتية
medieval Egypt	مصر في العصور الوسطى	warning systems	نظمة إنذار
more often than usual	أكثر جداً من المُعتاد	well worth visiting	ستحق الزيارة فعلاً
moving sight	منظر مُحرّك للمشاعر	wireless communication	لاتصال اللاسلكي
nation's pride	فخر الأمة	work experience	برة العمل
news alerts	إشعارات الأخبار	working hours	اعات العمل
news story	موضوع إخباري	young people	الشباب
nine goddesses of the arts	آلهة الفنون التسعة	official document	وثيقة رسمية
obvious pattern	نمط واضح		

Clear the confusion:

average

- **average (n)** — متوسط حسابي
  - The age of the players ranged from 20 to 32 with an average age of 26.
- **average (adj)** — متوسط في العدد أو الحجم
  - They have an average-size flat in Cairo and a large villa in Aswan.
- **average (adj)** — عادي - وَسَط - وَسَطِيّ
  - An average person drinks about three liters of water a day.
- **of average (height / intelligence ...)** — متوسط (الارتفاع / الذكاء ...)
  - About 70% of the students are of average intelligence.
- **on average** — في المتوسط / في المعتاد
  - On average, women live longer than men.
- **an average of** — في المتوسط / في المعتاد
  - I write an average of one thousand words a day.

find

- **find + شخص + شيء** — يجد/يوفر شيء لشخص
  - I found Ali a good flat to buy.
- **find + obj. + (inf. + ing)** — يجد... يفعل ...
  - I found Sama drawing in her room.
- **find + obj. + adj. + (to + inf.)** — يجد من الـ... أن ...
  - Rodayna found the exam easy to answer.
- **... be + found + to + inf.** — تم اكتشاف أن ... (صيغة مبنية للمجهول)
  - The box was found to contain a lot of jewellery.
- **find out** — يكتشف/يعرف (بدون مفعول)
  - You know it is a secret. Be sure that nobody will find out.
- **find out about** — يكتشف/يعرف عن (+ مفعول)
  - You know it is a secret. Be sure that nobody will find out about it.

human being – human resources

- **human being (human beings)** إنسان/شخص (بَشر/أشخاص)
  - Human beings cause a lot of pollution.
- **human resources (HR) +** فعل مفرد أو جمع
  قسم الموارد البشرية (وهو قسم في الشركة يختص بالتوظيف والتدريب ومساعدة العاملين)
  - The human resources have advertised some new jobs.
  - The human resources has advertised some new jobs.

poor

- **poor (adj)** فقير **≠ rich**
  - He was so poor that he could not buy enough food to eat.
- **poor (at) (adj)** رديء/سيء **≠ good**
  - Don't buy this poor-quality jacket.
  - She is poor at sports.
- **poor (adj)** غير خصب/رديء **≠ rich/fertile**
  - Plants don't grow well in poor soil.
- **poor in** لديه عجز/نقص في
  - The country is poor in natural resources.
- **the poor(n)** الفقراء + فعل جمع
  - The poor are always ready to work in order to get enough money to live on.

Tests On Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I am confident .... your success.
   a. of b. about c. a & b d. towards
2. The poor .... much support.
   a. needs b. need c. is needing d. are needing
3. My father is careful about .... time for family holidays.
   a. making b. doing c. surrounding d. distracting
4. The HR .... busy retraining the staff.
   a. have b. are c. is d. b & c
5. He didn't play as .... as Salah who scored two goals and assisted with another one.
   a. soon b. far c. long d. well
6. Vitamin D was found .... bones stronger.
   a. to make b. make c. making d. a & c
7. Some students try to attract attention by .... trouble.
   a. they make b. making c. made d. be made

8. You need to leave now in order .... catch the train.

a. of b. off c. to d. on

9. They can't have gone to bed as the lights are still ....

a. of b. off c. in d. on

10. .... a gentleman, he wouldn't make such a mistake.

a. As b. Like c. As well as d. Unlike

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ola as well as her brothers .... studied medicine.

a. have b. has c. is d. are

2. Don't pay any money for a .... copy. Buy a genuine one instead.

a. pirates b. pirating c. a & b d. pirated

3. Concentrate on your goal. Don't let yourself be distracted .... unimportant details.

a. by b. for c. towards d. at

4. The Nile Museum in Aswan is well worth ....

a. visit b. to visit c. visiting d. to visiting

5. It is a big mistake to take a decision in a .... of anger.

a. pace b. fit c. peace d. price

6. Intelligent .... he is, I don't think he will answer such a complex question.

a. but b. so c. as d. like

7. My father now visits my grandmother more often than ....

a. usual b. unusual c. usually d. unusually

8. What you think is true isn't necessarily true .... me.

a. for b. of c. at d. on

9. A sight that affects you a lot is a .... one.

a. move b. moving c. movable d. silly

10. One should be open minded .... positive criticism.

a. of b. at c. a & b d. towards

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This statue dates .... as far as the pyramids.

a. by b. at c. out d. back

2. The winning candidate represents the .... majority of voters.

a. little b. small c. vast d. tiny

3. I didn't really plan to meet her. It all happened ....

a. by chance b. on purpose c. intentionally d. unlucky

4. In a summary, only .... facts are mentioned.

a. detailed b. key c. all d. a & b

5. You have to deal with your problems .... order of priority.

a. in b. of c. to d. by

6. She is angry .... her son tells lies.
a. at b. about c. that d. towards
7. An ideal team member must have good .... skills.
a. interpersonal b. writing c. selfish d. painting
8. I had been waiting .... ages when he finally appeared.
a. of b. in c. at d. for
9. You won't get any more. That's your ....
a. many b. much c. lot d. a lot
10. As well as .... the cooking, she did the washing-up.
a. she did b. doing c. to do d. does

Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Professor Magdy Yacoub is known .... a pioneering heart surgeon.
a. as b. to c. for d. about
2. All human .... are equal in rights and duties.
a. resources b. beings c. diseases d. conflicts
3. To succeed in working with others, you need to be a good ....
a. gatekeeper b. thinker c. writer d. team player
4. Let her play with other children .... her own age.
a. with b. in c. of d. by
5. I was really confused by the sound I heard next door. I could not put my .... on what it is.
a. finger b. key c. mind d. brain
6. Clothes are sold .... a competitive price in this mall.
a. from b. of c. in d. at
7. You might have severe headache. If this was the ...., take an aspirin.
a. size b. cease c. case d. b & c
8. I am grateful .... your kind support.
a. to b. for c. that d. at
9. We are sure .... your wisdom at difficult situations.
a. of b. about c. a & b d. towards
10. I can't comment on what he said, ... I don't have the right to.
a. for b. as well as c. but d. so

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My grandfather died .... the age of sixty-three.
a. at b. in c. of d. by
2. Sama is enthusiastic .... starting university study.
a. of b. about c. a & b d. towards

3. Our team has made great sporting ....
a. clubs b. events c. achievements d. contests

4. This type of engines works .... for hot countries.
a. good b. well c. best d. b & c

5. I see no good reason .... she refused to marry him.
a. why b. for c. of d. not

6. El-Moasser is known .... all teachers and students.
a. as b. to c. for d. about

7. I didn't expect him to react .... to my offer.
a. differ b. difference c. different d. differently

8. I am grateful .... you.
a. to b. for c. that d. at

9. We are in a public place. Please behave ....
a. myself b. yourself c. mine d. yours

10. I didn't talk to her .... all.
a. of b. for c. at d. by

Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My students are progressing .... a steady pace.
a. at b. about c. of d. as

2. 'AI' is short for ....
a. All ideas b. Arab intelligence
c. Artificial intelligence d. Artificial ideals

3. True friends are always there .... each other.
a. out b. from c. at d. for

4. Mr Ayman made us .... unit 12 again.
a. to revise b. revising c. revise d. be revised

5. This temple was built .... the age of Ramses II.
a. at b. in c. of d. by

6. To make up a story means to .... it.
a. publish b. read c. reinvent d. invent

7. I am grateful .... you support me.
a. to b. for c. that d. at

8. It needs a lot of time and effort to .... hard work.
a. keep up b. make up c. set up d. make for

9. 'R.S.V.P.' means ....
a. replay soon b. reply soon, please c. run fast d. read out loud

10. Mr Nasser is known .... his strong will. إرادة
a. as b. to c. for d. about

Section V Verb + Preposition

في هذا القسم :

- جميع الأفعال المرتبطة بحرف جر في المنهج بالكامل (٩١ فعل)
- الأفعال حسب النسخة الأخيرة المعتمدة للكتاب المدرسي
- تم تصنيف الأفعال ابجدياً في مجموعات حسب حروف الجر
- بعد كل مجموعة تم ادراج الملاحظات اللغوية الهامة المرتبط بلوائح التعلم
- الأفعال المرتبطة بحرف جر من أهم لوائح التعلّم التي يستهدفها واضع الامتحان

تنويه: قوائم الأفعال التالية لا تضم الأفعال الاصطلاحية (phrasal verbs) التي تم نقلها إلى الجزء الخاص بالقواعد

about

boast about/of	يتباهى بـ	speculate about	يتفكر في
care about	يهتم بـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
dream of/about	يحلم بـ	think about/of	يُفكر في
forget about	ينسي ما يخُص	worry about	يقلق علي

Clear the confusion:

boast about/of/that

- **boast + about/of + n/(inf. + ing)** — يتباهى/يفخر بـ ...
  - He always boasts about how he has become a successful businessman.
  - She boasts of her rich family.
- **boast + that + جملة** — يتباهى/يفخر بأنه ...
  - He always boasts that he has become a successful businessman.
  - She boasts that she comes from a rich family.

care about/for

- **care about + n/(inf. + ing)** — يبَالي/يريد/يهتمّ بـ ...
  - He cares only about money.
- **care for + شخص = take care of /look after + شخص** — يرعي / يهتم بـ ...
  - She cares for her old parents.
  - = She takes care of her old parents.
  - = She looks after her old parents.

talk about/of/with/to

- **talk about/of = speak about = discuss** — يتحدث عن
  - Women like to talk about clothes.
- **talk to/with + شخص = speak to/with + شخص** — يتحدث مع/إلي
  - I'll talk to you later.

as

classify ... as	يُصَنِّف ... كـ	see ... as	ك/ يعتبر ... كـ
learn ... as	يتعلّم ... كـ ...	translate as	رجمته إلي
reinvent ... as	يعيد تأهيل ... كـ	work as	ـ

Clear the confusion:

learn - learnt/learned

- **learn + to + inf. = learn how to + inf. ...** كيف ...
  - She learnt to teach online.
  = She learnt how to teach online.
- **learn + from + n / (inf. + ing)** م من ...
  - I have learnt a lot from my teachers.
  - We never forget what we learn from difficult situations.
- **learn about** لم/يعرف عن ...
  - Leen learnt about cooking from her mother.
- **learn about/of = discover** شف – يعرف عن ...
  - I learnt of/about the accident from a friend.
- **learn that** لم/يعرف أن ...
  - I learnt that I got the job this morning.

translate - translated

- **translate from ... into ...** رجم من ... إلى ...
  - Leen can translate from Arabic into French.
- **translate into ... from ...** ترجم إلي ... من ...
  - Leen can translate into French from Arabic.
- **translate as...** عطي معني .../ يمكن ترجمتها ...
  - 'Misr' translates as 'Egypt' in most European languages.

work - worked

- **work for + جهة العمل / صاحب العمل** يعمل لحساب/ يعمل لدي ...
  - Mr Mohammed works for the Ministry of Education.
- **work for + obj. ...** يتناسب مع/ يَصْلُح لـ ...
  - You need to know which operating system works for your computer.
  - These arrangements don't work for me.
- **work for + obj. ...** يعمل لأجل/ يعمل لمصلحة ...
  - We all must work for the good of our country.
- **work in + منطقة/مدينة** يعمل في ...
  - Mr Mohammed works in Aswan.
- **work at + مكان العمل** يعمل في ...
  - Mr Mohammed works at a secondary school.

as

classify … as	يُصَنِّف … كـ	see … as	يري … كـ/ يعتبر … كـ
learn … as	يتعلم … كـ …	translate as	يمكن ترجمته إلي
reinvent … as	يعيد تأهيل … كـ	work as	يعمل كـ

Clear the confusion:

learn - learnt/learned

- **learn + to + inf. = learn how to + inf. …** يتعلَّم كيف …
  - She learnt to teach online.
  = She learnt how to teach online.
- **learn + from + n / (inf. + ing)** يتعلَّم من …
  - I have learnt a lot from my teachers.
  - We never forget what we learn from difficult situations.
- **learn about** يتعلَّم/يعرف عن …
  - Leen learnt about cooking from her mother.
- **learn about/of = discover** يكتشف - يعرف عن …
  - I learnt of/about the accident from a friend.
- **learn that** يَعْلَم/يعرف أن …
  - I learnt that I got the job this morning.

translate - translated

- **translate from … into …** يُترجم من … إلى …
  - Leen can translate from Arabic into French.
- **translate into … from …** يُترجم إلي … من …
  - Leen can translate into French from Arabic.
- **translate as…** تُعطي معني …/ يمكن ترجمتها …
  - 'Misr' translates as 'Egypt' in most European languages.

work - worked

- **work for + جهة العمل / صاحب العمل** يعمل لحساب/ يعمل لدي …
  - Mr Mohammed works for the Ministry of Education.
- **work for + obj. …** يتناسب مع/ يَصْلُح لـ …
  - You need to know which operating system works for your computer.
  - These arrangements don't work for me.
- **work for + obj. …** يعمل لأجل/ يعمل لمصلحة …
  - We all must work for the good of our country.
- **work in + منطقة/مدينة** يعمل في …
  - Mr Mohammed works in Aswan.
- **work at + مكان العمل** يعمل في …
  - Mr Mohammed works at a secondary school.

- **work in + مجال العمل** يعمل في (مجال معين)
  - Mr Mohammed works in teaching.
  - My father worked in tourism.
- **work as + المهنة/الوظيفة** يعمل كـ ...
  - Mr Mohammed works as a teacher.
- **work on + noun** يعمل في / على (مهمة عملية معينة بغرض إنجازها أو تطويرها)
  - Mr Ayman is still working on the report.
- **work with + شخص** يعمل مع ...
  - Mr Ayman works with a professional team.
- **work with + obj. ...** يكون مجال عمله...
  - An accountant works with numbers.
  - Mr Emad is a jeweller. He works with gold.

by / down

distract ... by	يتشتت بـ/ ينشغل بـ	start by	يبدأ بـ
improve ... by	يُحسِّن ... بنسبة	calm down	يهدأ
increase by	يزداد بنسبة	pour down	ينهمر/يتدفق
reward ... by	يكافئ ... بـ		

for

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	sell ... for	يبيع ... في مقابل
fight for	يقاتل من أجل	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
pay for	يدفع ثمن	wait for	ينتظر
provide ... for	يوفر ... لـ		

Clear the confusion:

apply - applied

- **apply for** يتقدم بطلب (+ اسم الشيء الذي نتقدم للحصول عليه)
  - I applied for a job as a tour guide.
- **apply to** يتقدم بطلب (+ اسم الشخص أو الجهة الذي نتقدم إليه)
  - I am going to apply to the manager in person شخصيًا.
- **apply in writing** يتقدم بطلب مكتوب
  - To be a member of the club, apply in writing.
- **apply (to) (v)** يُطَبِّق على - يَسْرِي على
  - The new rules apply to all members of the club.
  - The role of management is to apply to the rules.

pay - paid

- **pay for + obj.** يدفع ثمن (+ اسم الشيء الذي ندفع ثمنه)
  - I will pay for the drinks.

• **pay + شخص + for + n / (inf. + ing)** يدفع لـ ... مقابل/ثمن ...
- I paid the carpenter for the repairs of the furniture.
- I paid the carpenter for repairing of the furniture.

• **pay + شخص + to + inf.** يدفع لـ ... لكي ...
- I paid the carpenter to repair the furniture.

• **pay + شخص + شيء + to + inf.** يدفع لـ ... لكي ...
- I paid the carpenter 500 pounds to repair of the furniture.

provide - provided

• **provide + شيء + for + شخص** يوفر ... لـ ...
- The school provides fast internet connections for students.

• **provide + شخص + with + شيء (+ to + inf.)** يوفر ... لـ ...
- The school provides students with fast internet connections.

from/on

benefit from/by	يستفيد من	rise from ... to ...	يرتفع من ... إلى ...
escape from	يهرب من	suffer from	يعاني من
graduate from	يتخرج من	transport (...) from /to	ينقل (....) من/إلي
hang from	يتدلى من	click on	ينقر علي
learn from	يتعلم من	concentrate on	يُركز علي
protect ... from	يحمي ... من	focus on	يُركز علي

Clear the confusion:

escape

• **escape from** يهرب من ...
- A criminal escaped from prison.

• **escape to** يهرب إلي ...
- A criminal escaped to the fields.

• **escape through** يهرب من خلال ...
- A criminal escaped through a tunnel under the walls of the prison.

graduate

• **graduate from** يتخرج من (+ مدرسة/جامعة/معهد ...)
- Mustafa graduated from the faculty of medicine last year.

• **graduate in** يتخرج بشهادة في (+التخصص)
- Mustafa graduated in medicine last year.

• **graduate as** يتخرج كـ (+المهنة/الوظيفة)
- Mustafa graduated as a doctor last year.

suffer - suffered

• **suffer from** يعاني من (+ سبب المعاناة)
- I suffer from migraine. الصداع النصفي

- **suffer in** يعاني في (+ موضع / مكان المعاناة)
  - I suffer in the head.
  - Homeless children suffer in the cold streets.

to

add ... to	يضيف ... إلي	lend ... to	يُقرض ... لـ
allow ... to	يتيح لـ ... أن	move to	ينقل/ينتقل ... إلي
appear to	يبدو أن	offer to	يَعرض أن
challenge ... to	يتحدّى ... في	plan to	يخَطط أن
connect to/with	يتصل بـ - يوصّل ... بـ	prefer to	يُفضّل أن
consider ... to be	يَعتبر أن ... يكون	present ... to	يُقدّم ... لـ
dedicate ... to	يُخصّص... لـ - يُكرّس ... لـ	reply to	يرد علي
encourage ... to	يُشجّع ... أن	seem to	يبدو أن
escape to	يهرب إلي	send ... to	يُرسِل ... إلي
force ... to	يُجبِر ... أن	teach ... to	يُعلّم ... لـ / أن
hand ... to	يُسلّم ... إلي	tend to	يميل إلي
intend to	ينوي أن	write to	يبعث برسالة إلي

Clear the confusion:

تم التعامل مع حرف الجر (to) بشكل كاف في القسم الخاص بالتعبيرات والمصطلحات

With/around/through/past/at/onto

agree with	يتفق مع/ يوافق علي	email ... at	يبعث لـ ... بريد الكتروني علي (عنوان)
argue with	يتجادل مع		
centre around	تتمركز حول	experiment with/in/on	يجري تجربة علي- يحاول القيام بـ
climb onto	يصعد إلى سطح		
combine ... with	يجمع بين ... و ...	help ... with	يساعد ... في
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ ...	impress ... with	يُبهِر ... بـ
conclude ... with	يختتم ... بـ	pass through	يمر من خلال
deal with	يتعامل مع	share ... with	يشارك/يتقاسم ... مع
disagree with	يختلف مع	supply ... with	يمد ... بـ
		travel past	يجتاز/يمُر بجوار

Clear the confusion:

argue - argued

- **argue with + شخص** يجادل/يتناقش مع
  - He always argues with his classmates.
- **argue about/over + شيء** يتجادل بخصوص ...
  - The students are still arguing about the correct answer to this question.
- **argue for + n/ (inf. + ing)** يدعم / يؤيد
  - He argues for the right of all children to good education.

• argue against + n/ (inf. + ing) يهاجم - يُفنِّد
- He argues against child labour. عمالة الأطفال

supply - supplied

• supply + شيء + to + شخص يوفِّر ... لـ ...
- The school supplies fast internet connections to students.
• supply + شخص + with + شيء (+ to + inf.) يوفِّر ... لـ ...
- The school supplies students with fast internet connections.

Tests On verb + preposition

Test 1

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I talked .... Mr Ayman several times today. We are working on the final revision.
a. about b. of c. to d. that
2. Noha graduated .... law two years ago.
a. from b. in c. as d. to
3. I applied .... the job although I do not have enough experience.
a. as b. in c. to d. for
4. If you do not succeed in your job as a teacher, you will need to reinvent yourself .... something else.
a. out b. up c. as d. so
5. He translates formal English texts .... Arabic.
a. into b. for c. as d. form
6. The Nile River supplies Egypt .... fresh water.
a. to b. for c. as d. with
7. The Nile River supplies fresh water .... Egypt.
a. to b. from c. as d. with
8. We work .... a strict employer who never accepts any excuses.
a. as b. for c. on d. with
9. You look nervous, Mr Ayman. Please calm ....
a. out b. in c. down d. up
10. When I last saw him, I learnt .... he got a job with El-Moasser team.
a. to b. from c. how to d. that

Test 2

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Most people use Google Translate to translate texts .... any language to read it in their native language.
a. into b. for c. as d. from
2. The number of tourists has increased .... 10% last year.
a. by b. of c. to d. in

3. It is better if you apply .... writing.
a. as b. in c. to d. for
4. Noha graduated .... a lawyer two years ago.
a. from b. in c. as d. to
5. She is always boasting .... her high marks.
a. about b. of c. a & b d. that
6. In Britain, the government provides all citizens .... full health care.
a. into b. for c. as d. with
7. In Britain, the government provides full health care .... all citizens.
a. into b. for c. as d. with
8. It is not honest to work .... the interests of the company for which you work.
a. against b. for c. on d. with
9. I sold my old car .... 125,000 pounds.
a. as b. by c. for d. with
10. Sama has learnt nothing .... what happened to her friend.
a. to b. about c. how to d. a & c

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A physician works .... patients.
a. as b. against c. at d. with
2. I applied .... Cairo University to do post graduate studies.
a. as b. in c. to d. for
3. You'd better concentrate only .... the task in hand.
a. of b. on c. with d. by
4. Don't worry! I will pay .... the meal.
a. for b. in c. to d. b & c
5. I learnt .... drive a lorry when I was a soldier in the army.
a. to b. from c. how to d. a & c
6. The number of successful students rose from 95 .... 115.
a. to b. about c. by d. of
7. The Arabic 'Tonis' translates .... the English 'Tunisia'.
a. into b. for c. as d. from
8. I hope all people will benefit .... the latest developments in health care.
a. of b. from c. in d. on
9. Noha graduated .... the faculty of law two years ago.
a. from b. in c. as d. to
10. She boasted .... her grades are the best at school.
a. about b. of c. for d. that

Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This solution doesn't apply .... your case which is completely different.
a. as b. in c. to d. for

2. Parents usually tend .... their children eat more.
   a. make b. to making c. making d. to make
3. I have learnt .... your illness only today. I hope you will get better soon.
   a. of b. from c. how to d. a & c
4. Your account seems .... be hacked into.
   a. for b. in c. to d. on
5. Bedouins suffer .... the desert, whether from the burning sun or the lack of water.
   a. from b. in c. to d. through
6. I never talk .... my private affairs with people I do not know well.
   a. about b. of c. for d. a & b
7. Mothers dedicate their whole lives .... their children.
   a. from b. to c. about d. out
8. You can email me .... ahmedata@gmail.com.
   a. at b. with c. for d. about
9. I paid a mechanic .... repair my car.
   a. for b. in c. to d. b & c
10. This small flat does not work .... my family.
   a. as b. for c. on d. with

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have learnt a lot .... the hardships I have faced.
   a. to b. from c. how to d. a & c
2. Are you for or against experimenting .... animals?
   a. with b. on c. a & b d. to
3. The goat escaped .... the farm.
   a. from b. in c. with d. through
4. The goat escaped .... a hole in the fence.
   a. from b. in c. to d. through
5. Mr Samy is still working .... the financial accounts of the company.
   a. as b. for c. on d. against
6. True thinkers argue .... the equality of all people in rights and duties.
   a. against b. for c. with d. about
7. True thinkers argue .... the inequality among all people in rights and duties.
   a. against b. for c. with d. about
8. Rodayna is always arguing .... Sama over everything.
   a. against b. for c. with d. about
9. I didn't like it when he spoke .... me angrily in public.
   a. to b. with c. about d. a, b & c
10. I was impressed .... her ability to argue her points well.
   a. on b. with c. as d. to

Section VI Grammatical Hints

في هذا القسم :

- هذا القسم خاص بالقواعد المدرجة ضمن نصوص القراءة والاستماع
- هذه الملاحظات الخاصة بالقواعد ذات بُعد تراكمي مرتبط بنواتج التعلم
- يحتوي هذا القسم على كل شاردة وواردة من قواعد بين السطور

Grammatical Hints قواعد ما بين السطور

Compound adjectives with numbers

1. استخدم رقم و بعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة و بينهم (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها

- My son is a twelve-year-old child.
- My house is in a ten-metre-wide street.

2. استخدم رقم و بعده اسم مفرد و بينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها

- Mr Omar is an expert on twentieth-century history.
- We're going on a ten-day trip.
- It's a four-hour journey.

3. استخدم رقم و بعده اسم جمع كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها ، وفى هذه الحالة ينتهى الاسم الجمع بـ (s')

- My work is two hours' drive from here.

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة أيضًا مع الكلمات التي تدل علي مسافة وتستخدم كأسماء وأفعال مثل :

(drive - walk - swim - fly - ride...)

- We have three hours' walk every weekend.

4. فى حالة وجود كلمة **time** نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد ، و(s') فى حالة الجمع.

- She'll be back in a week's time.
- In two weeks' time, I am travelling to Spain.

Adjectives ending in (ed / ing)

- الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) تدل علي أن الموصوف شاعر بالصفة أو مُتأثر بها أو يعاني منها
- الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) تدل علي أن الموصوف هو المُتسبب في الصفة

-ed		-ing	
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	مُمِل / مُسبب للملل
horrified	مرعوب / مصدوم جداً	horrifying	مُرعِب
shocked	مصدوم / خائف	shocking	صادم / مخيف
threatened	مُهدد / في موقف خطير	threatening	مُهدِد - يمثل خطراً

- I was shocked when I saw the car fall into the river.
- It was a shocking situation when the champion refused to receive the medal.

news

- كلمة (news) تعنى (خبر / أخبار) وهى اسم غير معدود، وتأخذ فعل مفرد :

- news + (is / was / has) / (inf. + s/es/ies)

- The good news is that my daughter has come first.
- The news spreads quickly because of social media.

despite

- despite / inspite of / regardless of برغم + noun / (inf. + ing) ...
= although برغم أن + جملة ...

- Despite her intelligence, she doesn't get high marks.
- Despite being intelligent, she doesn't get high marks.
- Although she is intelligent, she doesn't get high marks.

due to

- due to / owing to / because of بسبب + noun / (inf. + ing) ...
= because / as / since لأن + جملة ...

- Due to his busy schedule, جدول أعمال he has not time for entertainment.
- Because he has a busy schedule, he has not time for entertainment.

in addition to

- in addition to بالإضافة إلى + noun / (inf. + ing) ...
= in addition, بالإضافة إلى ذلك + جملة ...

- He did the shopping in addition to visiting his uncle.
- He did the shopping. In addition, he visited his uncle.

stop

- لاحظ استخدام (stop) بمعني (يمنع):

- ... stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf.+ing)
= ... stop + obj. مفعول + (inf.+ing)

- My teacher stopped me from taking a wrong decision.
= My teacher stopped me taking a wrong decision.

- لاحظ استخدام (stop) بمعني (يتوقف):

- ... stop + (inf.+ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء
= ... stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء

- Rodayna stopped playing computer games because it hurt her eyes.
= I stopped to make myself a cup of tea.

a / an = per / every

- لاحظ استخدام (stop) بمعنى (يتوقف):

- ... a/an = per = every كل - في كل - لكل

- He is driving at 80 kilometres an hour. (= per hour)
- I take this medicine three times a day. (= every day)

start - begin

- يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) أو (inf.+ ing) بعد (start / begin):

- start / begin + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- He started / began to play football when he was five.
- He started / began playing football when he was five.

- ولكن بعد (starting / beginning) يُستخدم (to + inf.) فقط:

- starting / beginning + (to + inf.)

- It is starting / beginning raining heavily. (✗)
- It is starting / beginning to rain heavily. (✓)

Past participle clauses عبارات اسم المفعول

تبدأ هذه العبارات بـ (P.P.) وتُستخدم في حالة المبني للمجهول، ويمكن أن تُستخدم بدلا من الروابط التالية:

- When عندما + عبارة مبنية للمجهول = (p.p.) ....

- When my car was mended by the mechanic, it became faster.
= Mended by the mechanic, my car became faster.

- After / As soon as بمجرد أن / Once بمجرد أن + عبارة مبنية للمجهول = (p.p.) ....

- Just after lunch was prepared by the cook, it was served to the guests.
= Prepared by the cook, lunch was served to the guests.

- ..... because لأن + عبارة مبنية للمجهول = (p.p.) ....

- Because Nada is fed well by mum, she is healthy.
= Fed well by mum, Nada is healthy.

- .... who / which / that + عبارة وصل مبنية للمجهول = subject + (p.p.) ....

- The villa which was built by my father cost millions of pounds.
= The villa built by my father cost millions of pounds.

Present participle clauses

تبدأ هذه العبارات بـ (inf. + ing) وتُستخدم في حالة المبني للمعلوم، ويمكن أن تُستخدم بدلًا من الروابط التالية:

1. While / As بينما + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (inf. + ing) ....

- While she was doing the cooking, she got burnt.
= Doing the cooking, she got burnt.

2. When عندما + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (inf. + ing) ....

- When he arrived home, he asked for some juice.
= Arriving home, he asked for some juice.

3. **After / As soon as / Once بمجرد أن + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (inf. + ing) ....**

- After Rodayna had taken a short break, she started to work again.
= Taking a short break, Rodayna started to work again.

4. **....... because لأن + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = (inf. + ing) ....**

- Because mum was very tired, she didn't do the housework.
= Being very tired, mum didn't do the housework.

5. **....... who / which / that + جملة وصل مبنية للمعلوم = subject + (inf. + ing) ....**

- The man who is talking on his mobile is my manager.
= The man talking on his mobile is my manager.

Adverb ظرف + sentence

كن وضع بعض الظروف في بداية الجملة ، مثل :

Interestingly من المثير للاهتمام / Undoubtedly بلا شك /
Unfortunately للأسف الشديد أو لسوء الحظ /Luckily لحسن الحظ /
Personally بصفة شخصية

- Unfortunately, none of her daughters ever married.
- Undoubtedly, he will accept the offer.

ا جاءت الظروف الدالة على النفي في بداية الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل مثل :

never / scarcely / rarely / seldom / not until / no longer /
neither / no sooner / hardly / little .....

- Never does he waste his time or money.
- Not until he had arrived home did he take a rest.

instead – instead of

• **instead** بدلا من ذلك (في بداية أو نهاية الجملة الثانية)

- Sama didn't have lunch at home. Instead, she had a snack outdoors.
= Sama didn't have lunch at home. She had a snack outdoors instead.

• **instead of + noun / (inf. + ing)** بدلًا من (في البداية أو الوسط)

= Instead of having lunch at home, Sama had a snack outdoors.
= Sama had a snack outdoors instead of having lunch at home.

interested in / interested to / (have) interest in

• **interested in + (n) / (inf. + ing)** تم بـ ...

- Salma is interested in poetry.
- I'm interested in reading adventure stories.

• **interested to + inf.** تم أن (يفعل ...)

- I'm interested to follow the rest of the film.

• **(have) interest in + (n) / (inf. + ing)** لديه اهتمام بـ

- Mr Badawi has a great interest in biology.
- Mr Sherif has interest in watching football matches.

other / rather + than

• **other than** بخلاف / غير

- We should use several sources of energy other than fossil fuels.
- No one can solve your problems other than you / yourself.

• **rather than** أفضل من / أكثر من / بدلا من

- You should study your lessons rather than play with children.

including متضمناً / بما في ذلك

تُستخدم (including) كحرف جر بمعني (مشتملاً على / متضمناً) وتعتبر اختصار لـ (which / that + include):

- I did all the jobs which include writing the reports and sending the emails.

= I did all the jobs including writing the reports and sending the emails.

equipment

– كلمة (equipment) تعني (جهاز/مُعِدات) وهي اسم غير معدود، وتأخذ فعل مفرد:

- equipment + (is/was/has) / (inf.+ s/es/ies)

- The new office equipment is being delivered right now.

– يُمكن استخدام لفظ التجزئة (piece) قبل كلمة (equipment) وهو لفظ معدود له مفرد وجمع:

- A piece of equipment is being delivered right now.
- Some pieces of equipment are being delivered right now.

open

• **open (ed) (v)** يفتح

- Shops always open at 7 in the morning.
- Don't open the window. It's cold.

• **open (adj)** مفتوح

- Hurry up ! The shops are still open.
- The store stays open until 9 p.m.

• **open to = available for** متاح لـ

- The course is open to everyone.

= The course is available for everyone.

help

- help + obj. مفعول + inf. / (to+inf.)

- I will help you do your homework.
- I will help you to do your homework.

- help + ... + with + noun اسم

- I will help you with your homework.

- help + inf.

- Mum asked me to help do the housework.

Thanks to

- Thanks to بسبب /بفضل/ due to بسبب/ owing to بسبب + noun / (inf. + ing)
= because/ as/ since لأن + جملة

- He is fit and healthy thanks to exercising hard.
= He is fit and healthy because he exercises hard.

addicted to مُدمِن

- ... be / become + addicted to + noun / (inf. + ing) ...

- He was addicted to watching football matches.
- Some children become addicted to violent games.

neither - either

لاحظ استخدام **neither** و **either** بمعنى (ولا / أيضًا) للعطف على نفى :

→ either + فعل منفى + فاعل . جملة منفية	← فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت + Neither / Nor جملة منفية
- Omar can't drive a car. I can't either. - I don't eat fish. My daughter doesn't either.	- Omar can't drive a car. Neither can I. - I don't eat fish. Nor does my daughter.

spend

• spend money on + n. اسم / (inf. + ing) = spend money to + inf.

ينفق المال على ...

- I spent a lot of money on decorating the new flat.
= I spent a lot of money to decorate the new flat.

• spend time + (inf. + ing) يقضي الوقت فى ...

- Reem spent two weeks revising physics.

as a result of - as a result

• as a result of + noun / (inf. + ing) - نتيجة ل

- As a result of not training hard, he lost the match.

(= Because of / Due to)

• as a result + جملة

- لذلك/ نتيجة لذلك

- He didn't train hard, as a result he lost the match. (= so)

- يمكن ان تُستخدم (as a result) فى نهاية الجملة :

- He didn't train hard; he lost the match as a result.

whatever مهما / أيّ ما كان

- **Whatever + noun** فعل + فاعل + اسم -
- Whatever reasons you have, don't shout at other people.
- **Whatever +** فعل + فاعل -
- Whatever you say, he will do what is in his mind.

When عندما

- **When + sentence ....** جملة كاملة
- **When + (inf. + ing)**
- **On + noun / (inf. + ing)**
- When I arrived home, I drank some orange juice.
- When arriving home, I drank some orange juice.
- On arriving home, I drank some orange juice.

= On my arrival home, I drank some orange juice.

another - other - others

- **another +** اسم مفرد آخر / أخرى -
- There is another shop in this street.
- I want another bag of rice, please.
- **another+ (few / one, two, three, ...)**
- Give me another two days to finish the report.
- She has another few jobs to do.
- **other +** اسم جمع / اسم غير معدود آخر / آخرين -
- Ahmed likes helping other people.
- Other information is available online.

– وتستخدم (other) أيضا بعد الكلمات الآتية:

- **the / some / every / each / many / any / no / two, three, ... etc.**
- Five chairs will be in the office. The other chairs will be moved to the teachers' room.
- Like any other child, Rodayna wants to play.
- **others +** فعل يتوافق مع الجمع الآخرين -
- Some children like fish. Others prefer chicken.

adapt ... to / from / for

- **... adapt to + noun/ (inf. + ing)** يتكيف/يتأقلم مع
- They adapted to the cold weather of northern Europe.
- They adapted to living in the cold weather of northern Europe.
- **... adapt + obj. + to + inf.** لكي .... يُعدِّل
- He adapted a fridge compressor to pump up car tyres.

- ... adapt ... from يقتبس .... مِن – يأخذ ... عن ... -
- We adapted this play from a novel by Mahfouz.

... adapt ... for يُكيِّف ... مع – يُعِدّ ... ليصبح ...
- We adapted a novel by Mahfouz for a play.

Adverbs of manner ظروف الكيفية / الطريقة

❶ ظروف الكيفية : هو كلمة تصف طريقة أو كيفية حدوث الفعل ويجيب عن السؤال بـ (How)

- A : How does Aya speak ? B : She speaks clearly.
- A : How do you drive a car ? B : I drive carefully.

❷ يأتى ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

- She walks slowly.
- The teacher called our names loudly.

❸ يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالبًا كما يلى :

١. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة

- slow - slowly
- quick - quickly
- safe - safely

٢. وتضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l)

- careful - carefully
- useful - usefully
- beautiful - beautifully

٣. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y)

- possible - possibly
- terrible - terribly
- probable - probably

٤. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن يتحول إلى (ily)

- easy - easily
- happy - happily
- lazy - lazily

٥. الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام (in a .... way) :

- friendly - in a friendly way
- cowardly - in a cowardly way

٦. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل :

- good - well
- fast - fast
- hard - hard
- late - late
- early - early

- تُستخدم (too much) قبل اسم وليس قبل صفة :

- This tea is too hot. (Not: too much hot)
- Bassem likes too much sugar in his tea.

- لاحظ ما يلي :

• too much + adj. صفة + n. اسم

- Don't eat too much salty food.

• much too + adj. صفة

- Don't eat food which is much too salty.

- لا تُستخدم (too) قبل صفة يتبعها اسم :
- Don't drink too much soft drinks. (Not: too soft drinks)
- لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

... too + adj. صفة + a / an + اسم مفرد

- I can't pay too high a price for a tablet. (Not: a too high price)

too-either

- تُستَخدَم (too/as well) بمعني (أيضاً) في نهاية الجملة المثبتة:
- I saw two people there and I saw some animals too/as well.
- تُستَخدَم (either) بمعني (أيضاً) في نهاية الجملة المنفية:
- I saw no people there and I didn't see animals either.

as well as

- **as well as + n / (inf. + ing)** بالإضافة إلى / تماماً مثل
  - I invited Omar as well as Ahmed.
  - As well as preparing lunch, I washed up.

⊙ عندما تربط (as well as) فاعلين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول من ناحية الإفراد والجمع:

- Sama as well as her friends is a good student.

- **as well as** بنفس جودة - بنفس كفاءة
  - I wish all footballers play as well as Mohammed Salah.

Do you mind me .... ?

أحياناً يُستخدم ضمير المفعول لتوضيح المعني بين الفعل و (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing):

- ... verb + ضمير مفعول + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- Do you mind me emailing you again for help ?
- Have you expected him to win the gold medal ?

one - ones

- تُستخدم كلمة (one) كضمير بمعني (واحد/الفرد/المرء)
  - One has to be kind to all other people.
  - Nasser has a silver tablet. I have a black one.
- تُستخدم كلمة (ones) كضمير يعود علي اسم جمع:

- **A:** I look for genuine headphones.
  B: Don't worry. I have good ones.

in time - on time

- **in time** في الوقت المناسب
  - He arrived in time for dinner.
- **on time** في الوقت المحدد تماماً
  - You must be here on time. The manager here is very strict.

Whether or not

الحديث عن اختيار بين بديلين نستخدم :

- **whether ... or ... سواء ... أو ...**
  - I haven't decided whether I will go to the stadium or watch the match on TV.
- **... whether or not ... سواء ... أم لا ... = whether/if**
  - I want to know whether or not you will go out with me.
  - = I want to know whether you will go out with me.
  - = I want to know if you will go out with me.

ن أحياناً لا يُمكن حذف (or not) ويتوقف ذلك على المعنى :

- I will go out whether or not you will go with me.
- ≠ I will go out whether you will go with me.
- ≠ I will go out if you will go with me.

harden – hard – hardly

- **harden (ed) (v)** صلب / يجف – يشتد – يتجهم / يبدو عليه القسوة
  - Concrete doesn't take a long time to harden. يجف
  - The attacks on terrorists have hardened. يشتد
  - When he is angry, his face hardens. يتجهم
- **hard (adj)** لب – صعب – شاق
  - This rock is too hard صلب to be broken easily.
  - Last year's exam was really hard. صعب
  - He got tired of the hard شاق work in that factory.
- **hard (adv)** بجد – بقوة
  - My father has worked hard to provide good life for our family.
  - You must hit the rock hard to break it.
- **hardly ... (any / at all) (adv)** بالكاد / قلّما
  - I have eaten hardly anything today.
  - She hardly meets her old friends at all.

aged

- **aged + العمر = at the age of + العمر = when he / she was + العمر**
  - He died in 2015, aged 87.
  - = He died in 2015 when he was 87.
  - = He died in 2015 at the age of 87.

on / of ... own

- **on + my / his / her / your / our / their own = alone = without help بمفرده**
  - I did the cooking on my own.
  - = I did the cooking alone.
  - = I did the cooking without help.

• of + my / his / her / your / our / their own — مِلْكَه / يخصه
- My wife has a car of her own.

despite/in spite of

• Despite/in spite of برغم + n/ (inf.+ing) ...
= Although برغم أن + subj. + verb ...
= Despite/In spite of + the fact that + subj. + verb ...
- Despite his disability, he is successful.
= Although he is disabled, he is successful.
= Despite the fact that he is disabled, he is successful.
- In spite of playing well, Ali lost the match.
= Although Ali played well, he lost the match.
= In spite of the fact that Ali played well, he lost the match.

Because of /due to

• Because of / Due to بسبب + n/ (inf.+ing) ...
= Because لأن + subj. + verb ...
= Because of / Due to + the fact that + subj. + verb ...
- Because of being late, she missed the train.
= Because she was late, she missed the train.
= Because of the fact that she was late, she missed the train.
- Due to hot weather, we had to stay indoors.
= Because the weather was hot, we had to stay indoors.
= Due to the fact that the weather was hot, we had to stay indoors.

... preposition + noun + gerund

لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

• ... preposition حرف جر + noun اسم + gerund
- Down Syndrome results in people having a learning disability
- She looks forward to her father returning home to tell her what has happened.

afraid of / to / that

• afraid of + n / (inf.+ing) — خائف من
- The little child is afraid of the dog.
- She is afraid of losing her job.

• afraid to + inf. — خائف أن
- She is afraid to lose her job. — يخشى أن

• afraid that + جملة
- She is afraid that she might lose her job.

or rather

تُستخدَم (or rather) بمعني (أو فلنقُل/أو بالأحرى) لتصحيح أو تدقيق معلومة ذُكِرت قبلها:

- I went to bed later at night, or rather in the early morning.
- It was warm, or rather hot, in Aswan in winter.

indefinite pronouns الضمائر غير المحددة

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير جمع مع الضمائر غير المحددة التالية:

(someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)

- Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who they are.
- Everyone was happy. They enjoyed their time.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الضمائر غير المحددة التالية:

(something / anything / everything / nothing)

- Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud voice.

- لاحظ أن الصفات تأتي بعد الضمائر غير المُحددة وليس قبلها:

- I am meeting an important somebody at five tomorrow. (✗)
- I am meeting somebody important at five tomorrow. (✓)

even though

- **even though مع أن + subj. + verb ...**
  - Even though I am very busy, I will help you.
  - = I will help you even though I am very busy.
- **even if حتي لو أن + subj. + verb ...**
  - Even if he is not rich, he helps the poor.
  - He helps the poor even if he is not rich.
- **although برغم أن + subj. + verb ...**
  - Although she was very ill during the exams, she came first.
  - she came first although she was very ill during the exams.

spend

- **spend money on + n. اسم / (inf. + ing) = spend money to + inf.** ينفق المال علي ...
  - I spent a lot of money on decorating the new flat.
  - = I spent a lot of money to decorate the new flat.
- **spend time + (inf. + ing)** يقضي الوقت في ...
  - Reem spent two weeks revising physics.

Adverb ظرف + sentence

- يمكن وضع بعض الظروف في بداية الجملة ، مثل :

Interestingly من المثير للاهتمام / **Undoubtedly** بلا شك / **Unfortunately** للأسف الشديد أو لسوء الحظ / **Personally** بصفة شخصية / **Luckily** لحسن الحظ/

- Unfortunately, none of her daughters ever married.
- Undoubtedly, he will accept the offer.

- إذا جاءت الظروف الدالة علي النفي في بداية الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد علي الفاعل مثل :

never / scarcely / rarely / seldom / not until / no longer / neither / no sooner / hardly / little .....

- Never does he waste his time or money.
- Not until he had arrived home did he take a rest.

indefinite pronouns الضمائر غير المحددة

يُستخدم ضمير جمع للإشارة إلى الأسماء غير محددة الجنس مثل:

- person, teacher, writer, child, student, doctor ...etc.

- A child should be treated kindly. They need love, not violence.
- If a person needs help, it is your duty to help them.
- A teacher works hard to help their students.

يمكن استخدام ضمائر المذكر والمؤنث معاً بدلاً من ضمائر الجمع في هذه الحالة كما يلي:

- A child should be treated kindly. He / She needs love, not violence.
- If a person needs help, it is your duty to help him / her.
- A teacher works hard to help his or her students.

إذا كان جنس هذه الأسماء واضح من السياق يمكن استخدام المفرد المذكر أو المؤنث للإشارة إليها كما يلي:

- A student in a school for girls helped her old teacher.
- A person with a large moustache شارب was talking loudly on his mobile.

Past Participle clauses (p.p. + ...) عبارات اسم المفعول

تبدأ هذه العبارات بـ (P.P.) وتُستخدم في حالة المبني للمجهول، ويمكن أن تُستخدم بدلا من الروابط التالية:

1. When عندما + جملة مبنية للمجهول = **(P.P.) ....**

- When my car was mended by the mechanic, it became faster.
= Mended by the mechanic, my car became faster.

2. After / As soon as بمجرد أن **/ Once** بمجرد أن + جملة مبنية للمجهول = **(P.P.) ....**

- Just after lunch was prepared by the cook, it was served to the guests.
= Prepared by the cook, lunch was served to the guests.

3. ..... because لأن + جملة مبنية للمجهول = **(P.P.) ....**

- Because Nada is fed well by mum, she is healthy.
= Fed well by mum, Nada is healthy.

4. .... who / which / that + جملة وصل مبنية للمجهول = **(P.P.) ....**

- The criminal who was arrested yesterday is very dangerous.
= The criminal arrested yesterday is very dangerous.
- The villa which was built by my father cost millions of pounds.
= The villa built by my father cost millions of pounds.

Perfect Participle clauses (Having + p.p.)

1. After / As soon as / Once /When / The moment + جملة مبنية للمعلوم

= Having + p.p.

- After I had done my homework, I went to bed.
- Having done my homework, I went to bed.
- As soon as Ayman finishes the report, we will take a rest.
= Having finished the report, Ayman will take a rest.

2. After / As soon as / Once /When / The moment + جملة مبنية للمجهول

= Having + been + p.p.

- After my flat had been decorated, it looked fantastic.
- Having been decorated, my flat looked fantastic.

لاحظ أن:

١. لابد أن يكون الفاعل واحد في الجملتين حتى يمكن استخدام العبارات التي تبدأ بـ (inf. + ing) :

- As mum was waiting for us to return home, she fell asleep in the chair.
= Waiting for us to return home, mum fell asleep in the chair.

لكن في حالة اختلاف الفاعل لن يكون المعني واضحا ، لاحظ المثال التالي:

- After Rodayna had done homework, I turned on the TV.
- Doing homework, I turned on the TV.

(هنا يفهم القارئ أنني أنا من قمت بعمل الواجب)

٢. في حالة اختلاف الفاعل في الجملتين يمكن استخدام الفاعل قبل (inf. + ing) بدون فعل مساعد:

- Because the weather was nice, we went for a walk by the Nile.
- The weather being nice, we went for a walk by the Nile.

٣. في حالة النفي نضع (not) قبل (inf. + ing):

- Not Arriving in time, I had to apologise to the manager.

oasis / crisis / basis

لاحظ الجمع غير المُنتظم للأسماء (oasis/crisis/basis) :

- oasis واحة — - oases واحات
- crisis أزمة — - crises أزمات
- basis أساس — - bases أسس

- Siwa is an oasis in the Western Desert.
- Siwa and El-Kharja are oases in the Western Desert.

verb + not + (inf. + ing)

يمكن نفي الفعل الذى يأتي بعده (inf. + ing) بوضع (not) قبل (inf. + ing) لكنها أحيانًا تعطي معني مختلف عن نفي الزمن:

... verb + not + (inf. + ing) ...

- I suggested not going to the park. (أنا قدمت اقتراح بعدم الذهاب إلى الحديقة)
- I didn't suggest going to the park. (أنا لم أقدم اقتراح بالذهاب إلى الحديقة)

as well as

- as well as + n / (inf. + ing)

بالإضافة إلى / تماماً مثل

- I invited Omar as well as Ahmed.
- As well as preparing lunch, I washed up.

⊙ عندما تربط (as well as) فاعلين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول من ناحية الإفراد والجمع:

- Sama as well as her friends is a good student.

- as well as

بنفس جودة - بنفس كفاءة

- I wish all footballers play as well as Mohammed Salah.

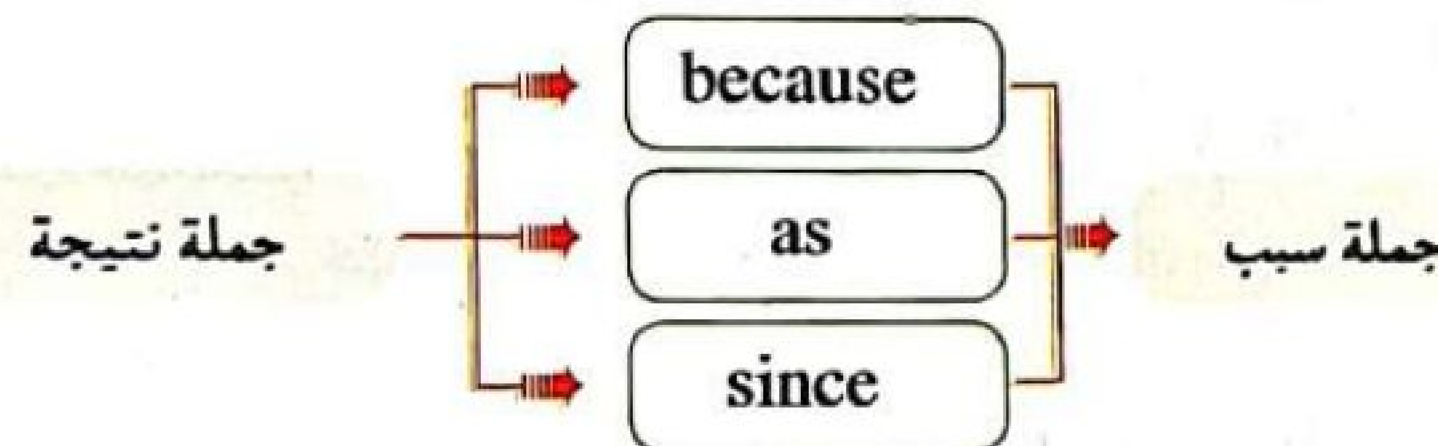
اذا كان فعل الجملة الرئيسية في المصدر فيمكن استخدام المصدر بدون (to) بعد (as well as):

- ... as well as + inf ...

- I have to do homework as well as revise for my test.

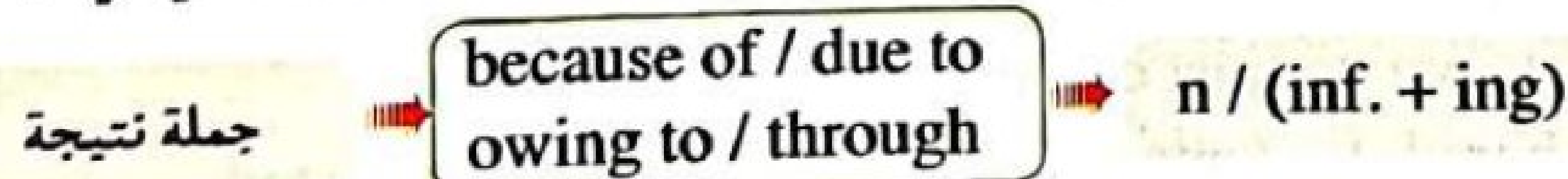
Cause and effect السبب والنتيجة

1 الروابط التالية تعني (لأن) ويأتي بعدها جملة تدل علي سبب وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط:



- Everybody admires her because she's really polite.
= Because she's really polite, everybody admires her.
- As I had some free time, I went for a walk by the Nile.
= I went for a walk by the Nile as I had some free time.
- Since I am tired, I will go home.
= I will go home since I am tired.

2 الروابط والظروف و حروف الجر التالية تعني (بسبب) ويأتي بعدها (n./ inf.ing) وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط:



- Everybody admires her due to her politeness.
= Due to her politeness, everybody admires her.
- Because of being tired, I will go home.
= I will go home because of being tired.

3 يمكن استخدام (thanks to) بمعني (بفضل) بنفس الطريقة في المواقف الإيجابية فقط:



- He achieved his goal thanks to working hard.
= Thanks to working hard, he achieved his goal.

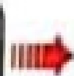
لا أن (due to / owing to) لهما نفس المعني لكن لا يُستخدمان بنفس الطريقة، و ذلك لأن (owing to) تعمل
ل الظرف و تصف فعل يسبقها، بينما (due to) تعمل عمل الصفة فتصف اسما يسبقها :

- The flight was cancelled owing to bad weather conditions.
- The cancellation of the flight was due to bad weather conditions.

كي نتيقن من استخدامهما بشكل صحيح يمكننا استبدالهما بـ (caused by) فان كان بناء الجملة غير صحيح فلا
كن استخدام (owing to):

- The flight was cancelled caused by bad weather conditions. (✗)
- The cancellation of the flight was caused by bad weather conditions. (✓)

لاحظ ما يلي :

Being  adj. صفة +  جملة نتيجة

- Being ill, he went to hospital.

(do/does/did + inf.) in the affirmative

ستخدَم الأفعال المساعدة (do / does / did + inf.) لإعطاء قوة للمعني أو للتوكيد:

- She shouts at her little sister.
  = She does shout at her little sister. (a stronger meaning)
- I solved the problem.
  = I did solve the problem. (a stronger meaning)

manage to – succeed in - pass

- **manage to + inf.** يتمكن من أن
  - He managed to solve all his problems.
- **succeed in + noun / (inf. + ing)** ينجح في
  - He succeeded in solving all his problems.
  - She succeeded in the exam.
- **pass + noun** ينجح في / يجتاز (دون حرف جر)
  - She passed the exam.

go / get + adj. = become + adj.

- **go** (dark تُظلم /mad يفقد صوابه /blind يكف بصره /deaf يفقد سمعه /dumb يفقد النطق / wrong يخطيء / missing يتوه .... etc.)
  - If anything goes wrong, just call me.
- **get** (tired يتعب / bored يسأم / angry يغضب / dressed يلبس / interested يهتم / cold يبرد / hot يسخن / burnt يحترق.... etc.)
  - He easily gets angry and shouts at his children.

Tests On Grammatical Hints

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I want to know .... you will accept the offer.
   a. whether or not   b. whether   c. if   d. a, b & c

2. I expect you will do as .... as your teammates.
a. good b. well c. far d. long

3. Sama helped me .... my homework.
a. do b. to do c. with d. a, b & c

4. Ali helped me .... lunch.
a. to prepare b. prepares c. preparing d. prepared

5. .... about me, my dad called me twice an hour.
a. To worry b. Worries c. Worried d. Worry

6. .... pieces of information are very important.
a. This b. These c. That d. They

7. Rodayna, ... eleven, starts primary five next year.
a. age b. aged c. ages d. who age

8. BMW cars are expensive .... being made of strong materials.
a. because of b. due to c. because d. a & b

9. I hurried to my car .... in the entrance to my villa.
a. parked b. parking c. having parked d. park

10. Everybody .... already left the ship.
a. have b. has c. is d. was

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Putting on weight leads to people .... from health problems.
a. suffer b. suffered c. suffering d. to suffer

2. The blind .... to use Braille.
a. have b. has c. was d. is

3. .... oases produce high-quality dates.
a. An b. This c. These d. a & b

4. He .... upset very easily.
a. gets b. becomes c. a & b d. does

5. My father stopped me .... my time.
a. wasting b. to waste c. from wasting d. a & c

6. .... up next to the sea, Amira learned to swim when she was very young.
a. Growing b. Grow c. Grown d. a & c

7. I'd rather take the underground .... than waiting for the bus.
a. other b. another c. rather d. would rather

8. Yara doesn't know how to prepare lunch alone. ....
a. I do either b. Either do I c. Neither I do d. Nor do I

9. She has .... homework to do.
a. too b. much too c. too much d. a & b

10. I am going to leave .... you agree. I have made up my mind.
a. whether or not b. whether c. if d. a, b & c

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The weather is .... hot today.
a. too b. much too c. too much d. a & b
2. I have two brothers. .... is a doctor, the other is still a student.
a. One b. It c. Ones d. Its
3. Some tourists visit ancient monuments; .... prefer coastal cities.
a. another b. other c. the other d. others
4. We wish he hadn't become addicted .... drugs.
a. to taking b. to take c. to be taken d. taking
5. The guests are starting .... bored.
a. getting b. get c. to get d. a & c
6. .... piece of information is very important.
a. This b. These c. Those d. They
7. .... I was putting on weight, I had to follow a diet.
a. Since b. Being c. Due to d. b & c
8. .... about her son, she called her husband to look for him.
a. To worry b. Worries c. Worried d. Worry
9. I spent a fortune .... my new office.
a. decorate b. to decorate c. on decorating d. b & c
10. .... I feel sick, I won't go out.
a. Because b. Because of c. Due to d. b & c

Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I spend my free time .... my parents in one way or another.
a. help b. helping c. be helped d. to helping
2. .... oasis has some of the best landscapes.
a. An b. This c. These d. a & b
3. What has .... wrong with the water pump?
a. gained b. made c. a & b d. gone
4. I stopped .... a snack as I felt very hungry.
a. to have b. having c. from having d. a & c
5. .... home from school, I saw an accident!
a. To walk b. Walk c. Walked d. Walking

6. .... , I found the lost keys.

a. Lucky b. Unlucky c. Luckily d. Unluckily

7. Whatever .... , you shouldn't be boastful.

a. you make achievements b. do you make achievements
c. achievements you make d. b & c

8. I went swimming. I did my homework ....

a. neither b. too c. either d. else

9. As well as .... the shopping, I visited my aunt.

a. do b. does c. doing d. to do

10. One of the two thieves was arrested while .... managed to run away.

a. another b. other c. the other d. others

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Because .... exercise regularly, I keep fit.

a. to do b. to doing c. I do d. doing

2. I started .... fast.

a. running b. run c. to run d. a & c

3. They were made .... on themselves by Mr Hossam.

a. depend b. dependent c. to depend d. a & b

4. .... being fit; she was able to win the race.

a. Since b. As c. Because d. Thanks to

5. .... for coming late to school, Leen now comes on time.

a. Punishing b. To punish c. Punished d. Punish

6. .... , I wasn't able to catch up with the rest of the group.

a. Lucky b. Unlucky c. Luckily d. Unluckily

7. .... being well, I will train for the match.

a. Because b. Because of c. Due to d. b & c

8. The group .... achieved their objective.

a. have b. has c. is d. are

9. I suggest .... by train to Aswan. It is faster travelling by plane.

a. to travel b. not to travel c. travelling d. not travelling

10. The cat was very .... , so it ran away.

a. frightening b. frightened c. fright d. frighten

Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They go for a walk once .... week.

a. ever b. the c. a d. an

2. The streets were full of customers .... their shopping.

a. do | b. did | c. had done | d. doing

3. I'll wait for you .... walking home alone.

a. instead | b. instead of | c. despite | d. while

4. I spend the afternoon .... at home.

a. help | b. helping | c. to help | d. to helping

5. Ali didn't go swimming. He didn't do the homework ....

a. neither | b. too | c. either | d. else

6. I will go out .... you agree. I am waiting for your permission.

a. whether or not | b. whether | c. if | d. a, b & c

7. Mr Hossam as well as his daughters .... helpful.

a. be | b. were | c. are | d. is

8. This plant adapted .... in cold weather.

a. grow | b. to grow | c. to growing | d. b & c

9. Thanks .... exercise, I keep fit.

a. to do | b. to doing | c. I do | d. doing

10. The mobile .... at the bus stop belongs to Yara.

a. found | b. finding | c. having found | d. being found

Test 7

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The animal seemed .... , so I got the fight of my life.

a. frightened | b. frightening | c. frighten | d. fright

2. .... the fact that it is too hot in the desert, a few people live there.

a. Because | b. Since | c. Because of | d. Hence

3. .... a footballer, Hossam knew the importance of exercise.

a. Been | b. Having been | c. Be | d. Was

4. Someone has called your name but I couldn't reply to ....

a. him | b. her | c. it | d. a or b

5. Despite .... , Mai agreed to help us.

a. she was busy | b. was busy | c. being busy | d. a & b

6. Although .... , she agreed to help us.

a. she was busy | b. was busy | c. being busy | d. a & b

7. I suggest .... by train. You will enjoy the beautiful landscape along the railway.

a. to travel | b. not to travel | c. travelling | d. not travelling

8. The scene was very .... , so I closed my eyes.

a. frightening | b. frightened | c. fright | d. frighten

9. Playing on the beach, we forgot about the time and .... lunch.

a. missing b. missed c. had missed d. was missed

10. I didn't go alone. .... , I waited for my dad.

a. Instead b. Instead of c. Despite d. While

Test 8

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... too much hard work, he experiences burnout.

a. As a result b. As a result of c. So d. Because

2. You can use this calculator. I have three other ....

a. them b. it c. one d. ones

3. This type of plant has been adapted .... in cold weather.

a. grow b. to grow c. to growing d. b & c

4. Could you help me .... the cooking?

a. to doing b. doing c. do d. did

5. Kids .... music early develops good skills.

a. teaching b. taught c. having taught d. teach

6. The news of the marriage .... spread fast.

a. is b. are c. have d. has

7. .... putting on weight, she was advised to follow a diet.

a. Since b. Thanks to c. Due to d. b & c

8. .... with mine, your audio components are rather expensive.

a. Comparing b. Compared c. To be compared d. To compare

9. A little child usually cries when .... mother goes out.

a. their b. his c. her d. it's

10. I have a tablet .... my own. It belongs only to me.

a. on b. of c. with d. by

PART 3

Language

A Five-day Revision based on Language

في هذا الجزء

- تم تقسيم القواعد إلى تصنيفات رئيسية يندرج تحتها تصنيفات فرعية
- عرض احترافي شامل لكل القواعد اللغوية المستهدفة في نواتج التعلم للصف الثالث الثانوى مع مراعاة البعد التراكمى.
- القواعد حسب النسخة الأخيرة المعتمدة للكتاب المدرسي
- عرض القواعد يُراعي جميع مستويات الطُلاب وجميع مستويات التفكير حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم
- تدريبات احترافية على كل نقاط القواعد مع توظيف نواتج التعلُم الاخرى الخاصة بالمفردات أو مهارة الكتابة
- تدريبات تقيس الجانب التطبيقى والتحليلى والإبداعى مصحوبة بالإجابة والتفسير

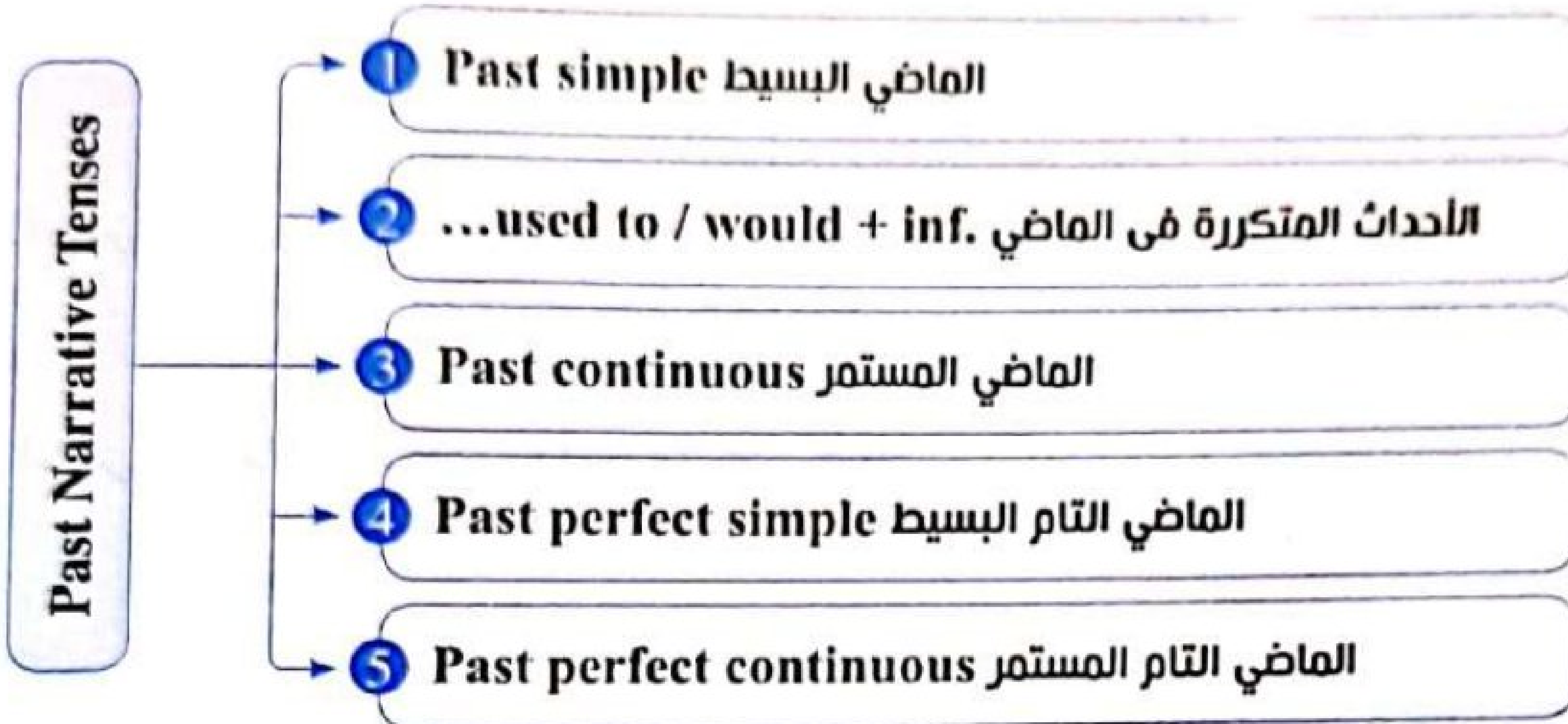
• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Narrative Tenses

في هذا القسم :

- شرح مبسط وشامل لأزمنة الماضي السردية (الماضي البسيط - عادات الماضي - الماضي المستمر - الماضي التام البسيط - الماضي التام المستمر) + تدريبات خاصة بكل زمن بعده مباشرة
- شرح مبسط وشامل لأزمنة المضارع السردية (المضارع التام البسيط - المضارع التام المستمر) + تدريبات خاصة بكل زمن بعده مباشرة
- تدريبات عامة تخاطب جميع مستويات التفكير علي الأزمنة السردية بالكامل



1 Past simple الماضي البسيط

1 تتكون جملة الماضى البسيط فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

Subj. فاعل + S.C. التصريف الثانى ......

- I met some friends an hour ago.
- They played football yesterday.

2 تستخدم الفعل فى المصدر بعد **(did / didn't)** فى النفى والسؤال :

- Sama didn't go to school yesterday. (NOT : Sama didn't went ...)
- Did you visit your uncle yesterday? (NOT : Did you visited ...)

3 لا تُستخدم **(did)** كفعل مساعد مع **(was / were)** فى النفى والسؤال :

- Omar didn't be in the office that evening. (✗)
- Omar wasn't in the office that evening. (✓)

4 تُستخدم **(did / didn't)** للنفى والسؤال مع الفعل **(had)** فى الماضى البسيط مع تحويل **(had)** الي **(have)**:

- Leen hadn't any free time last week. (✗)
- Leen didn't have any free time last week. (✓)
- Had Ali breakfast? (✗)
- Did Ali have breakfast? (✓)

يتكون الماضى البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول من :

Obj. مفعول + was / were + P.P. ......

- My sister prepared lunch yesterday. (معلوم)
- Lunch was prepared by my sister yesterday. (مجهول)

يُستخدم مع الماضى البسيط تعبيرات زمنية مثل :

yesterday / ago منذ / last الماضى / once ذات مرة / the other day مؤخرًا / in the past / always / sometimes / usually / often / in 2012 ..... etc.

- I visited Mr Nasser two days ago.
- I bought some clothes the other day.
- I always came first when I was in primary school.

يُستخدم الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى غالباً مع ذكر وقت حدوث الفعل :

- She visited London in 2010.
- I was in Alexandria a month ago.

يُستخدم الماضى البسيط أيضا للتعبير عن عادات الماضى كالتالى :

Subj. + always / often / usually / sometimes ... + التصريف الثانى ...

- Rokaya always got up early on school days when she was a student.

Subj. + used to اعتاد أن + inf.

- Nasser used to go to the club every day. Now, he only goes there every month.

Subj. + was / were / got / became + used to اعتاد أن + noun اسم / (inf. + ing)

- Noha was used to living (life) in a busy street.

- لا تُستخدم أساليب التعبير عن العادة مع ظروف الزمان التى تدل على وقت قصير مثل :

(yesterday – the other day - last night – at five o'clock ...etc.)

- I used to go out last Friday. (✗)
- I went out last Friday. (✓)

يستخدم الماضى البسيط بعد التعبيرات الآتية و يعبر عن شيء غير متحقق فى الواقع :

I wish / It's time / I'd rather +subj. فاعل + ماضى بسيط

- I wish I lived in a big house. My small flat isn't comfortable.
- It's time my father arrived home. I don't know why he is late.

- لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام (had + p.p.) بعد التعبيرات السابقة عند وجود كلمة أو تعبير زمنى يدل على الماضى :

- I wish I had travelled abroad two years ago.

Exercise On Past simple

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama .... the past simple yesterday. She also took a mini-test on it.
   a. revise b. revises c. revised d. didn't revise

2. Sama .... the past simple yesterday. She is doing that now.
   a. revise b. revises c. revised d. didn't revise
3. My mother .... the shopping yesterday as she was busy at home.
   a. did b. didn't do c. was done d. wasn't done
4. My brother .... the shopping yesterday as my mother was busy.
   a. did b. didn't do c. was done d. wasn't done
5. The shopping .... by my mother as she was busy at home.
   a. did b. didn't do c. was done d. wasn't done
6. .... yesterday?
   a. You did the shopping b. Did you do the shopping
   c. Was the shopping done d. b & c
7. I did .... you what happened but you didn't pay attention.
   a. told b. was told c. tell d. be told
8. Leen .... at school yesterday as it was her sister's wedding.
   a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c
9. Leen .... at school yesterday. I saw her there.
   a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c
10. Where .... when I called you this morning?
   a. did you be b. you were c. were you d. were you being
11. I .... a headache. I was all right.
   a. don't have b. had c. hadn't d. didn't have
12. I .... a headache. I took an aspirin and went to bed.
   a. don't have b. had c. hadn't d. didn't have
13. .... a job interview yesterday?
   a. You had b. Had you c. What did you have d. Did you have
14. .... a job interview yesterday!
   a. You had b. Had you c. What did you have d. Did you have
15. .... for lunch yesterday?
   a. You had b. Had you c. What did you have d. Did you have
16. Mr Mohammed .... Mr Ayman in Aswan the other day.
   a. meet b. meets c. met d. was met
17. Mr Mohammed .... in Aswan by Mr Ayman the other day.
   a. meet b. meets c. met d. was met
18. I went for a walk by the Nile ....
   a. ago b. sometimes c. since d. for
19. I went for a walk by the Nile two days ....
   a. ago b. sometimes c. since d. for
20. I .... shopping on Fridays. It was a habit of mine.
   a. always goes b. always go c. always went d. went always
21. I .... shopping on Fridays. It is a habit of mine.
   a. always goes b. always go c. always went d. went always

22. I wish I .... at my sister now. She is upset.
a. didn't shout b. shouted c. hadn't shouted d. had shouted

23. I wish I .... at my sister yesterday. She was upset.
a. didn't shout b. shouted c. hadn't shouted d. had shouted

2 Repeated past actions : ...used to / would + inf. عادات الماضي

❶ للتعبير عن عادات وأحوال الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر نستخدم:

- ... used to + inf. ...

- Sama used to drink milk every morning. (مبني للمعلوم)
- Sama didn't use to drink milk every morning. (نفي)
- Did Sama use to drink milk every morning? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- What did Sama use to drink /do every morning? (سؤال بـ "أداة استفهام")
- Milk used to be drunk milk every morning (by Sama). (مبني للمجهول)

❷ تُستخدَم (would + inf.) بمعني (اعتاد أن) مثل (used to + inf.) في الجمل المثبتة فقط للتعبير عن الأحداث والعادات المتكررة في الماضي والتي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر:

- When I was on holiday, I would get up late.
= When I was on holiday, I used to get up late.

في المثال السابق استخدام (used to get /would get) صحيح وذلك لأن الاستيقاظ متأخراً أثناء الاجازات كان حدثاً متكرراً في الماضي.

❸ تُستخدَم (used to + inf.) فقط وليس (would + inf.) في النفي والاستفهام للتعبير عن الأحداث المتكررة :

- When he was a young man, he wouldn't take a lot of medicines. (✗)
- When he was a young man, he didn't use to take a lot of medicines. (✓)
- Would you do homework in the evening? (✗)
- Did you use to do homework in the evening? (✓)

❹ لا تُستَخدَم (would + inf.) للتعبير عن عادات الماضي إذا كان الفعل الأساسي أحد الأفعال التقريرية لأن تلك الأفعال تصف حالة أو موقف وليس حدثاً متكرراً ، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be	يكون/يوجد	hear	يسمع
cost	يتكلف	like	يحب
deserve	يستحق	love	يحب
dislike	يكره	own	يمتلك
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	possess	يمتلك
exist	يُوجَد	understand	يفهم
feel	يشعر بـ	want	يريد
hate	يكره	weigh	يَزِن
have	يمتلك	wish	يتمني

- My grandfather would be a strong young man. (✗)
- My grandfather used to be a strong young man. (✓)
- When I was young, I would have a red bike. (✗)
- When I was young, I used to have a red bike. (✓)

⑤ تُستخدَم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف العادات البارزة الملازمة للشخص في الماضي:
- When he was a young man, he would smoke. (✗)
- When he was a young man, he used to smoke. (✓)

⑥ لكي تشير (would + inf.) إلى الأحداث المتكررة في الماضي، لابد أن يسبقها ظرف زمان أو تعبير يدل على الماضي:
- Ahmed used to play chess. (✓)
- Ahmed would play chess. (✗)
- When Ahmed was younger, he would play chess. (✓)

⑦ يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) قبل أو بعد (used):
- When she was a student, she always used to come first.
- When she was a student, she used always to come first.

⑧ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) بعد (would) :
- When I was late, I would always take a taxi.

⑨ يُستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس (used to/would + inf.) مع الأحداث التي حدثت مرة واحدة فقط:
- They would spend the summer holiday in Alexandria in 2018. (✗)
- They used to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria in 2018. (✗)
- They spent the summer holiday in Alexandria in 2018. (✓)

⑩ يُستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس (used to + inf.) مع الأحداث التي حدثت في فترة زمنية قصيرة تجعل من الصعب أن يكون الحدث عادة:
- She used to visit her grandmother last month. (✗)
- She visited her grandmother last month. (✓)

⑪ لاحظ أن:

- Subj. + used to + inf.
= Subj. + no longer لم يعد + inf. / (inf. +s/es/ies)
= Subj. + don't/doesn't + inf. ... any more / any longer
- Omar used to work here.
= Omar no longer works here.
= Omar doesn't work here ant more.

⑫ لاحظ أن:

1- be+ used to + noun / (inf. + ing) ...
- Mai was used to going to school on foot. (كانت معتادة)

2- got/became/grow ... + used to + noun / (inf. + ing) ...
- I got used to living in Aswan. (تعوَّدت على)

⑬ لاحظ استخدام (used to + inf.) في المبني للمجهول بمعني (يُستخدَم لـ/في/لكي):

- obj. + be+ used to + inf. ...
- Sand is used to make glass. (Not: to making)
- Huge stones were used to build the Pyramids. (Not: to building)

Exercise On Repeated past actions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We used .... in Assuit. Now, we live in Aswan.
   a. live b. living c. to live d. to living
2. We were used .... in Assuit. Now, we live in Aswan.
   a. live b. living c. to live d. to living
3. "We .... have mobile phones when I was young," said my grandfather.
   a. used to b. didn't use to c. would d. wouldn't
4. "We .... have only black and white TV sets in Egypt in the 1960s," said my grandfather.
   a. used to b. didn't use to c. would d. wouldn't
5. Hossam .... exercise every day out of habit.
   a. used to b. would c. a & b d. uses to
6. When he was a student, Hossam .... exercise every day out of habit.
   a. used to b. would c. a & b d. uses to
7. When he was a student, Hossam .... exercise every day out of habit.
   a. didn't use to b. wouldn't c. a & b d. doesn't use to
8. Omar .... work for an international company.
   a. used to b. would c. got used to d. a & b
9. I .... eat cheese for breakfast as a habit.
   a. used to b. would c. got used to d. a & b
10. I .... eat cheese for breakfast when I was young.
    a. used to b. would c. got used to d. a & b
11. I .... eating cheese for breakfast.
    a. used to b. would c. got used to d. a & b
12. Before he became a coach, Captain Hossam Hassan .... be a striker.
    a. would b. used to c. wouldn't d. didn't use to
13. Captain Hossam Hassan .... be a defender. He was a striker.
    a. would b. used to c. wouldn't d. didn't use to
14. I .... be at school on time.
    a. always used to b. would always c. used always d. always would
15. I .... the High Dam in 2017.
    a. used to visit b. would to visit c. visited d. had visited
16. I .... smoke. Now I am a heavy smoker.
    a. used to b. didn't use to c. would d. no longer
17. I .... smoke. I was a heavy smoker.
    a. used to b. didn't use to c. would d. anymore
18. People in Egypt .... heavy rain. Egypt's climate is dry.
    a. used to b. are used to c. aren't used to d. would
19. As I got older, I .... hard work.
    a. grew used to b. used to c. would d. would always
20. Cotton is used .... high-quality clothes.
    a. to making b. to make c. making d. to be made

3 Past Continuous الماضي المستمر

١ تتكون جملة الماضى المستمر فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

Subj. + was / were + (inf. + ing)

- He was watching the match at ten yesterday.

٢ تتكون جملة الماضى المستمر فى المبنى للمجهول من :

Obj. مفعول + was / were + being + P.P. ....

- The match was being watched (by him) at ten yesterday.

٣ يستخدم الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى وقت معين فى الماضى :

- She was surfing the net all morning last Saturday.

٤ يستخدم الماضى المستمر مع بعض الروابط الزمنية للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين فى نفس الوقت فى الماضى

While / As / Just as / When + past con.ماضى مستمر + past con.ماضى مستمر.

While I was doing homework, Mum was cooking.

= Mum was cooking while I was doing homework.

٥ يستخدم الماضى المستمر مع بعض الروابط الزمنية للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما وقع حدث آخر :

While / As / Just as / When + past con. ماضى مستمر + past simple ماضى بسيط.

- While / When I was watching the film, I fell asleep.

= I fell asleep while/when I was watching the film.

When + past simple + past con.

- When I fell asleep, I was watching the film.

٦ لاحظ ما يلى جيداً :

While + (inf. + ing) ... + past simple (فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل)

- While watching the film, I fell asleep.

During + noun + past simple.

- During the film, I fell asleep.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

While + حرف جر ... = While + subj + be ...

- While on holiday, I had a great time.

= While I was on holiday, I had a great time.

- لاحظ أيضًا :

When + جملة ... = On + n / (inf. + ing) ...

- When she arrived home, she was talking on her mobile.

= On arriving home, she was talking on her mobile.

- يمكن استخدام صيغة (inf. + ing) بعد (When) مع الأفعال المتكررة :

- When I left home, I made sure the front door is locked.

- When leaving home, I made sure the front door is locked.

- لاحظ أنه عند استخدام صيغة (inf. + ing) بعد الروابط لابد أن يكون الفاعل واحد فى العبارتين :

- While I was watching the match, I fell asleep.
= While watching the match, I feel asleep.
- While I was having lunch, Omar called me.

- فى المثال السابق (أنا) كنت أتناول الغداء، عندما أتصل بى (عمر)

- While having lunch, Omar called me.

- فى المثال السابق (عمر) أتصل بى عندما كان يتناول الغداء. (أى أن عمر هو اللذى كان يتناول الغداء، وليس أنا).

7 غالباً لا تُستخدم أفعال الحواس و المشاعر و الإدراك و التملك فى الأزمنة المستمرة :

feeling المشاعر	- like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, want, wish …
senses الحواس	- hear, see, smell, feel, taste, sound = appear = seem = look يبدو…
thinking الإدراك	- realize, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine, recognize, remember, forget …
other verbs أفعال أخرى	- be, belong, concern يهتم لأمر , depend, involve, matter يهتم / يبالي, need, owe, own, possess…

- I was understanding this lesson well. (✗)
- I understood this lesson well. (✓)

- لاحظ أن بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تُستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة بمعانى أخرى :

- He was looking يبدو tired. (✗) - He looked tired. (✓)
- I was looking ينظر at the birds flying in the sky. (✓)

Exercise On Past Continuous

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Yara was .... "Alice in wonderland."
   a. watch b. be watched c. watching d. being watched
2. "Alice in Wonderland" was .... by Yara.
   a. watch b. be watched c. watching d. being watched
3. .... to Mohammed Salah when I called you?
   a. You were talking b. Were you talking
   c. What were you talking d. Who were you talking
4. .... to Mohammed Salah when I called you!
   a. You were talking b. Were you talking
   c. What were you talking d. Who were you talking
5. .... to when I called you?
   a. You were talking b. Were you talking
   c. What were you talking d. Who were you talking
6. .... about when I called you?
   a. You were talking b. Were you talking
   c. What were you talking d. Who were you talking

7. At five yesterday, I .... to Aswan by train. I arrived there two hours later.
a. travelled b. was travelling c. had travelled d. have travelled
8. When I was driving to Alexandria, I .... to the radio all the journey.
a. was listened b. had listened c. have listened d. was listening
9. When I was driving to Alexandria, I .... some important news on the radio.
a. heard b. had heard c. have heard d. was hearing
10. While I .... the match, the tablet battery went dead.
a. was watching b. watching c. had watched d. was watched
11. While .... the match, the tablet's battery went dead.
a. was watching b. watching c. had watched d. was watched
12. I came across some old friends while I .... in Alexandria.
a. had been b. was being c. was d. no word
13. I came across some old friends while .... in Alexandria.
a. had been b. was being c. was d. no word
14. While I was having lunch, my mobile .... twice.
a. was ringing b. rang c. had rung d. ringing
15. Mariam .... first last year and she hopes to make the same achievement this year.
a. was coming b. wasn't coming c. came d. didn't come
16. Mariam .... first last year but she hopes to make that achievement this year.
a. was coming b. wasn't coming c. came d. didn't come
17. .... checking my inbox, I noticed that there were some important emails I hadn't read.
a. On b. When c. a & b d. During
18. .... checking my inbox, I delete unimportant emails.
a. On b. When c. a & b d. During
19. .... touching the broken electric wire, I had a great electric shock.
a. On b. When c. a & b d. During
20. .... the last session, I started to feel more and more relaxed.
a. On b. When c. a & b d. During
21. .... I was checking my inbox, my laptop ran into an error.
a. On b. When c. a & b d. During
22. This villa .... to my uncle who sold it to a businessman.
a. belongs b. belonged c. was belonging d. has belonged

4 Past Perfect Simple الماضي التام البسيط

❶ تتكون جملة الماضى التام فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

Subj. فاعل + had + P.P. ......

- She had finished the reports by 11 pm.

❷ تتكون جملة الماضى التام فى المبنى للمجهول من :

Obj. مفعول+ had been + P.P. ....

- The reports had been finished (by her) by 11 pm.

❷ يُستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين فى الماضى :

تعبير زمنى يدل على الماضى + by / before / this time + جملة ماضى تام

- I had done my homework before bedtime.
= Before bedtime, I had done my homework.

❸ يُستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى - لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية :

After / As soon as / the moment / When + ماضى تام + ماضى بسيط.

- After he had bought a mobile, he went home.
- After the mechanic had checked the engine, it worked well.

After + noun / (inf.+ing) + ماضى بسيط.

- After buying a mobile, he went home.

Having + P.P.+ ...+ ماضى بسيط.
Having + been + P.P.+ ...+ ماضى بسيط.

- Having bought a mobile, he went home.
- Having been checked the car engine worked well.

Before / By the time / When + ماضى بسيط + ماضى تام

- Before he went home, he had bought a mobile.

Before + noun / (inf.+ing) + ماضى تام

- Before going home, he had bought a mobile.

ماضى بسيط منفى غالبًا + until / till + ماضى تام.

- He didn't go home until he had bought a mobile.

❹ لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكد .....حتي) :

- Subj. + had + no sooner + P.P. .....+ than + past simple ماضى بسيط
- Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely / barely + P.P. .....+ when / before + past simple ماضى بسيط

- He had no sooner bought a mobile than he went home.
- He had hardly / scarcely bought a mobile when / before he went to bed.

- No sooner + had + subj. + P.P. .....+ than + past simple ماضى بسيط
- Hardly / Scarcely / Barely + had + subj. + P.P. .....+ when / before + past simple ماضى بسيط

- No sooner had he bought a mobile than he went home.
- Hardly / Scarcely had he bought a mobile when / before he went to bed.

❺ لاحظ أن :

- after that = before + ماضى بسيط

- I had tidied my room before I watched TV.
= I had tidied my room. After that, I watched TV.

- before that = after + ماضى تام

- I watched TV after I had tidied my room.
= I watched TV. Before that, I had tidied my room.

وجود أكثر من حدثين يكون استخدام الماضى التام مع الحدث الأول حسب سياق الجملة، لاحظ المثال التالى :
- After I locked the door, I realised that I had left my mobile inside.

ظ الفرق فى المعنى بين (after / while / on + inf. + ing) :
- On feeling the pain of the injection, she gave a spontaneous cry.
اقب سريع للأحداث أو رد فعل لحظى)
- After having lunch, she took a rest. (حدثين متتاليين يُرجح وجود فاصل زمنى بينهما)
- While walking by the Nile, I saw some fishing boats.
تركيز على استمرارية الحدث)

تخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت فى الماضى وكان لها أثر على أحداث أو مواقف بعدها.
ملة السبب تكون ماضى تام وجملة الأثر أو النتيجة تكون ماضى بسيط)
- He was sad because his team had lost the match.
= His team had lost the match, so he was sad.

Exercise On Past Perfect Simple

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. By the time I returned home, I .... the shopping already.
   a. did b. was doing c. had done d. had been c
2. By the time I returned home, the shopping .... already.
   a. did b. was doing c. had done d. had been c
3. By midnight, I .... Unit 10 and written an essay.
   a. had studied b. had been studied c. studied d. was studyi
4. By midnight, Unit 10 ....
   a. had studied b. had been studied c. studied d. was studyi
5. Once I .... at the office, I checked my mail.
   a. had been arrived b. arriving c. was arriving d. had arrive
6. After .... at the office, I checked my mail.
   a. had been arrived b. arriving c. was arriving d. had arrive
7. When I returned home, mum .... the cooking, so I helped her.
   a. was done b. was doing c. had done d. had been d
8. When I returned home, mum .... the cooking. So, I sat down to eat.
   a. was done b. was doing c. had done d. had been d
9. .... the engine, it worked well.
   a. Having checked b. Having to check c. Checked d. Having been checked
10. ...., the engine worked well.
   a. Having checked b. Having to check c. Checked d. Having been checked
11. .... I left for work, I had turned off the gas pipes.
   a. Before b. Once c. Just after d. After
12. .... leaving for work, I had turned off the gas.
   a. Before b. Once c. Just after d. After

٧ عند وجود أكثر من حدثين يكون استخدام الماضى التام مع الحدث الأول حسب سياق الجملة، لاحظ المثال التالى :
- After I locked the door, I realised that I had left my mobile inside.

٨ لاحظ الفرق فى المعنى بين (after / while / on + inf. + ing) :
- On feeling the pain of the injection, she gave a spontaneous cry.
(تعاقب سريع للأحداث أو رد فعل لحظى)
- After having lunch, she took a rest. (حدثين متتاليين يُرجح وجود فاصل زمنى بينهما)
- While walking by the Nile, I saw some fishing boats.
(التركيز على استمرارية الحدث)

٩ يستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت فى الماضى وكان لها أثر على أحداث أو مواقف بعدها.
(جملة السبب تكون ماضى تام وجملة الأثر أو النتيجة تكون ماضى بسيط)
- He was sad because his team had lost the match.
= His team had lost the match, so he was sad.

Exercise On Past Perfect Simple

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. By the time I returned home, I .... the shopping already.
   a. did b. was doing c. had done d. had been done
2. By the time I returned home, the shopping .... already.
   a. did b. was doing c. had done d. had been done
3. By midnight, I .... Unit 10 and written an essay.
   a. had studied b. had been studied c. studied d. was studying
4. By midnight, Unit 10 ....
   a. had studied b. had been studied c. studied d. was studying
5. Once I .... at the office, I checked my mail.
   a. had been arrived b. arriving c. was arriving d. had arrived
6. After .... at the office, I checked my mail.
   a. had been arrived b. arriving c. was arriving d. had arrived
7. When I returned home, mum .... the cooking, so I helped her.
   a. was done b. was doing c. had done d. had been done
8. When I returned home, mum .... the cooking. So, I sat down to eat.
   a. was done b. was doing c. had done d. had been done
9. .... the engine, it worked well.
   a. Having checked b. Having to check
   c. Checked d. Having been checked
10. ...., the engine worked well.
    a. Having checked b. Having to check
    c. Checked d. Having been checked
11. .... I left for work, I had turned off the gas pipes.
    a. Before b. Once c. Just after d. After
12. .... leaving for work, I had turned off the gas.
    a. Before b. Once c. Just after d. After

13. I didn't leave for work .... I had turned off the gas pipes.
a. after b. While c. on d. until
14. I .... there impatiently until she finally came out half an hour later.
a. sat b. didn't sit c. was sat d. had been sat
15. I didn't have lunch until my father .... home.
a. was returning b. had returned c. was being d. has been
16. I had .... gone out when my mobile rang.
a. hardly b. scarcely c. a & b d. no sooner
17. I had .... gone out than my mobile rang.
a. hardly b. scarcely c. a & b d. no sooner
18. .... had I gone out when my mobile rang.
a. Hardly b. After c. a & b d. No sooner
19. .... I had gone out, my mobile rang.
a. Hardly b. After c. a & b d. No sooner
20. I had gone home. .... , I took a shower.
a. After b. Before c. After that d. Before that
21. I took a shower. .... , I had gone home.
a. After b. Before c. After that d. Before that
22. After I shut the door of the car, I noticed that the keys .... left in.
a. were being b. have been c. had been d. used to be

5 Past Perfect Continuous الماضي التام المستمر

❶ تتكون جملة الماضي التام المستمر من:

Subj. الفاعل + had ('d) +been + (inf.+ ing) ... .

- I had been waiting for half an hour before the train arrived at the station.

❷ يُستخدَم الماضي التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر، ويستخدم عادة مع ظروف مثل :

- since - for - already - recently ....

- Nada had been studying physics for three hours when she started to get bored.
- He had been living at that flat for ten years before he moved into a bigger one.

❸ يُستخدَم الماضي التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي وكان له أثر على حدث أو موقف وقع بعده:

- I was exhausted because I had been working nonstop for more than ten hours.

❹ غالباً لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدة) ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط بدلاً من ذلك، ومن أمثلة الأفعال اللحظية ما يلي:

- break down - stop - close - open - end - receive - arrive ...etc.

- I had received an important email before I left the office. (**Not**: had been receiving)

❺ يُستخدَم الماضي التام البسيط وليس الماضي التام المستمر عند الإشارة الي تكرار حدوث الفعل ـ التعبيرات التالية قبل المفعول تدل على تكرار حدوث الفعل:

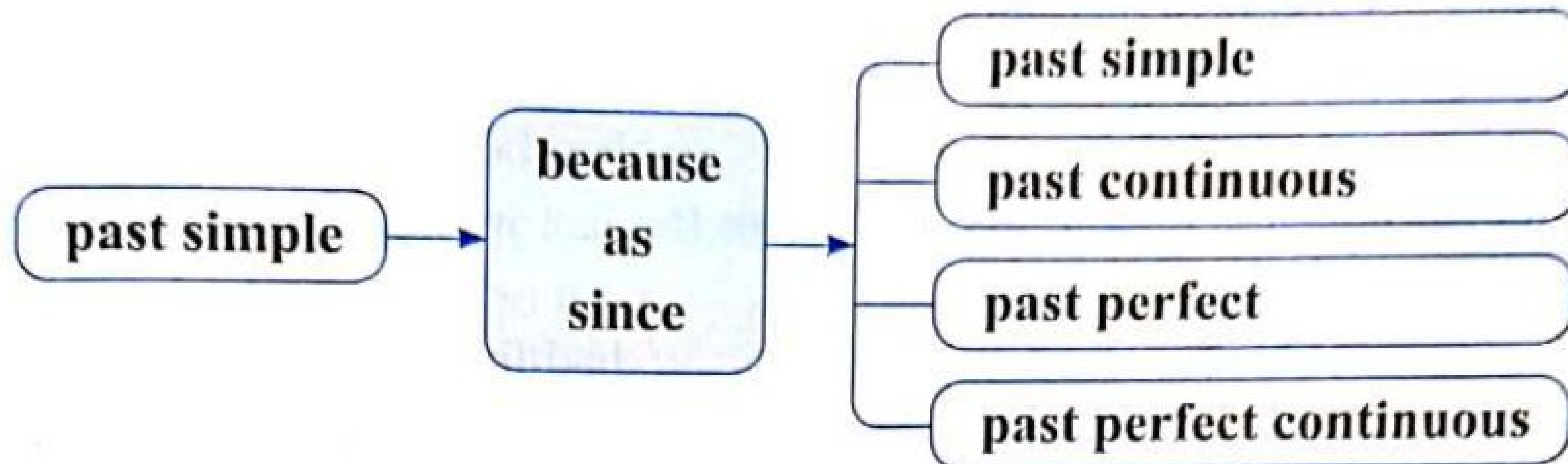
- two/three ... / many/a few/few/several/a lot of/lots of/all + مفعول جمع ...

- When I left the office, I had sent three emails. (**Not**: had been sending)
- By the time my cousins left our house, they had eaten all the apples in the kitchen. (**Not**: had been eating)

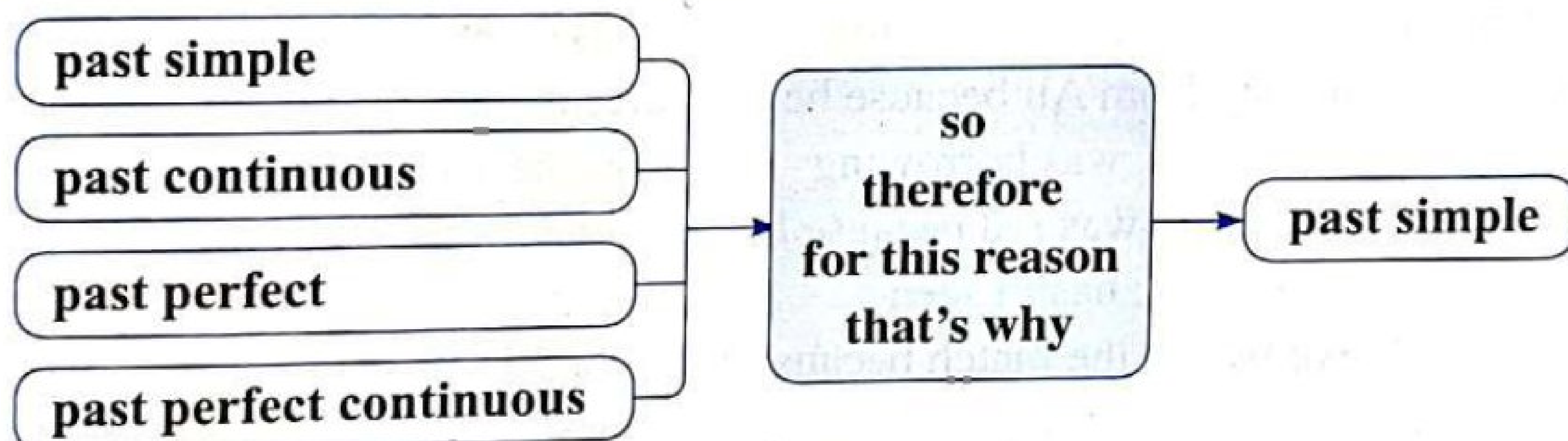
❻ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط وليس الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والتملك والإدراك .....):

- I had known my wife for five years before we got married. (Not: had been knowing)
- She had been in Paris for only a week when she fell and broke her leg. (Not: had been being)

❼ لاحظ استخدام أزمنة الماضي مع روابط السبب والنتيجة:



- He didn't hear the mobile ringing because he was asleep.
- She couldn't help her mother since she was doing homework.
- I didn't eat any sweets as I had already eaten too much food for dinner.
- I felt very exhausted because I had been working all day without a break.



- He was asleep. That's why he didn't hear the mobile ringing.
- My sister had travelled to Paris, so I didn't meet her.
- I had already eaten too much food for dinner, therefore I didn't eat any sweets.
- I had been working all day without a break. For this reason I felt very exhausted.

Exercise On Past Perfect Continuous

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. At the weekend, my aunt asked me what I .... since we last met.
   a. did b. was doing c. have been doing d. had been doing
2. She felt ill all night because she ....too much the day before.
   a. had eaten b. was eating c. eats d. has eaten
3. Hamdi was very tired yesterday evening because he......... for a school test all day.
   a. has revised b. had been revising c. was revised d. had to be revised
4. The children were covered in sand when they got home. They .... on the beach.
   a. were playing b. have been playing c. played d. had been playing

5. By the time we arrived home, we .... over 500 kilometres.
a. travelled b. had travelled c. have travelled d. are travelling

6. By the time he was 12, my brother .... three languages. He spoke Arabic, English and French.
a. has been learning b. had learnt
c. has learnt d. had been learning

7. When I .... to my friend's flat, she had already left for school.
a. went b. had gone c. had been going d. am going

8. Last year, I spent a month in France. I .... of going there since I was a child.
a. have dreamt b. was dreamt c. had been dreamed d. had dreamt

9. Leila and her husband moved into their own flat last weekend. Before that, they .... with Leila's parents.
a. live b. lived c. had lived d. have lived

10. My father .... last week. He had worked for the same company all his life.
a. had been retiring b. retired c. had retired d. has retired

11. Karim fell asleep during the football match because he .... to bed late the night before.
a. had gone b. has gone c. had been going d. had been gone

12. Ali .... a sandwich during the game because he hadn't had enough time to eat before it started.
a. had eaten b. had been eating c. has eaten d. ate

13. Hassan .... money from Ali because he had left his money at home.
a. borrowed b. was borrowing c. had been borrowing d. had borrowed

14. Adel asked which team was red because he .... these teams before.
a. hadn't been seeing b. hasn't seen c. hadn't seen d. wasn't seeing

15. Jack knew Steve was at the match because Steve had phoned him before he ....
a. has gone b. went c. had been going d. had gone

16. Paul .... for work for over a year before he got a job.
a. had been looking b. has been looking c. has looked d. had been looked

17. By the time she .... writing her report, she had drunk six cups of tea.
a. has finished b. had been finishing c. had finished d. finished

18. The little children's clothes were dirty because they......... in the park all day.
a. have played b. had been played
c. had been playing d. have been playing

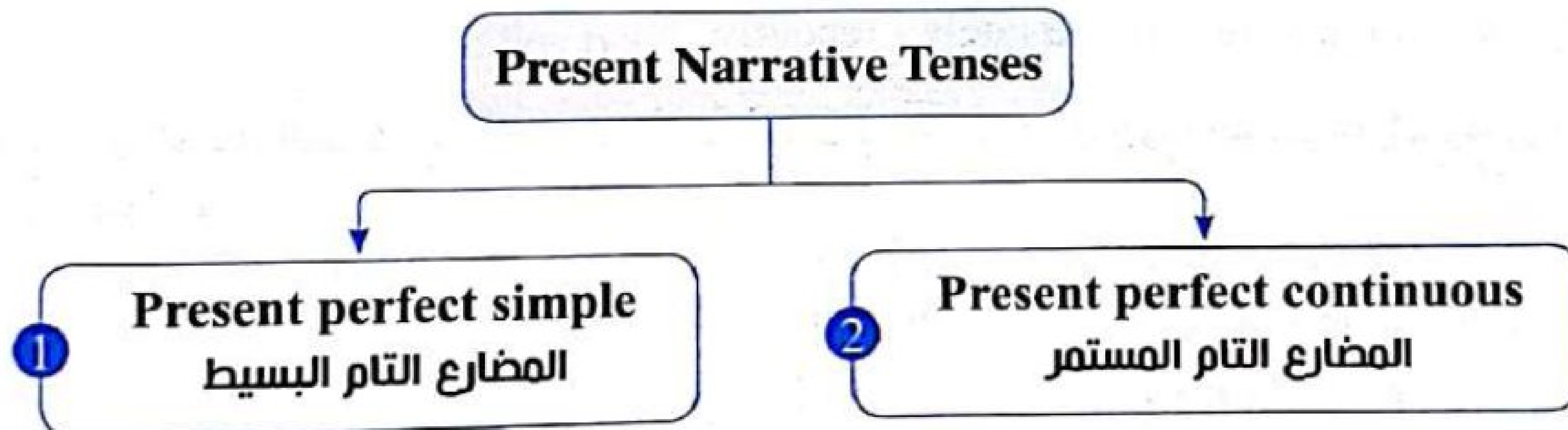
19. He had been driving for only three weeks, so it is not surprising that he .... his driving test.
a. was failed b. failed c. had failed d. had been failing

20. I went to the doctor's yesterday evening because I .... ill for nearly a week.
a. had been feeling b. have felt c. am feeling d. have been feeling

21. After his father ...., they moved to live in a smaller flat.
a. has been dying b. had died c. has died d. had been dying

22. By the time he .... 20, his mother had become a successful journalist.
a. had been b. was c. was being d. being

23. She found work as a secretary to a businessman who .... a friend of her uncle's.
   a. was been   b. have been   c. had been   d. has been
24. Before I worked for El-Moasser, I .... known to English teachers thanks to Thanwya educational website.
   a. have become   b. had been becoming   c. had been become   d. had become
25. We knew that he .... other people to run his business.
   a. had been employed   b. had been employing
   c. has been employing   d. has employed
26. Before he worked as a tour guide, he .... articles for local newspapers.
   a. had written   b. has written   c. was written   d. was writing
27. Hassan's father .... young because he had suffered from cancer.
   a. had been dying   b. had died   c. died   d. was dying
28. The man I worked for in Cairo .... my father.
   a. has known   b. had known
   c. have known   d. had been knowing
29. The man I work for in Cairo .... my father.
   a. has known   b. had known
   c. have known   d. had been knowing
30. He was already a successful businessman when people .... that he was the son of a poor night watchman.
   a. realise   b. have realised   c. had been realising   d. realised



1 Present perfect simple المضارع التام البسيط

① تتكون جملة المضارع التام البسيط فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

- I / You / We / They + have ('ve) + P. P. ...
- He / She / It + has ('s) + P. P. ...

- We have bought some chocolate.
- Radwa has washed the dishes.

② تتكون جملة المضارع التام البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول من :

Obj. مفعول+ have / has + been + P.P. ...

- Some chocolate has been bought (by us).
- The dishes have been washed (by Radwa).

٣ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف بدأت فى الماضى و لم تنتهى بعد :
- I have felt this pain since I arrived home. (I still feel this pain)

٤ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن مواقف مرت فى الماضى دون ذكر وقت حدوثها :
- I have attended three meetings.

٥ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية فى الماضى و لها أثر على الحاضر (جملة السبب تكون مضارع تام وجملة الأثر أو النتيجة تكون مضارع بسيط) :

- I've eaten enough, so I don't want any more food.
- My wife looks very tired. She has cleaned all the rooms.

٦ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب غالباً مع (**ever / never**) :

جملة تفضيل ..... + subject + have/has+ ever + P.P. .....
= Subject + have/has+ never + P.P. .... such (a / an) + adj. صفة + n. اسم.

- This is the most dangerous animal I have ever seen.
= I have never seen such a dangerous animal.

- Subject + have/has + never + P.P. .... before (now).
= This is the first time + subj. + have / has + (ever) + P.P. ......

- Rody has never prepared lunch before (now).
= This is the first time Rody has (ever) prepared lunch.

٧ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث تمت من فترة وجيزة غالباً مع (**just / recently / lately**) :
- I have just returned home.
- I have joined a language course lately / recently.

٨ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط مع (**yet**) للتعبير عن أحداث لم تحدث حتى الآن ومن المُنتظر حدوثها وتكون الجملة منفية او استفهامية :
- Have you met the new manager yet ? (I expect you have met him)
- My uncle hasn't left hospital yet. (He is expected to leave)

٩ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عمَّا تم القيام به حتى الآن غالباً مع (**so far / up till now**) بمعنى (حتى الآن) :
- So far, I have passed two exams.
- I have interviewed five applicants up till now.

١٠ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتأكيد على حدوث الفعل مع (**already**) بمعنى (بالفعل) :
- I have already watered the trees in the garden.
- Has this student finished the exam already? He must be very clever.

١١ لاحظ استخدام (**since**) :

1. since + توقيت محدد

- I haven't seen my aunt since yesterday (Sunday / last week / October / 2016 ... etc.)

2. since + اسم يدل على توقيت محدد أو مرحلة محددة

- She has lived in Aswan since her (birth / childhood / marriage / graduation / ... etc.)

3. since + جملة ماضى بسيط أو مضارع تام

- Omar has worked in this company since he graduated.
- We have played squash since we have become members of this club.

4. It's + مدة زمنية + since + جملة فى الماضى البسيط

- It's two month since we met.

⑫ لاحظ استخدام (for) :

- for + المدة التى استغرقها الحدث

- I have lived in Aswan for (17 years / two months / a week / a long time / ages ... etc.)

لاحظ الجملة التالية :

- I have played football for as long as I can remember.

⑬ لاحظ أن :

- have / has been to / in + مكان — ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه
- have / has gone to + مكان — ذهب إلى مكان ولم يرجع حتى الآن

- You can't meet the manager because he has gone to Paris.
- He has been to the supermarket. You can see the bags on the table.

Exercise On Present perfect simple

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. One of the team members .... badly injured.
 a. has b. has been c. had d. had been
2. I .... attended three conferences this year.
 a. had b. was c. have been d. have
3. One of my cousins .... a charity recently.
 a. have joined b. has joined c. had joined d. had been joining
4. Two of my friends .... this prize before.
 a. have won b. has won c. had won d. were winning
5. Your son .... to the school manager three times this month.
 a. has taken b. have taken c. has been taken d. have been taken
6. Rodayna .... her bed since she returned home this afternoon.
 a. hadn't left b. didn't leave c. hasn't been left d. hasn't left
7. Ahmed .... part in this competition twice before. The third will be next year.
 a. has taken b. had taken c. was taking d. has been taken
8. Sama .... lost her pen. That's why she isn't writing.
 a. had b. has c. was d. was being
9. Abdulrahman is very hungry. He .... eaten nothing since the morning.
 a. had b. hadn't c. has d. hasn't
10. Because I .... my leg, I can't take part in tomorrow's marathon.
 a. hadn't broken b. haven't broken c. had broken d. have broken

11. **A:** Tell me where your brother is. **B:** He .... shopping, dad.
a. was going b. had gone c. has gone d. has been

12. Hussein .... to the beach. His skin looks dark.
a. has gone b. has been c. had gone d. was going

13. Have you .... been to the zoo?
a. last b. for c. since d. ever

14. The goods .... yet.
a. have delivered b. haven't delivered
c. have been delivered d. haven't been delivered

15. I .... sent ten emails so far. I'll send ten more after the lunch break.
a. have b. haven't c. had d. have been

16. Have they arrived home .... ?
a. yet b. just c. never d. ever

17. This is the third time I .... the High Dam.
a. had ever visited b. had never visited
c. have ever visited d. have never visited

18. She .... such a kind man.
a. had never met b. has ever met c. had ever met d. has never met

19. **A:** Have you .... Benha since you were born ? **B:** Yes, I have always lived there.
a. been to b. been c. gone to d. gone

20. Rokaya .... out. She left seconds ago.
a. had just gone b. has just gone c. had just been d. has just been

21. I have started a new business .... I hope it is a success.
a. yet b. just c. since d. already

22. Has Mr Mohammed arrived ....? He must have driven extremely fast.
a. already b. yet c. since d. just

23. I haven't applied for the job .... I'm going to apply tomorrow.
a. since b. never c. yet d. just

24. He has drunk five coffees .... That's too bad for his health.
a. yet b. so far c. ever d. never

25. .... his birth, Ayman has always lived here.
a. When b. On c. For d. Since

26. I have made a lot of new friends since I .... this club.
a. join b. joined c. had joined d. am joining

27. He can't take part in the competition .... he has broken his leg.
a. since b. for c. so d. while

28. I miss you so much. I haven't seen you ....
a. since ages b. for ages c. ages ago d. last ages

29. I have known Mr Ashraf .... as long as I can remember.
a. because b. so c. since d. for

30. She .... here since her graduation three years ago.
a. has worked b. worked c. had worked d. would work
31. .... did you start to live here ?
a. How long b. For how long c. How long ago d. How long since
32. .... have you lived here ?
a. How long b. Since how long c. How long ago d. How long since
33. As soon as he .... home, he's going to shower.
a. arrived b. had arrived c. has arrived d. arrive
34. He's reached the deadline .... He's really fast.
a. yet b. already c. ever d. never
35. .... he had already eaten enough, he refused to eat anything else.
a. Before b. While c. So d. Since

2 Present perfect Continuous المضارع التام المستمر

١ تتكون جملة المضارع التام المستمر من:

- Subj. الفاعل + have/has + been + (inf.ing) … .

- I have been preparing for my wedding since last month.
- Omar has been working on the report for three hours.

٢ يُستخدَم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما يزال مستمرا حتى الان:

-We have been waiting for the train for more than an hour.
- Nada has been studying Arabic since 5 o'clock.

٣ يُستخدَم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ولا يزال يحدث بانتظام حتى الآن:

- I've been learning how to swim for the last few weeks.
- He's been running a lot recently.
- It has been raining heavily for the last three days.

٤ يُستخدَم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث في الماضي له أثر على الحاضر (جملة الأثر تكون مضارع):

- She is tired. She has been working all day.

إذا كانت جملة الأثر ماضى يكون الحدث المُسبب للأثر ماضى تام بسيط أو ماضى تام مستمر - قارن المثال التالى بالمثال السابق :

- She was tired. She had been working all day.

٥ مثل المضارع التام البسيط، يُمكن أن يُستخدم مع المضارع التام المستمر بعض الظروف مثل:

- since… /for… / for… now /recently / lately …

- They have been doing homework since 6 o'clock.
- I have been living here for more than twenty years.
- It has been raining for three days now.
- He has been working on a new invention recently.

٦ غالباً لا يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدة) ونستخدم المضارع التام البسيط بدلاً من ذلك:

- I have received an important email. (Not: have been receiving)

٧ يُستخدَم المضارع التام البسيط وليس المضارع التام المستمر عند الإشارة الي تكرار حدوث الفعل ـ التعبيرات التالية قبل المفعول تدل على تكرار حدوث الفعل:

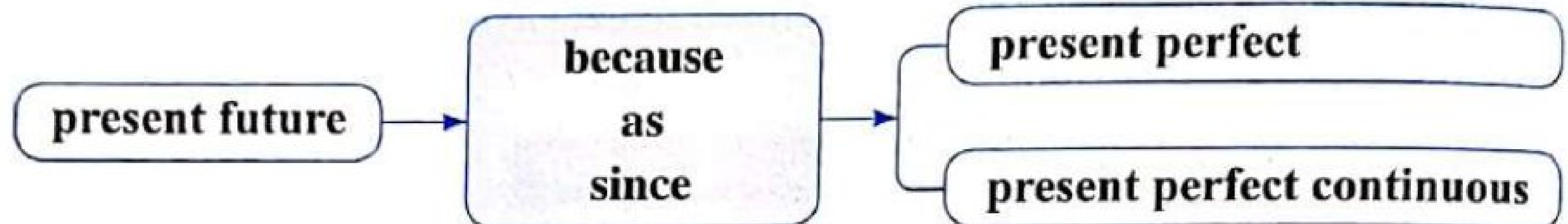
- two/three ... / many/a few/few/several/a lot of/lots of/all + مفعول جمع ...

- I have sent three emails. (Not: have been sending)
- My cousin has eaten all the apples in the kitchen. (Not: has been eating)

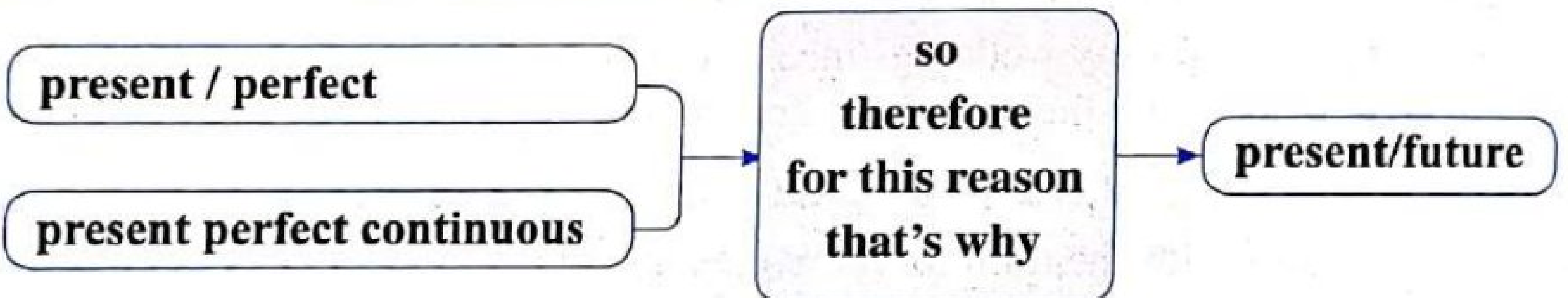
٨ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط وليس المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والتملك والإدراك .....):

- I have known him for five years now. (Not: have been knowing)

٩ لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام المستمر مع روابط السبب والنتيجة:



- He is sad because his father has been shouting at him.
- I feel very exhausted as I have been working all day without a break.



- His father has been shouting at him, so he is sad.
- I have been working all day without a break. That's why I feel very exhausted.

١٠ لاحظ أوجه التشابه في الاستخدام بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر:

أ- يمكن ان يُستخدَم كلا الزمنين للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ولا يزال مستمراً:

- I have lived here in Edfu since 1999. (✓)
- I have been living here in Edfu since 1999. (✓)

ب- يمكن ان يُستخدَم كلا الزمنين للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وانتهي منذ فترة قصيرة جداً:

- Omar has prepared his lunch and he is ready to eat. (✓)
- Omar has been preparing his lunch and he is ready to eat. (✓)

جـ- يمكن ان يُستخدَم كلا الزمنين للتعبير عن حدث في الماضي له أثر على الحاضر:

- I have worked for ten hours. I am very tired.
- I have been working for ten hours. I am very tired.

١١ لاحظ أوجه الاختلاف في الاستخدام بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر:

أ- يُركِّز المضارع التام البسيط على نتيجة الحدث أو الموقف:

- I have read a lot of books on farming.

في المثال السابق يريد المتحدث أن يؤكِّد على أنه لديه الكثير من المعلومات عن الزراعة (farming) كنتيجة لقراءته لكثير من الكتب عنها.

ب- يُركّز المضارع التام المستمر على الحَدَث نفسه، وغالباً يقوم الفاعل بالحَدَث طوال الوقت أو أنه يقوم به بشكل منظم لمدة معينة:

- Sarah has been taking Arabic lessons since she arrived in Cairo.

في المثال السابق يريد المتحدث أن يؤكّد أن الفاعل (Sarah) تقوم بشكل منتظم بدراسة اللغة العربية منذ وصولها للقاهرة وحتى لحظة الكلام.

Exercise On The Present Perfect continuous

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... all Al Pacino films.
   a. have been seeing b. have seen c. had seen d. a & b
2. I .... a film by Al Pacino.
   a. have been seeing b. have seen c. had seen d. a & b
3. I wonder how long it .... raining! The streets were flooded.
   a. has b. has been c. had been d. had
4. I wonder how long it .... raining! The streets are flooded.
   a. has b. has been c. had been d. had
5. She .... the guitar since 2012.
   a. plays b. was playing
   c. has been playing d. had been playing
6. She .... the guitar since 2012. She retired a month ago.
   a. plays b. was playing
   c. has been playing d. had been playing
7. Look! Someone......... down the glass windows of the shop.
   a. has broken b. have broken
   c. has been breaking d. had broken
8. I .... Mr Yaseen, my neighbour, for years.
   a. know b. 've been knowing c. 've known d. had known
9. I .... Mr Yaseen for years before we became neighbours in 2017.
   a. know b. 've been knowing c. 've known d. had known
10. I .... my boss several times this month. He still has tasks for me to do.
    a. have emailed b. was emailing
    c. have been emailing d. had emailed
11. I .... my boss several times last month.
    a. have emailed b. was emailing
    c. have been emailing d. emailed
12. .... has Areej been studying science?
    a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When
13. .... did Areej last study science?
    a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When

14. You......... the office for more than three hours. When will you finish?
   a. have been cleaned   b. have been cleaning
   c. had cleaned   d. cleaned
15. The mobile .... two times. I wish it'd stop.
   a. was ringing   b. has been ringing   c. has rung   d. had rung
16. I .... to London twice before.
   a. have been   b. had been   c. have been being   d. go
17. I .... to London twice before I went to Amsterdam.
   a. have been   b. had been   c. had been being   d. go
18. My aunt .... here in Aswan all her life. She is going to move to Cairo next year.
   a. lived   b. has been living   c. was living   d. had lived
19. I returned home at three. I .... the internet since.
   a. surfed   b. have been surfing   c. am surfed   d. have been surfe
20. I .... in this city twice before now.
   a. was   b. have been   c. have been being   d. had been
21. I .... in this city twice before I decided to live in it permanently.
   a. was   b. have been   c. have been being   d. had been
22. The road is like a river as it .... for two days.
   a. rained   b. has been raining   c. had been raining   d. has been raine
23. The road was like a river as it .... for two days.
   a. rained   b. has been raining
   c. had been raining   d. has been rained

Exercise On Narrative Tenses

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When he was a student, he .... went to school late.
   a. didn't   b. never   c. doesn't   d. hasn't
2. Sama .... at home when I visited her family, so I didn't see her.
   a. was   b. did be   c. didn't be   d. wasn't
3. I .... my breakfast before I left for school, so I felt very hungry there.
   a. had   b. hadn't   c. didn't have   d. b & c
4. .... an accident while driving home from work?
   a. Did she have   b. Had she   c. a & b   d. Does she have
5. He .... to prison because he had committed a crime. ارتكب جريمة
   a. sent   b. had sent   c. has sent   d. was sent
6. Something bad .... to her yesterday.
   a. happens   b. is happened   c. happened   d. was happened
7. Rodayna always .... with the housework when she didn't have much homework.
   a. helps   b. helped   c. has helped   d. is helped
8. He .... to smoking.
   a. used   b. was used   c. got used   d. b & c

9. He .... to smoke.
   a. used b. was used c. got used d. b & c
10. He didn't like the hot weather of Aswan at first, but he .... to it.
   a. got used b. became used c. a & b d. was used
11. .... having my lunch, I felt pain in my teeth.
   a. While b. When c. a & b d. During
12. .... my lunch, I felt pain in my teeth.
   a. While b. When c. On d. During
13. While .... on the bus, my mobile rang twice.
   a. was waiting b. I was waited c. waiting d. being waited
14. While .... to London, I enjoyed looking at the clouds from above.
   a. the flight b. the plane c. on the plane d. was flying
15. While I .... at school, I asked my teacher some important questions.
   a. was b. was being c. being d. b & c
16. I .... a small bike when I was young.
   a. have b. was having c. had d. had had
17. I ....a shower when you phoned, so I couldn't answer your call.
   a. have b. was having c. had d. had had
18. Mai .... to London a week ago.
   a. went b. was gone c. has gone d. had gone
19. Omar .... home by midnight yesterday.
   a. returns b. was returned c. has returned d. had returned
20. I missed the football match with my friends. When I arrived, everyone .... home already
   a. went b. had gone c. was gone d. has gone
21. .... I went home, I had bought a new charger for my tablet.
   a. After b. As soon as c. Before d. a & b
22. .... going home, I had bought a new charger for my tablet.
   a. After b. As soon as c. Before d. a & b
23. I went home .... I had bought a new charger for my tablet.
   a. after b. as soon as c. before d. a & b
24. I went home .... buying a new charger for my tablet.
   a. after b. as soon as c. until d. a & b
25. I didn't go home .... I had bought a new charger for my tablet.
   a. while b. on c. until d. a & c
26. I .... patiently until my friend finally called me.
   a. waited b. didn't wait c. had waited d. a & c
27. After .... my mobile to the charger, it showed the charging sign.
   a. attaching b. having attached
   c. having been attached d. I had attached
28. .... my mobile to the charger, I saw that it showed the charging sign.
   a. Attaching b. Having attached
   c. a & b d. I had attached

29. .... to the charger, my mobile showed the charging sign.
a. Attaching
b. Having attached
c. Having been attached
d. I had attached

30. After I arrived at school, I .... out that I had forgotten my tablet at home.
a. found
b. have found
c. was finding
d. had found

31. He had scarcely opened the door .... his mobile started to ring.
a. when
b. before
c. a & b
d. than

32. No sooner .... the door than his mobile started to ring.
a. he had opened
b. had he opened
c. did he open
d. b & c

33. Bassant watched a film. ...., she had studied unit 2.
a. While
b. During
c. Before that
d. After that

34. .... touching the hot pan, Menna gave a loud cry.
a. On
b. While
c. After
d. Before

35. I am in secondary school. I .... there since I was 15.
a. studied
b. had studied
c. study
d. have studied

36. I am in secondary school. I .... it nearly three years ago.
a. joined
b. had joined
c. join
d. have joined

37. I suffer from a severe حاد headache. I .... from it since I banged my head in a car accident.
a. suffer
b. suffered
c. have suffered
d. had suffered

38. I suffered from a severe headache. I .... from it since I banged my head in a car accident.
a. suffer
b. suffered
c. have suffered
d. had suffered

39. Have you written the essay.........? You must be a fast writer!
a. yet
b. already
c. so far
d. up till now

40. Since we moved here last year, we .... a lot of good friends.
a. knew
b. have known
c. have been knowing
d. had known

41. Hasnaa didn't go to school .... she had been very ill.
a. since
b. for
c. until
d. while

42. Welcome back, Omar! I think you .... to London.
a. were
b. had been
c. have gone
d. have been

Check your understanding

43. "Leen never set the table for lunch." This means Leen ....
a. doesn't set the table for lunch at all.
b. didn't set the table for lunch at all.
c. sometimes sets the table for lunch very often.
d. sometimes sets the table for lunch very often.

44. "I no longer go swimming." This means I ....
a. I got used to going swimming
b. I was never used to going swimming
c. I didn't go swimming at all
d. I used to go swimming.

45. Mai used to drink milk, but now she ....
a. is
b. isn't
c. does
d. doesn't

46. Mai was used to drinking milk, but now she ....
a. is
b. isn't
c. does
d. doesn't

47. "I'd rather you spoke in a low voice." This means the addressee المُخاطب .... in a loud voice.
a. spoke
b. didn't speak
c. speaks
d. doesn't speak

48. I'd rather you had spoken in a low voice." This means the addressee المُخاطب .... in a low voice.
a. spoke
b. didn't speak
c. speaks
d. doesn't speak

49. While tidying my bedroom, my mother found some money under the bed." Who was tidying the bed room?
a. The speaker.
b. The speaker's mother.
c. a & b
d. the servant

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	b.	- الفعل بعد النقط (went) تصريف ثان ، فلا يسبقه (don't / doesn't / hasn't)
2	d.	لا يمكن استخدام (was) لأنها تتعارض مع المعني (I didn't see her) كما لا يمكن نفي (be) باستخدام (didn't)
3	c.	لا يمكن استخدام (had) لأنها تتعارض مع المعني (I felt very hungry) كما لا يمكن استخدام (hadn't) للنفي عندما تكون فعل اساسي بهذا المعني
4	a.	لا يمكن أن يبدأ الاستفهام بـ (Had) عندما تكون فعل اساسي بهذا المعني، كما أن السؤال بـ(Does) غير صحيح هنا لأن سياق الجملة ماضي
5	d.	الفعل (send) فعل متعدي يأخذ مفعول، ولا يوجد مفعول بعد النقط لذلك الجملة مبنية للمجهول والمفعول في البداية (He)
6	c.	الإختيارين (b / d) لا يصلحان لأنهما في المبني للمجهول والفعل (happen) لا يُبني للمجهول لأنه فعل لازم (لا يأخذ مفعول)، كما أن الإختيار (happens) لا يصلح لإختلافه مع زمن الجملة.
7	b.	الإختيارات (a / c / d) لا يصلحوا لأنهم لا يتفقوا مع زمن الجملة (الماضي)
8	d.	لوجود (to + inf.+ ing) بعد النقط
9	a.	لوجود (to + inf.) بعد النقط
10	c.	لا يمكن استخدام (was used) لأنها تناقض معني الجزء الأول من الجملة، فالمتحدث لم يكن معتاداً علي الجو الحار بطبيعته بل تعود علي ذلك لاحقاً
11	a.	لأن (while) يمكن أن يتبعهما فعل مضاف له (ing) بينما (during) لابد أن يتبعها اسم أما (when) فيتبعها (inf.+ ing) فقط عند التعبير عن الأحداث المتكررة.
12	d.	لأن كل من (while – when) يمكن أن يتبعهما فعل مضاف له (ing) بينما (during) لابد أن يتبعها اسم.
13	b.	لأنه لا يمكن استخدام (inf.+ing) بعد الروابط إلا إذا كانت الفاعل في الجملتين واحد وهذا غير متحقق في هذا السؤال: While waiting for the bus, the phone rang twice. ماذا سيفهم قارئ الجملة؟ سيفهم أن فاعل الجملة الثانية (the phone) هو نفسه فاعل الجملة الأولي وأن التليفون هو من كان ينتظر الأتوبيس، فهل هذا منطقي؟!

14	c.	- لا يمكن استخدام (the flight – the plane) لأن (while) لا يتبعها اسم - لا يمكن استخدام (was flying) لعدم وجود فاعل
15	a.	- لا يمكن استخدام (was being) لأن الفعل (be) لا يُستخدم كفعل أساسي بهذا المعنى في الأزمنة المستمرة - لا يمكن استخدام (being) لوجود فاعل (I)
16	c.	- لا يمكن استخدام (have) لأن الجملة في الماضي - لا يمكن استخدام (was having) لأن الفعل (have) بمعني (يملك) لا يُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة - لا يمكن استخدام (had had) لأن ذلك يعني أنني امتلكت الدراجة قبل أن أكون صغيراً وهو أمر غير منطقي
17	b.	- لا يمكن استخدام (have) لأن الجملة في الماضي - لا يمكن استخدام (had – had had) لأن ذلك يعني أنني انتهيت من الاستحمام قبل أن أسمع رنين التليفون، وهو ما لا يتماشى مع معني الجملة - استخدام (was having) هنا صحيح لأن معناها (يأخذ) وليس (يمتلك)
18	a.	- لا يمكن اختيار (was gone) لأنها مبنية للمجهول والجملة مبنية للمعلوم - لا يمكن اختيار (has gone) لوجود (ago) وهي تدل على الماضي - لا يمكن اختيار (had gone) لأن الماضي التام لا يُستخدم مع حدث واحد في الماضي إلا إذا كان الحدث تم قبل وقت غير محدد
19	d.	- لا يمكن اختيار (was returned) لأنها مبنية للمجهول والجملة مبنية للمعلوم - لا يمكن اختيار (has returned) لوجود (ago) وهي تدل على الماضي - لا يمكن اختيار (returns) لأنها مضارع والجملة في الماضي
20	b.	- ليس دقيقاً اختيار الماضي البسيط (went) مع الحدث الأول في الماضي في حالة وجود ماضي تام - لا يمكن اختيار (was gone) لأنها مبنية للمجهول - لا يمكن اختيار (has gone) لأنها مضارع تام والجملة في الماضي
21	c.	لا يأتي الحدث الثاني بعد (after – as soon as)
22	c.	- لا يأتي بعد (as soon as) مصدر مضاف له (ing) - لا يمكن استخدام (after) لعدم الإخلال بترتيب الأحداث
23	d.	يأتي الحدث الأول في الماضي التام بعد (after – as soon as)
24	a.	- لا يأتي بعد (as soon as) مصدر مضاف له (ing) - لا يمكن استخدام (until) لأنها تجعل الجملة بلا معني مفيد
25	c.	- لا يأتي بعد (while) جملة ماضي تام - لا يأتي بعد (on) جملة
26	d.	- لا يمكن استخدام (didn't wait) لأنها تجعل الجملة بلا معني مفيد - يمكن استخدام كل من الماضي التام والماضي البسيط في هذا السياق
27	d.	- لا يمكن استخدام أي من الإختيارات الثلاثة الأخري لأن الجملة الثانية تبدأ بـ (it) التي تعود على التليفون، لأن في هذه الحالة سيكون التليفون هو من وصل نفسه بالشاحن وهو أمر غير منطقي
28	c.	- يمكن استخدام صيغة اسم الفاعل (attaching – having attached) كبديل لأداة الربط في المبني للمعلوم فقط - لا يمكن استخدام (I had attached) لأنه لا يوجد أداة ربط

29	c.	لأن الجملة مبنية للمجهول
30	a.	في الجملة ثلاث أحداث في الماضي ترتيبهم من حيث الحدوث كالتالي: ١. نسيت التابلت في البيت (had forgotten) - حدث أول ٢. وصلت إلى المدرسة (arrived) - حدث ثان ٣. اكتشفت نسيان التابلت (found) - حدث ثالث وعليه فلا يمكن وضع الحدث الثالث في الماضي التام، ولا يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر (was finding) لأن الاكتشاف حدث لحظي قصير لا يستمر، ولا يمكن استخدام المضارع التام لأن الجملة في الماضي
31	c.	يمكن استخدام (scarcely) مع (when / before)
32	d.	عندما تبدأ الجملة بالظرف (No sooner) يأتي بعدها الفاعل المساعد ثم الفاعل، ويمكن استخدام كل من الماضي التام (had he opened) والماضي البسيط (did he open) في سياق هذه الجملة.
33	c.	يأتي بعد (before that) الحدث الأولي (الماضي التام)
34	a.	تُستخدم (on) في حالة التعاقب السريع جداً للأحداث، فهي الإختيار الأدق لمعني الجملة
35	d.	نختار المضارع التام لأن الحدث لازال قائماً بدليل وجود (... I am in) وكذلك وجود كلمة (since)
36	a.	نختار الماضي البسيط بسبب وجود كلمة (ago)
37	c.	لأن الأثر في المضارع (... I suffer) فيكون السبب مضارع تام
38	d.	لأن الأثر في الماضي (... I suffered) فيكون السبب ماضي تام
39	b.	لأن سياق الجملة يوضح أن المتحدث لا يسأل، بل يتعجب من سرعة انتهاء الشخص المُخاطَب من المقال، وبالتالي لا تُستخدَم (yet)
40	b.	نختار المضارع التام بسبب وجود (... since we moved) ولا يمكن اختيار (have been knowing) لأن الفعل (know) من أفعال الإدراك التي لا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة
41	a.	الجملة التي بعد النقط سبب للجملة المذكورة قبل النقط، لذلك نختار (since) هنا كرابطة سبب بمعني (because)
42	d.	يتضح من عبارة (welcome back) أن الشخص قد عاد
43	b.	لأن الجملة الأصلية ماضي- لاحظ أن الفعل (set) لا يتغير عند تصريفه ولا يوجد به (s)، أما الإختيار (d) فلا يصلح برغم أنه ماضي وذلك لوجود (very often)
44	d.	لأنها تدل على عادة ماضي لم تعد موجودة الآن
45	d.	لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولي هو (drink) فيتم نفيه في هذا السياق بـ (doesn't)
46	b.	لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولي هو (was) فيتم نفيه في هذا السياق بـ (isn't)
47	c.	استخدام الماضي البسيط بعد (would rather) يدل على شيء غير متحقق في المضارع، أي أن المخاطب يتحدث بصوت مرتفع
48	b.	استخدام الماضي التام بعد (would rather) يدل على شيء لم يكن متحقق في الماضي، أي أن المخاطب لم يكن يتحدث بصوت منخفض
49	b.	لأن عدم وجود فاعل بعد (while) يعني أن فاعل الجملة الثانية (my mother) هو فاعل الجملة الأولي أيضاً

2 Future Forms

ذا القسم :

مبسط وشامل لصيغ المستقبل بالكامل (بما في ذلك الصيغ التراكمية)

ات عامة تخاطب جميع مستويات التفكير علي جميع صيغ المستقبل

1 Future Forms صيغ التعبير عن المستقبل

Will + inf.

عبر عن تنبؤ دون دليل و خاصة بعد تعبيرات مثل :

(I think / I expect / I'm afraid / I'm sure / probably.....)

- I'll probably be away for a week.

تُعبر عن حقائق مستقبلية :

- I'll be 16 next week.

تستخدم فى حالات (القرار السريع – الطلب – الوعد – التحذير – عرض خدمة) :

- The phone is ringing. I'll answer it. ر سريع)
- I'll go shopping with you if you like. ض خدمة)
- When you pass your exams, I'll buy you a car. د)

am / is / are + going to + inf.

تستخدم فى حالات (الخطط الشخصية والنوايا (**plans / intentions**) والقرار المسبق – التحذير من شئ على وشك الحدوث) :

- My sister is going to apply for a place at medical school. That's her plan.
- They are going to have lunch outdoors. They have decided.
- Watch out! The baby is going to fall.

تُعبر عن تنبؤ بدليل (عندما يوجد بالمضارع ما يجعل من الممكن حدوث شئ ما فى المستقبل) :

- Marwan is badly injured. He isn't going to play tomorrow's match.

لاحظ ان الصفات الشخصية غالبًا لا تعد دليلا لذلك يستخدم معها (will + inf.)

- Shrouk will pass her exams. She's a clever student.

لكن الصفات الوقتية تُعد دليلا و يُفضل أن يُستخدم معها (be going to)

- Mohammed looks exhausted. I think he is going to sleep in his chair.

am / is / are + (inf. + ing)

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المسبقة ، ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / made arrangements / prepared / made preparations
- Tomorrow, we're visiting our friends as arranged.

يستخدم المضارع المستمر فى حالات (اتخاذ خطوة لعمل شئ – المناسبات الاجتماعية وما تقوم به المؤسسات) :

- Esraa has booked two train tickets to Alexandria. She is leaving Aswan at 9 a.m.
- Rodayna is giving her birthday party on 8th March.

Present simple / Present Perfect

inf. / inf. + s / es / ies

① يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن جداول المواعيد :

- The course starts in October.

② يستخدم المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية مثل :

after / as soon as / when / the moment ... etc.

رابطة زمنية + مضارع تام / مضارع بسيط + جملة أمر / مستقبل ←

- After I arrive (have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.
- Before we leave (have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.
- We will wait for the manager until he finishes (has finished) his meetings.

Future continuous

(will be + inf. + ing)

① يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا فى وقت معين فى المستقبل :

- This time tomorrow, Mr Mohammed will be flying to London.

② يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا فى المستقبل عندما سيقع حدث آخر :

- When you arrive home, I'll be cooking the meal.

③ يمكن استخدام **(may)** بدلًا من **(will)** للتعبير عن عدم التأكد :

- Tomorrow evening, I may be walking by the Nile. I'm not sure.

④ يمكن إستخدام المستقبل المستمر والمضارع المستمر لتبرير عدم القدرة على القيام بشئ ما فى المستقبل :

- I can't call you at ten because I will be taking on exam.

⑤ تستخدم صيغة الإستفهام من المستقبل المستمر لطلب شئ بشكل مهذب :

- Will you be using your calculator tomorrow ?
= I want to borrow your calculator tomorrow.

2 Future Perfect (Active & Passive) المستقبل التام (المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول)

مبنى للمعلوم **Active**	مبنى للمجهول **Passive**
Subj. + will / shall + have + P.P. ...	**Obj. + will / shall + have + been + P.P. ...**
- She will have answered the test by eleven o'clock.	- The test will have been answered (by her) by eleven o'clock.

* يستخدم المستقبل التام للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين فى المستقبل ، وعادة ما يُستخدم معه تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحرف الجر **(by / before)** :

- My father will have arrived home by five o'clock.
- By 2050, most of the old buildings will have been replaced by modern offices.

General Exercise On Future Forms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. According to the timetable, the night show .... at twelve.
   a. will be starting b. will start c. is starting d. starts
2. This bridge .... twenty years old next month.
   a. is being b. is going to be c. will be d. will be being
3. Rodayna intends to join a sports club. She .... tomorrow.
   a. applies b. will apply c. applying d. is going to appl
4. By October next year, I .... university.
   a. will join b. will be joined c. will have joined d. join
5. My train leaves Aswan at ten. At twelve, I .... to Cairo.
   a. will travel b. will have travelled
   c. will be travelling d. am going to travel
6. I .... my birthday at home next Friday as arranged.
   a. am giving b. will give c. going to give d. will have giver
7. The plane .... off at 6 :00. The boarding starts an hour earlier.
   a. will take b. is going to take c. takes d. is taking
8. I expect the weather .... cold tomorrow.
   a. will be b. will have been c. is being d. is going to be
9. Ahmed plans to live in Cairo permanently. He .... a flat there.
   a. will buy b. will be buying c. is going to buy d. will have bough
10. Someone is calling. I .... see who is on the phone.
    a. am seeing b. will see c. am going to see d. will be seeing
11. I can't attend your sister's wedding as I .... my exams in Alexandria.
    a. will be taking b. will have taken c. going to take d. taking
12. Everything is prepared. The team .... to the airport at nine o'clock tomorrow morning
    a. will be left b. will leave c. are going to leave d. are leaving
13. The evening news .... at nine on Channel one.
    a. will be b. is c. is going to be d. will be
14. My father .... home from work before lunchtime.
    a. will have returned b. will be returned c. going to return d. is being returned
15. Sama .... the conference. That's her intention.
    a. is being attended b. going to attend c. is going to attend d. will attend
16. You look very thirsty. I .... you a cold drink.
    a. will have got b. am going to get c. am getting d. will get
17. When I have a good job, I .... a large villa with a swimming pool.
    a. am having b. will have c. will be having d. going to have
18. I've made the final arrangements. The tourist group .... their tour tomorrow morning.
    a. will make b. are making c. going to make d. will be made

19. When the bus ...., I'll be waiting for you.
a. has arrived b. have arrived c. arrive d. will arrive

20. Mohammed has made up his mind. He .... to a larger flat.
a. will have moved b. will move c. is moving d. is going to move

21. Don't worry. Everything .... ready before the guests have arrived.
a. was b. had been c. is being d. will have been

22. I never break a promise. I .... with your problems.
a. will have helped b. am going to help c. am helping d. will help

23. .... your laptop tomorrow morning? I need it badly.
a. You will use b. Will you use c. You are using d. Will you be using

24. Our school .... a journey to Aswan next Saturday.
a. is making b. is going to make c. will make d. will be made

25. I'm going to return your money before you .... for it.
a. had asked b. asked c. have asked d. were asking

26. My daughter is engaged مخطوبة. She .... married.
a. is getting b. is going to get c. will get d. will be getting

27. He .... tomorrow's game. He is very clever.
a. is probably winning b. will probably win
c. is probably going to win d. will probably be won

28. Your car .... by nine. You can come to take it by then.
a. will have serviced b. will have been serviced
c. will be serviced d. will service

29. When you return home tomorrow, I .... your aunt. You will find your food on the table.
a. will be visiting b. will visit c. will have visited d. will be visited

30. My elder sister .... married next Thursday. The wedding is in the Nile Hilton.
a. will get b. will have got c. is getting d. is going to get

31. I .... home until I have done the shopping.
a. will go b. won't go c. didn't go d. went

32. The sun is very strong this morning. I think it .... another hot day.
a. is going to be b. is being c. will have been d. will be being

33. Follow the company rules or you ....
a. will have been fired b. will fire c. will be fired d. are being fired

34. Look out! You .... into a large hole.
a. are going to step b. will have stepped c. will be stepping d. will step

35. I .... for my exams from 6 to 11 tomorrow.
a. will be revised b. will have revised c. will be revising d. revising

36. I can't visit you tomorrow as I .... for my exams.
a. will prepare b. will have prepared c. going to prepare d. am preparing

37. As soon as the meeting ...., I'll call you.
a. ends b. had ended c. ended d. will end

57. Look out! you .... into the car in front of us.
   a. are going to crash b. are crashing c. will crash d. are being crashed
58. At midnight, I .... Don't expect me to wake up to open the door for you.
   a. will be sleeping b. have slept c. will have been slept d. will sleep
59. Rokaya is very intelligent. I think she .... the full mark.
   a. will have got b. is getting c. is going to get d. will get
60. I .... the new manager at nine tomorrow. I've had an appointment.
   a. am meeting b. am going to meet c. will meet d. will have met

3 Passive Forms & Causative Verbs

في هذا القسم :

- شرح مبسط وشامل لصيغ المبني للمجهول (بما في ذلك الصيغ التراكمية) + تدريبات خاصة بكل مجموعة
- شرح مبسط وشامل لـ (Causative Verbs) + تدريبات خاصة تقييس جميع المستويات.
- تدريبات عامة تخاطب جميع مستويات التفكير علي صيغ المبني للمجهول والأفعال السببية مصحوبة بالإجابة والتوضيح.

Passive forms : present, future and infinitive

Tense	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
	Subj. + التصريف الأول + فاعل	**Obj. مفعول + am / is / are + p.p.**
present simple المضارع البسيط	- People speak English all over the world. - People don't speak English all over the world. - Do people speak English all over the world? - What language do people speak all over the world?	- English is spoken all over the world. - English isn't spoken all over the world. - Is English spoken all over the world? - What language is spoken all over the world ?
	Subj. + am / is /are + inf.+ ing	**Obj. + am / is /are + being + p.p**
present continuous المضارع المستمر	- She is watering the flowers. - She isn't watering the flowers. - Is she watering the flowers? - What is she watering?	- The flowers are being watered. - The flowers aren't being watered. - Are the flowers being watered? - What are being watered?
	Subj. + will / would / can / could / shall / should / may / might / must + inf	**Obj. + will / would / can / could / shall / should / may / might / must + be + p.p.**
simple modals الأفعال الناقصة البسيطة	- He will buy some fruit. - I can't drive a car. - You must pay a fine. - We should help them.	- Some fruit will be bought (by him). - A car can't be driven (by me). - A fine must be paid (by you). - They should be helped (by us).

Perfect Modals الأفعال الناقصة التامة	**Subj. + will / would / can / could / shall / should / may / might / must + have + p.p.** - He must have taken the keys by mistake. - You shouldn't have broken the law. - She might have forgotten the shopping bag in the taxi.	**Obj. + will / would / can / could / shall / should / may / might / must + have + been+ p.p.** - The keys must have been taken (by him) by mistake. - The law shouldn't have been broken - The shopping bag might have been forgotten in the taxi.
Semi – modals الأفعال شبه الناقصة	**- Subj. + need to / needn't, dare (to), daren't, used to, ought to, have to, has to, had to, will have to, have got to, has got to + inf.** - Sama had to cook some food. - I have got to fix this door. - You needn't pay the bill now.	**- Obj. + need to / needn't, dare (to), daren't, used to, ought to, have to, has to, had to, will have to, have got to, has got to + be + p.p.** - Some food had to be cooked (by Sama - This door has got to be fixed (by me) - The bill needn't to be paid now.
Other semi – modals تراكيب شبه ناقصة أخرى	**Subj. + be able to, be allowed to, be about to, be bound to, be going to, be likely to, be obliged to, be supposed to + inf.** - Rokaya is going to buy a tablet. - He is supposed to fix the machine. - Omar isn't allowed to drive this lorry.	**- Obj. + be able to, be allowed to, be about to, be bound to, be going to, be likely to, be obliged to, be supposed to + be + p.p..** - A tablet is going to be bought (by Rokaya) - The machine is supposed to be fixed. - This lorry isn't allowed to be driven by Omar.
to + inf	**... verb + to + inf..** - I want you to repair the car. - I expect Ahmed to win the race. - I'd like Mariam to eat healthy food.	**... verb + to + be + p.p. ...** - I want the car to be repaired (by you). - The race is expected to be won (by Ahmed). - I'd like healthy food to be eaten (by Mariam).
v + inf. + ing	**..... verb + (inf. + ing) ...** - Leila didn't see mum cooking lunch. - She avoids meeting strangers.	**... verb + being + p.p. ...** - Leila didn't see lunch being cooked (by mum). - She avoids being met (by strangers).

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

❶ الفعل اللازم (الذي ليس له مفعول) لا يمكن تحويله للمبني للمجهول، ومن أمثلة الأفعال اللازمة :

happen / occur يحدث – go – live – rise – fall - sit –stand – stay - sleep – look يبدو – laugh – smile ... etc.

- A bad accident occurred in the main street. (✓)
- A bad accident was occurred in the main street. (✗)

② هناك أفعال مثل الأفعال الموجودة في الجدول التالي تكون لازمة بمعني ومُتعدية بمعني آخر (وهي تُبني للمجهول فقط إذا كانت مُتعدية):

Transitive مُتعدّى (يُبنى للمجهول)		Intransitive لازم (لايُبنى للمجهول)	
break	يكسِّر	break	ينكسر
continue	يُكمِل	continue	يستمر
drown	يَغرق	drown	يُغرِق
grow	يزرع	grow	ينمو
improve	يُحسِّن	improve	يتحسن
leave	يترك	leave	يغادر
open	يفتح	open	ينفتح
return	يُعيد	return	يعود
run	يُدير / يُشغِّل	run	يجري
stop	يُوقِف - يمنع	stop	يتوقف
take off	يخلع (ملابس)	take off	تُقلع (الطائرة)

We will continue the meeting after the break. (مُتعدّي معلوم)
The meeting will be continued after the break. (مُتعدّي مجهول)
The meeting will continue after the break. (لازم)
I grew an apple tree in the garden. (مُتعدّي معلوم)
An apple was grown in the garden. (مُتعدّي مجهول)
The apples grew tall. (لازم)

③ الفعـل (have) لا يبنى للمجهـول ويحـول إلى ما يساويـه فى المعنـى مثل :

ave = own, possess, suffer, eat, buy, spend, take ......

Meals are had in the dining room. (✗)
Meals are eaten in the dining room. (✓)

④ لاحظ الفعل المتعدي لمفعولين :

He sends me emails. (معلوم)
Emails are sent to me (by him). (مجهول)
am sent emails (by him). (مجهول)

⑤ هناك أفعال مُتعدية (تأخذ المفعول) ولكنها لا تستخدم في المبني للمجهول مثل :

ecome - suit يُناسِب - fit يُلائم - resemble يُشبه -
k like يُشبه - lack ينقصه - equal يُساوي / يُعادل ...

He has become an engineer. (✓)
n engineer has been become by him. (✗)
his jacket doesn't fit Amr. (✓)
mr isn't fitted by this jacket. (✗)

لاحظ أفعال الإدراك التالية وطريقة بنائها للمجهول :

Subj. + see, watch, notice, hear, feel + obj. + inf. / (inf. + ing) (معلوم)

- I see him cross the street every day. (...دث بالكامل)
- I see him crossing the street every day. (... من الحدث)

obj. +be + seen, watched, noticed, heard, felt + (to+ inf.) / (inf. + ing) (مجهول)

- He is seen to cross (crossing) the street every day.

يمكن استخدام (**get**) بدلا من (**be**) مع بعض الأفعال مثل :

- get arrested = get caught يُقبض عليه **- get killed - get married - get divorced** تُطلق

- She was divorced yesterday.

= She got divorced yesterday.

غالبا يتحول الفعل (**let**) مع مراعاة الزمن للمجهول باستخدام (مصدر + **to be allowed**) :

- The head teacher let me join the school team. (معلوم)
- I was allowed to join the school team. (مجهول)

لكن عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه الفاعل مع (**let**) يتم البناء للمجهول كالتالي:

- He let her trick him. (معلوم)
- He let himself be cheated by her. (مجهول)

لا تُبنَى الأزمنة التامة المستمرة للمجهول، ويتم استخدام أقرب زمن بسيط:

- Ola has been writing an essay. (معلوم - مضارع تام مستمر)
- An essay has been written by Ola. (مجهول - مضارع تام بسيط)
- I had been doing the shopping. (معلوم - ماضي تام مستمر)
- The shopping had been done by me. (مجهول - ماضي تام بسيط)

لاحظ الصيغ التالية في المعلوم والمجهول مع بعض الأفعال:

- ... like/love/hate/remember + شخص + (inf. + ing) + مفعول ... (معلوم)

- ... like / love / hate / remember + being + p.p. + ... (مجهول)

- Mum loves us telling her the truth. (معلوم)
- Mum loves being told the truth by us. (مجهول)
- We remember Ali taking us to the zoo. (معلوم)
- We remember being taken to the zoo by Ali. (مجهول)

لاحظ جملة المبني للمجهول إذا كان الفاعل في المبني للمعلوم يؤدي معني النفي مثل:

- nobody - no one - none - nothing - neither ...

- Nobody saw the thief. (معلوم)
- The thief wasn't seen by anybody. (مجهول)

= The thief was seen by nobody. (مجهول)

- Neither of us plays the guitar. (معلوم)
- The guitar isn't played by either of us. (مجهول)

= The guitar is played by neither of us. (مجهول)

⑫ لاحظ كيفية بناء الفعل (need to + inf.) للمجهول:

.... + need / needs / needed + to + inf. ... (معلوم)
.... + need / needs / needed + to be + p.p. ... (مجهول)
.... + need / needs / needed + (inf. + ing) ... (مجهول)

- I need to wash the dishes. (معلوم)
- The dishes need to be washed. (مجهول)
= The dishes need washing. (مجهول)

⑬ هناك أفعال مثل (sell/read ...) تعطي معني المبني للمجهول في المبني للمعلوم، ونفس الأمر ينطبق على أفعال مثل (want - require...) عندما يُستخدَم بعدهم (inf. + ing) :

- Raincoats sell badly in dry countries. معاطف المطر يُباع منها القليل في البلدان الجافة.
- The sign on the wall reads, "No Smoking." "اللافتة الموجودة على الجدار تقول "ممنوع التدخين
- Milk requires boiling well. (= It should be boiled well.)
- The trees want watering. (They need to be watered.)

⑭ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (make) بمعني (يجعل / يُجبر) في المعلوم والمجهول:

- subj. + make / makes / made + obj. مفعول **+ inf. ...** (معلوم)
- Obj. + be + made + to + inf. ... (مجهول)

- My mother made Rahma do the shopping. (معلوم)
- Rahma was made to do the shopping. (مجهول)

⑮ لاحظ أن الصيغتين التاليتين في المعلوم والمجهول يؤديان نفس المعني:

- There + be + obj. المفعول **+ ... to + inf. ...** (معلوم)
- There + be + obj. المفعول **+ ... to be + p.p. ...** (مجهول)

- There is some food to eat.
= There is some food to be eaten.

⑯ لاحظ أن المفعول يمكن أن يكون عبارة وصل تبدأ بإحدى الكلمات التالية:

- what - when - how - why - how much - how many– how long ...

- We don't know what has happened to the patient. (معلوم)
= What has happened to the patient isn't known. (مجهول)

⑰ لاحظ بناء جملة فعلها (blame) بمعني (يلوم) في المبني للمجهول:

- We blamed the goalkeeper for the third goal. (معلوم)
= The goalkeeper was blamed for the third goal. (مجهول)
= The goalkeeper was to blame for the third goal. (مجهول)

Exercise On Passive Forms (1)

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Every day, my son .... to school in his uncle's car.
   a. takes b. is taking c. took d. is taken
2. Call your brother from his room as the table .... for lunch.
   a. sets b. is setting c. is being set d. will set

3. According to my uncle's promise, I .... a new tablet as my birthday present.
a. will buy b. will be bought c. am buying d. buy
4. The child .... after by his father during his mother's absence.
a. is going to look b. is going to be looked
c. being looked d. are looked
5. .... enough money for your work?
a. Are you given b. Do you give
c. you are given d. You are being given
6. What .... at home now?
a. is happened b. will be happened c. is happening d. is being happened
7. When is Rodayna going to .... for her great efforts?
a. honour b. be honoured c. be honouring d. honoured
8. While ...., the baby was fed.
a. is washing b. being washed c. was washing d. washed
9. The shop .... at nine every morning.
a. opens b. is opening c. be opened d. being opened
10. Follow the rules or you .... a fine.
a. will be paid b. are paid c. are being paid d. will pay
11. Before leaving for school, I .... my pocket money.
a. give b. am given c. am being giving d. used to give
12. Did you use to .... for your mistakes when you were young?
a. punish b. be punished c. punishing d. be punishing
13. The animals on the farm .... and looked after by experienced workers.
a. are fed b. are feeding c. fed d. feed
14. When a glass .... to the ground, it breaks into small pieces.
a. is fallen b. is being fallen c. is falling d. falls
15. .... any of you educated in an international school?
a. Is b. Does c. Will d. Should
16. While .... , the dog moves its tail.
a. is eating b. is eaten c. eating d. being eaten
17. As soon as my mother prepares our meals, we .... to have it together.
a. are calling b. are called c. called d. call
18. Do you want me .... after the plants in the balcony?
a. look b. to look c. looking d. to be looked
19. Do you want the plants in the balcony .... after?
a. look b. to look c. looking d. to be looked
20. Must you .... a car on the left in England?
a. drive b. to drive c. be driven d. to be driven
21. Must a car .... on the left in England?
a. drive b. to drive c. be driven d. to be driven

22. We all avoid .... bad people.
a. to meet b. meeting c. to meeting d. being met
23. We all avoid .... by bad people.
a. to meet b. meeting c. to meeting d. being met
24. On .... , the horse suddenly moved.
a. is examining b. is being examined c. examining d. being examined
25. This type of plant .... very tall. That's a fact.
a. grows b. is grown c. is growing d. is being grown
26. At the moment, the students .... physics in the lab.
a. teach b. are teaching c. are being taught d. taught
27. Plants .... in fertile soil give good yield. محصول
a. grow b. are growing c. are grown d. grown
28. Are the patients in this hospital .... regularly?
a. examine b. examined c. examining d. be examined
29. Babies .... on milk.
a. feeds b. feeding c. are fed d. be fed
30. **A:** Where .... ? **B:** To the club.
a. are you going b. you are going c. are you gone d. you are gone
31. Did you see Ahmed .... to school this morning?
a. take b. taking c. being taken d. is taken
32. While .... by a doctor, most babies cry.
a. examining b. being examined c. are examined d. examine
33. While .... babies, most of them cry.
a. examining b. being examined c. are examined d. examine
34. What time .... your lunch?
a. you have b. you are had c. do you have d. are you had
35. What time .... ?
a. does your lunch have b. is your lunch had
c. does your lunch eat d. is your lunch eaten
36. Can an earthquake .... ?
a. predict b. be predicted c. predicts d. is predicted
37. Can scientists .... earthquakes?
a. predict b. be predicted c. predicts d. is predicted
38. My mother .... some sandwiches for me every morning.
a. make b. is being made c. makes d. is made
39. I .... some sandwiches by my mother every morning.
a. makes b. being made c. am being made d. am made
40. Some sandwiches .... for me every morning.
a. make b. are made c. are making d. makes

41. This thief was seen .... my uncle's car.
a. steals
b. stealing
c. to stealing
d. stolen

42. The criminal .... while trying to escape from the police.
a. arrested
b. were arrested
c. got arrested
d. was arresting

43. Please, don't let your children .... on the grass.
a. walk
b. walks
c. are walking
d. being walked

44. The food has been prepared and is now ....
a. serving
b. being served
c. been served
d. be serving

45. The book .... and then returned to the library.
a. reads
b. read
c. is read
d. is reading

46. The plants in this field are looked after by ....
a. they
b. my
c. she
d. him

Past passive and present perfect passive forms

Tense	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Past simple الماضي البسيط	**Subj. + فاعل + التصريف الثانى ...** - Leen ate chicken for lunch. - Leen didn't eat chicken for lunch. - Did Leen eat chicken for lunch? - What did Leen eat for lunch?	**Obj. + مفعول + was / were + p.p. ...** - Chicken was eaten for lunch (by Leen). - Chicken wasn't eaten for lunch (by Leen). - Was chicken eaten for lunch (by Leen)? - What was eaten for lunch (by Leen)?
Past continuous الماضي المستمر	**Subj. + was / were + (inf.+ ing) ...** - He was studying Arabic all evening yesterday. - He wasn't studying Arabic all evening yesterday. - Was he studying Arabic all evening yesterday? - What was he studying all evening yesterday?	**Obj. + was / were + being + p.p. ...** - Arabic was being studied all evening yesterday by him. - Arabic wasn't being studied all evening yesterday by him. - Was Arabic being studied all evening yesterday by him? - What was being studied all evening yesterday by him?
Present Perfect المضارع التام	**Subj. + have / has + p.p. ...** - Ahmed has done homework. - Ahmed hasn't done homework. - Has Ahmed done homework? - What has Ahmed done?	**Obj. + have / has + been + p.p. ...** - Homework has been done (by Ahmed). - Homework hasn't been done (by Ahmed). - Has homework been done (by Ahmed)? - What has been done (by Ahmed)?

Past Perfect الماضي التام	Subj. + had + p.p. ...	Obj. + had + been + p.p. ...
	- Sama had cooked lunch before one. - Sama hadn't cooked lunch before one. - Had Sama cooked lunch before one? - What had Sama done before one?	- Lunch had been cooked (by Sama) before one. - Lunch hadn't been cooked (by Sama) before one. - Had lunch been cooked (by Sama) before one? - What had been done (by Sama) before one?

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

❶ يتحول ضمير المفعول إلي ضمير فاعل عندما يوضع في بداية جملة المبني للمجهول :

Subj. pron. ضمائر الفاعل

I – we - you– he – she - it - they

Obj. pron. ضمائر المفعول

me – us – you – him – her – it - them

- Mum encourages us. (معلوم)
- We are encouraged by mum. (مجهول)

❷ نستخدم ضمير مفعول بعد (**by**) في جملة المبني للمجهول: :

- He has bought a tablet. (معلوم)
- A tablet has been bought by him. (مجهول)

❸ لاحظ مايلي :

- Obj. مفعول + who / which / that + فعل مبني للمجهول ...
= obj. مفعول + p.p. ....

- The secretary who was employed last year works hard.
- The secretary employed last year works hard.

- ... who / which / that + فعل مبني للمعلوم ...
= ... inf. + ing ....

- The secretary who receives my calls is honest.
= The secretary receiving my calls is honest.

- After + جمل مبنية للمجهول = Having been + p.p. .... = P.P. + ...

- After lunch had been prepared by my mother, it was served to our guests.
= Having been prepared by my mother, lunch was served to our guests.
= Prepared by my mother, lunch was served to our guests.

Passive Structures: Impersonal Passives التراكيب المبنية للمجهول

احظ التراكيب التالية مع أفعال القول والاعتقاد في المبني للمعلوم:

- subj. فاعل + (think - believe - say - report - know - consider - guess يُخمِّن - suppose - expect - allege / claim يدعي - hope...) + (that) + جملة رئيسية

- People believe (that) he will achieve a lot of success.
- They say (that) Ahmed waters the plants regularly.
- She claims (that) he is doing a project.
- Everyone knows (that) he stole the car.
- They supposed (that) he had been facing a problem.

ويتم بناء هذه الصيغة للمجهول بطرق مختلفة منها:

❶ البداية بـ (it + be + p.p. ...) :

- It is believed (that) he will achieve a lot of success.
- It is said (that) Ahmed waters the plants regularly.
- It is claimed (that) she is doing a project.
- It is known (that) he stole the car.
- It was supposed (that) he had been facing a problem.

❷ البداية بالفاعل الرئيسي كالتالي:

Subj. فاعل الجملة الرئيسية + be + p.p. +
- **to + inf. ...** (مضارع / مستقبل)
- **to + be + (inf. + ing) ...** (زمن مستمر)
- **to + have + p.p. ...** (زمن تام)

- He is believed to achieve a lot of success.
- Ahmed is said to water the plants regularly.
- She is claimed to be doing a project.
- He is known to have stolen a car.
- He was supposed to have been facing a problem.

❸ البداية بالمفعول الرئيسي:

Obj. مفعول الجملة الرئيسية + be + p.p. +
- **to + be + p.p. ...** (مضارع / مستقبل)
- **to + have been + p.p. ...** (زمن تام)

- A lot of success is believed to be achieved (by him).
- The plants are said to be watered regularly (by Ahmed).
- A project is claimed to be done (by her).
- The car is known to have been stolen (by him).
- A problem was supposed to have been faced (by him).

Exercise On Passive Forms (2)

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... a cheese sandwich for breakfast this morning.
   a. ate b. was eaten c. has eaten d. have been eaten
2. A cheese sandwich .... for breakfast this morning.
   a. ate b. was eaten c. has eaten d. have been eaten
3. At seven yesterday evening, Sama .... the shopping.
   a. was being gone b. was going c. was being done d. was doing
4. At seven yesterday evening, the shopping .... by Sama.
   a. was being gone b. was going c. was being done d. was doing
5. Most of the books of this writer .... bestsellers.
   a. was been b. has been c. have been d. are been
6. The plants in our garden ....
   a. have watered b. have been watered c. has watered d. has been watered
7. The gardeners .... the plants in our garden.
   a. have watered b. have been watered c. has watered d. has been watered
8. Before leaving his room, he .... away everything.
   a. have tidied b. have been tidied c. had tidied d. had been tidied
9. He didn't leave the room until everything .... away.
   a. have tidied b. have been tidied c. had tidied d. had been tidied
10. .... your teeth checked yesterday?
    a. Did b. Was c. Are d. Were
11. .... your teeth yesterday?
    a. Did the dentist check b. Was the dentist checked
    c. Are the dentist checked d. Were the dentist checked
12. .... the baby when I phoned?
    a. You were feeding b. Were you feeding
    c. Were you being fed d. Have you fed
13. .... when I phoned?
    a. The baby was feeding b. Is the baby feeding
    c. Was the baby being fed d. Has the baby fed
14. .... the final exam yet?
    a. She has passed b. She has been passed
    c. Has she been passed d. Has she passed
15. Has the final exam .... by her yet?
    a. pass b. passed c. been passed d. being passed
16. Had the oil in your car .... before you set off for Alexandria?
    a. been checked b. checked
    c. being checked d. be checked

17. .... the oil in your car before you set off for Alexandria?
a. Had you been checked
b. Had you checked
c. You had checked
d. You had been checked

18. The boys went to bed after their homework ....
a. has done
b. has been done
c. had done
d. had been done

19. The boys went to bed after they .... homework.
a. have done
b. have been done
c. had done
d. had been done

20. While .... in the clinic, my baby was crying.
a. examining
b. being examined
c. was examining
d. was being examined

21. While .... my baby in the clinic, the doctor was patient صبور.
a. examining
b. being examined
c. was examining
d. was being examined

22. Before .... my car, it had been serviced.
a. washing
b. being washed
c. washed
d. had washed

23. Before ...., my car had been serviced.
a. washing
b. being washed
c. washed
d. had washed

24. As soon as the email ...., we received a reply.
a. has sent
b. has been sent
c. had sent
d. had been sent

25. As soon as we .... the email, we received a reply.
a. have sent
b. have been sent
c. had sent
d. had been sent

26. The patient .... to hospital in an ambulance.
a. took
b. has taken
c. was taking
d. was taken

27. Some young men .... for the new job at that moment.
a. are being interviewed
b. were being interviewed
c. were interviewing
d. interviewed

28. Some of the young men .... for the new job didn't have the needed qualification.
a. interviewed
b. were interviewed
c. were being interviewed
d. be interviewed

29. Some food .... and eaten for lunch.
a. cooked
b. was cooking
c. was cooked
d. have been cooked

30. The children .... how to answer some questions when the lights went out.
a. taught
b. have taught
c. were teaching
d. were being taught

31. While we were away on holiday, our flat walls .... and repainted.
a. have been repaired
b. were repairing
c. were repaired
d. repaired

32. She .... chicken for lunch.
a. ate
b. was eaten
c. has been eaten
d. was being eaten

33. The floor .... before returning the chairs to their place.
a. swept b. have been swept c. were sweeping d. had been swep
34. I .... a shower when you phoned. That's why I didn't answer your call.
a. was taking b. was being taken c. had taken d. had been taken
35. The boy .... a white shirt is my son.
a. was wearing b. has worn c. wearing d. worn
36. The white shirt .... by my son is pure cotton.
a. wearing b. worn c. was worn d. had been worn
37. Having .... my room, it looked wider.
a. tidied b. being tidied c. tidying d. been tidied
38. Having ...., my room looked wider.
a. tidied b. been tidied c. tidying d. being tidied
39. .... was punished for being late for school.
a. My b. Me c. Myself d. I
40. What .... to your hand? Has it been broken?
a. was happened b. was being happened
c. has happened d. has been happened
41. While watching the film, we .... a lot.
a. laughed b. were laughed c. were being laughed d. had laughed
42. After the car accident, ... was taken to hospital.
a. his b. he c. him d. himself

Causative : have and get

① تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أقنع أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل :
- Mr Mohammed had the students write paragraphs.
= Mr Mohammed got the students to write paragraphs.

– في المثال السابق قام المُكَلِّف أو المفعول لأجله (Mr Mohammed) بتكليف الفاعل الحقيقي (the students) بالقيام بالفعل (write paragraphs)

② تتكون صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

1. Subj. + have (حسب الزمن) + agent + → inf. المصدر / → (inf. + ing) ...

- I have the mechanic check / checking my car regularly.
- They will have an accountant do / doing the accounts.

2. Subj. + get (حسب الزمن) + agent + → (to + inf.) ... / → (inf. + ing) ...

- I get the mechanic checking / to check my car regularly.
- They will get an accountant doing / to do the accounts.

❸ تتكون صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) فى المبنى للمجهول من :

Subj. + have. (حسب الزمن) / get. (حسب الزمن) + obj. المفعول + P.P. التصريف الثالث

- I have / get my car checked regularly.
- They will have the accounts done.

❹ تستخدم هذه الصيغة الفعلية (have / get) حسب الزمن كالتالى :

present simple المضارع البسيط

have	get
- Subj. + have / has + agent فاعل + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + have / has + obj. مفعول + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ali has a mechanic check his car every month. = Ali has his car checked every month. - We have a cook prepare our meals. = We have our meals prepared by a cook.	- Subj. + get /gets + agent فاعل + to + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + get /gets + obj. مفعول + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ali gets a mechanic to check his car every month. = Ali gets his car checked every month. - We get a cook to prepare our meals. = We get our meals prepared.

Past simple الماضى البسيط

have	get
Subj. + had + agent + inf. ... (معلوم) Subj. + had + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Sama had the teacher explain the lesson again. = Sama had the lesson explained again.	Subj. + got + agent + to + inf. ... (معلوم) Subj. + got + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Sama got the teacher to explain the lesson again. = Sama got the lesson explained again.

Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

have	get
- Subj.+ am / is / are + having + agent + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + am / is / are + having + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ahmed is having a friend decorate the hall. = Ahmed is having the hall decorated.	- Subj.+ am / is / are + getting + agent +to + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + am / is / are + getting + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ahmed is getting a friend to decorate the hall. = Ahmed is getting the hall decorated.

Past Continuous الماضي المستمر

have	get
- Subj.+ was / were + having + agent + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + was / were + having + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ashraf was having his wife iron the shirt. = Ashraf was having the shirt ironed.	- Subj.+ was / were + getting + agent + to + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + was / were + getting + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ashraf was getting his wife to iron the shirt. = Ashraf was getting the shirt ironed.

Present Perfect المضارع التام

have	get
- Subj.+ have / has + had + agent + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + have / has + had + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ayman has had Fady close the window. = Ayman has had the window closed.	- Subj.+ have / has + got + agent + to + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + have / has + got + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - Ayman has got Fady to close the window. = Ayman has got the window closed.

Past Perfect الماضي التام

have	get
- Subj.+ had + had + agent + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + had + had + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - I had had a technician examine my laptop before I went home. - I had had my laptop examined before I went home.	- Subj. + had + got + agent + to + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + had + got + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - I had got a technician to examine my laptop before I went home. - I had got my laptop examined before I went home.

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

have	get
- Subj. + M.V. فعل ناقص + have + agent + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + M.V. فعل ناقص + have + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - I must have a dentist examine my teeth. = I must have my teeth examined.	- Subj.+ M.V. فعل ناقص + get + agent + to + inf. ... (معلوم) - Subj. + M.V. فعل ناقص + get + obj. + p.p. ... (مجهول) - I must get a dentist to examine my teeth. = I must get my teeth examined.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

ن وضع الفاعل بعد (by) في الصيغة المبنية للمجهول :

- I get / have my room tidied by my mother.

ـخدم ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them) بعد (have / get) في هذه الصيغة :

- Leen will have me take her home from school. (Not: have I ...)

النفى وتكوين السؤال حسب زمن (have / get) :

- We don't have the cooking done. We do it by ourselves. (Not: haven't the cooking

المبنى للمعلوم يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بدلاً من (inf. / to + inf.) كالتالى :

- Subj. + have (حسب الزمن) + agent الفاعل + (inf. + ing) ......

- Subj. + get (حسب الزمن) + agent الفاعل + (inf. + ing) ......

- Rokaya has / gets her mother explaining the lessons for her.

مكن استخدام الفعل (make / let) في المبنى للمعلوم كالتالى :

- Subj. + make يجعل / let يسمح + agent الفاعل + inf. ......

- The manager made / let the secretary go home early.

وتستخدم (make) فقط فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالتالى :

- Obj. مفعول + be + made + to + inf. .....

- The secretary was made to go home early.

يمكن استخدام الفعل (permit / allow ...) (بمعنى) يسمح كالتالى :

- Subj. + allow / permit cause / require / force ... + agent الفاعل + to + inf. ...

- Abdulrahman allows / permits us to play games on his tablet.

وفى المبنى للمجهول تكون الصيغة كالتالى :

- Obj. مفعول + be + allowed / permitted ..... .

- Abdulrahman was allowed/permitted to play games on his tablet.

Exercise On Causative Verbs

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... my sister water the flowers yesterday afternoon.
   a. have b. had c. get d. got
2. I got my sister .... the flowers yesterday afternoon.
   a. waters b. watered c. water d. to water
3. I had the flowers .... yesterday afternoon.
   a. waters b. watered c. water d. to water
4. Omar has the mechanic .... the car every month.
   a. check b. checks c. to check d. to checking

5. Omar .... the mechanic to check the car every month.
a. has b. have c. gets d. get

6. Omar .... the car checked every month.
a. has b. have c. gets d. a & c

7. I .... the barber cut my hair every two weeks. It is a habit.
a. has b. had c. have d. get

8. I .... every two weeks.
a. get the barber to cut my hair b. get my hair cut
c. have my hair cut d. a, b & c

9. Sama had the dentist .... her teeth yesterday.
a. check b. is checking c. to check d. to checking

10. Sama .... the dentist to check her teeth yesterday.
a. gets b. got c. has d. had

11. Sama .... her teeth checked yesterday.
a. had b. gets c. has d. has got

12. Sama got her teeth .... yesterday.
a. checked b. be checking c. to check d. checks

13. We .... a painter decorate our new house next week.
a. are having b. had c. are getting d. got

14. We .... a painter to decorate our new house next week.
a. are having b. had c. are getting d. got

15. We are .... next week.
a. having our new house decorating b. having our new house decorated
c. getting our new house to decorate d. having our new house to decorate

16. Ahmed was having .... in the garden.
a. some trees planting b. a gardener plant some trees
c. some trees to plant d. a gardener to plant some trees

17. Ahmed was getting .... in the garden.
a. some trees planting b. a gardener plant some trees
c. some trees to plant d. a gardener to plant some trees

18. Ahmed was having some trees .... in the garden.
a. planted b. to plant c. to be planted d. planting

19. Rodayna .... Mr Ashraf explain the lesson again.
a. has got b. get c. has had d. have

20. Rodayna .... Mr Ashraf to explain the lesson again.
a. has got b. get c. has had d. have

21. Rodayna .... the lesson explained again.
a. has got b. get c. have d. have got

22. Abdu .... his sister iron his shirt before he went out.
a. has had b. is having c. will have d. had had

23. Abdu had got his sister .... his shirt before he went out.
a. to iron b. to ironing c. irons d. ironed
24. Abdu had got his shirt .... before he went out.
a. to iron b. ironed c. ironing d. to have ironed
25. Ali will have his mother .... a big lunch for his friends.
a. preparing b. prepares c. to prepare d. prepared
26. Ali will get his mother .... a big lunch for his friends.
a. to preparing b. prepares c. to prepare d. a & c
27. Ali .... a big lunch prepared for his friends.
a. will have b. have got c. have had d. get
28. Marwa .... the babies looked after by her mother.
a. gets b. have c. lets d. allows
29. Walid had .... feed the birds.
a. I b. me c. myself d. my
30. I'm worried about my eyes. I get .... checked regularly.
a. they b. their c. them d. it
31. Mum .... lunch prepared.
a. hasn't b. don't get c. doesn't have d. haven't got
32. .... anyone help you?
a. Did you have b. Have you c. You had d. Had you
33. I .... my car checked every day. That happens once a month.
a. haven't b. don't have c. doesn't get d. has got
34. .... anyone to look after the trees in the garden?
a. Have you b. Do you have c. You get d. Do you get
35. How often do you get your hair .... ?
a. cutting b. cut c. to cut d. is cutting
36. **A:** Do you polish your shoes yourself? **B:** No, I get .... polished.
a. it b. its c. them d. they
37. My mother got .... to tidy our rooms.
a. us b. we c. our d. ours
38. Nada had her friends .... her during the party.
a. helped b. to help c. to helping d. helping
39. We .... our neighbours looking after our garden while we were away.
a. has b. got c. gets d. made
40. Yara made her sister .... some juice for the guests.
a. make b. makes c. made d. to make
41. Reem let me .... her mobile.
a. using b. use c. used d. to use
42. Amr helped us .... our problems.
a. solve b. solving c. solves d. to solving
43. Hussein permits his friends .... his calculator.
a. use b. using c. to use d. used

Extra Exercises On Structures

في هذا الجزء، نقدم للطالب تدريبات خاصة على القواعد تضعه في أجواء أسئلة مستويات التفكير المختلفة التي تقيس نواتج التعلُّم التي يُركز عليها واضعي الامتحانات، وهذه التدريبات لها دليل إجابات مصحوب بالشرح والتفسير.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. After losing the match, I avoided .... in the club.
   a. see b. seeing c. to be seen d. being seen
2. After losing the match, I avoided .... anyone in the club.
   a. see b. seeing c. to be seen d. being seen
3. Prices .... when demand الطلب is more than offer.
   a. rise b. rises c. are risen d. raise
4. Producers .... prices when demand الطلب is more than offer.
   a. rise b. rises c. are risen d. raise
5. I .... in a hotel for three days.
   a. was stayed b. am stayed c. stayed d. have been stayed
6. I .... home on my own late last night.
   a. returned b. have returned c. return d. am returned
7. The stolen money .... to the bank yesterday.
   a. have returned b. was returned c. return d. am returned
8. The plane .... off at 6:30.
   a. takes b. took c. a & b d. was taken
9. The sweater .... off as soon as I had arrived home.
   a. takes b. took c. a & b d. was taken
10. Lunch is .... at three o'clock.
    a. had b. eaten c. served d. b & c
11. The party .... my mother who is ill.
    a. lack b. lacks c. is lacked d. was lacked
12. She .... like her mother.
    a. is looked b. look c. looks d. a & c
13. I .... a lot of nice presents for my birthday.
    a. was brought b. brought c. was bringing d. had brought
14. I heard Leen .... nicely.
    a. to sing b. sing c. singing d. b & c
15. Leen was heard .... nicely.
    a. to sing b. sing c. singing d. a & c
16. I can't believe that you let yourself ....
    a. trick b. tricked c. be tricked d. to be tricked
17. I hate .... lies because I don't want to be tricked or misled. يُضلَّل
    a. telling b. to tell c. be told d. being told
18. This type of ice cream .... well in Italy.
    a. sell b. sells c. is sold d. b & c

19. There's an important job ....
a. to do b. to be done c. a & b d. doing

20. Working hard makes us .... our goals.
a. achieve b. achieves c. achieving d. to achie

21. We are made .... our goals through working hard.
a. achieve b. achieves c. achieving d. to achiev

22. The doorman .... for letting those people in. السماح بدخولهم
a. blames b. blamed c. was to blame d. was blam

23. The applicant .... seems highly-qualified.
a. interviewing b. being interviewed c. is interviewing d. interview

24. The applicant the manager .... seems highly-qualified.
a. interviewing b. being interviewed c. is interviewing d. interview

25. The manager .... the applicant thinks he is highly-qualified.
a. interviewing b. being interviewed c. is interviewing d. interview

26. .... he earns a lot of money.
a. It thinks b. It is thought c. Omar is thought d. b & c

27. .... to earn a lot of money.
a. It thinks b. It is thought c. Omar is thought d. b & c

28. I .... someone iron my clothes.
a. got b. made c. had d. b & c

29. I .... someone to iron my clothes.
a. got b. made c. had d. b & c

30. I .... someone ironing my clothes.
a. got b. made c. had d. b & c

31. I .... my clothes ironed.
a. got b. made c. had d. a & c

Check your understanding

32. "My father doesn't let me drive his car." This means ....
a. I am not let to drive my father's car
b. I am not let drive my father's car
c. I am not allowed drive my father's car
d. I am not allowed to drive my father's car

33. "She has her medicine regularly." This means ....
a. she takes her medicine regularly.
b. her medicine is taken regularly.
c. a & b
d. her medicine is had regularly

34. "Mum bought a silk blouse and gave it to me." What does this mean?
a. Mum bought a silk blouse for me.
b. I bought a silk blouse for mum.
c. I was bought a silk blouse.
d. a & c

35. "A dangerous thief was arrested." This means ....
a. the thief arrested
b. the thief got caught
c. the thief caught
d. the thief was catching

36. "Salma has been doing the housework for an hour." What does this mean?
   a. The housework has been done for an hour.
   b. The housework has been doing for an hour.
   c. The housework has been being done for an hour.
   d. a & c

37. "I remember that my father took me to the zoo." This means ....
   a. I remember to be taken to the zoo
   b. I remember taking to the zoo
   c. I remember being taken to the zoo
   d. I remember to take to the zoo

38. "Nobody helps her." This means ....
   a. she is helped by nobody
   b. she isn't helped by anybody
   c. she helps nobody
   d. a & b

39. "I need to check this patient." What does this mean?
   a. This patient needs checking
   b. This patient needs to check me
   c. I need to be checked by this patient
   d. a & c

40. "People suppose I know the solution." This means ....
   a. It is supposed that I know the solution
   b. I am supposed to know the solution
   c. the solution is supposed to be known by me
   d. a, b & c

41. "I got my laptop fixed." This means ....
   a. I had someone fix my laptop
   b. I got someone fix my laptop
   c. I got my laptop fixing
   d. I fixed my laptop myself

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	d.	- الإختياران (see / to be seen) خطأ لأن الفعل (avoid) يأتي بعده (inf. + ing) - الفعل (see) بهذا المعني فعل متعدي ولا يوجد له مفعول بعد النقط، وبالتالي فالجملة هنا مبنية للمجهول فتصبح الإجابة الصحيحة (being seen) وليس (seeing)
2	b.	- الإختياران (see / to be seen) خطأ لأن الفعل (avoid) يأتي بعده (inf. + ing) - هناك مفعول (anyone) بعد النقط، وبالتالي فالجملة هنا مبنية للمعلوم فتصبح الإجابة الصحيحة (seeing) وليس (being seen)
3	a.	- الفعل (rise) لا يُبني للمجهول لأنه فعل لازم لذلك لا يمكن اختيار (are risen) - الفعل (raise) فعل متعدي وبالتالي لا يمكن اختياره لعدم وجود مفعول - الفعل (rises) غير صحيح لأن فاعل الجملة (prices) في صيغة الجمع
4	d.	- الفعل (rise) فعل لازم لذلك لا يمكن اختيار (rise / rises /are risen) وذلك لوجود المفعول (prices) بعد النقط - الفعل (raise) فعل متعدي وبالتالي هو الاختيار الصحيح لوجود مفعول
5	c.	الفعل (stay) فعل لازم لا يُبني للمجهول لذلك (stayed) هو الخيار الصحيح الوحيد
6	a.	- الفعل (return) لا يُبني للمجهول بمعني (يعود) لذلك لا يمكن استخدام (am returned) - لا يمكن استخدام (return / have returned) لأن الجملة ماضي (last night)

7	b.	الفعل (return) يُبني للمجهول بمعني (يُعيد) لذلك لا يمكن استخدام (have returned / return) لا يمكن استخدام (am returned) لأن الجملة ماضي (last night)
8	c.	الفعل الإصطلاحي (take off) بمعني (تُقلع الطائرة) لا يُبني للمجهول، لذلك لا يمكن استخدام (was taken) الإختياران (takes / took) صحيحان لعدم وجود مُحدّد زمني بالجملة
9	d.	الفعل الإصطلاحي (take off) بمعني (يخلع) يُبني للمجهول، والجملة بدأت بالمفعول لذلك لابد من استخدام (was taken)
10	d.	- لا يُستخدم الفعل (have) كفعل أساسي في المبني للمجهول، والخياران (eaten / served) يتوافقان مع سياق الجملة
11	b.	- الفعل (lack) من الأفعال المتعدية التي لا تُبني للمجهول، لذلك لا يمكن اختيار (c / d) - لا يمكن استخدام (lack) لأن الجملة تبدأ باسم مفرد
12	c.	- الفعل (look like) من الأفعال المتعدية التي لا تُبني للمجهول، لذلك لا يمكن اختيار (a) - لا يمكن استخدام (look) لأن الجملة تبدأ بفاعل مفرد
13	a.	- في عيد ميلادي تُحضَر لي هدايا ولست أنا مَن يُحضرها ، فالضمير (I) في بداية الجملة مفعول وليس فاعل، وعليه فإن الجملة مبنية للمجهول
14	d.	- قاعدة هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم هي (hear + obj. + inf. / inf. + ing)
15	d.	- قاعدة هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول هي ((be heard + obj. + (inf. + ing) /(to + inf.))
16	c.	- قاعدة هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول هي (let + obj. + be + p.p.)
17	d.	- سياق الجملة يدل أنها مبنية للمجهول فكان لابد من استخدام (being told)، ولا يمكن استخدام (be told) بعد الفعل (hate)
18	d.	- الفعل (sells) هنا يعني (يحقق مبيعات) أو أنه (يلقي رواجاً) ويمكن استخدامه في صيغة المبني للمجهول بمعني (يُباع)
19	c.	- بعد الصيغة (There + be + obj.) يمكن استخدام (to + inf. / to be + p.p.)
20	a.	- في المبني للمعلوم تكون هذه الصيغة (make + obj. + inf.)
21	d.	- في المبني للمجهول تكون هذه الصيغة (obj. + be + made + to + inf.)
22	c.	- لا يمكن اختيار (a / b / d) لأنهم جميعاً مبني للمعلوم مع أنه لا يوجد مفعول بعد النقط - الاختيار الصحيح هو (was to blame) بمعني (was responsible)
23	b.	- منطقيا نعلم أن المتقدم لوظيفة (the applicant) لا يعقد مقابلة شخصية، بل تُعقَد معه مقابلة شخصية، وعليه فالجملة مبنية للمجهول - الإختيار الصحيح (being interviewed) هو الصيغة المختصرة لعبارة الوصل المبنية للمجهول (who is being interviewed)
24	c.	- وجود الفاعل (the manager) بعد المفعول (the applicant) مباشرة يعني أن هناك ضمير وصل محذوف بينهما، كما يعني أن عبارة الوصل مبنيه للمعلوم - لا يمكن اختيار (interviewing) لعدم وجود فعل مساعد قبله - لا يمكن استخدام (interview) بدون (s) مع الفاعل المفرد (the manager)

.	- منطقيا نعلم أن المدير (the manager) يعقد مقابلات شخصية، وليس تُعقد معه مقابلات شخصية، وعليه فالجملة مبنية للمعلوم - الاختيار الصحيح (interviewing) هو الصيغة المختصرة لعبارة الوصل المبنية للمعلوم (who is interviewing) - لا يمكن اختيار (is interviewing) لأن ضمير الوصل محذوف
ı.	- لا يمكن استخدام الصيغة المبنية للمعلوم (It thinks) لأنه لا يوجد غير عاقل (It) يعتقد - لا يمكن استخدام (Omar is thought) نظراً لوجود جملة كاملة بعد النقط وليس (to + inf.)
.	- لا يمكن استخدام الصيغة المبنية للمعلوم (It thinks) لأنه لا يوجد غير عاقل (It) يعتقد - لا يمكن استخدام (It is thought) نظراً لوجود (to + inf.) بعد النقط وليس جملة كاملة
l.	- حسب الصيغة (had / made + agent + inf.)
ı.	- حسب الصيغة (got + agent + to + inf.)
l.	- حسب الصيغة (had / got + agent + inf.+ ing)
l.	- حسب الصيغة (had / got + obj. + p.p.)
l.	- في المبني للمجهول نستخدم (allow) بدلا من (let) ويأتي بعدها (to + inf.)
:.	- استخدام الفعل (take) في الخيارين (a / b) صحيح لأنه لا يمكن استخدام (had) كفعل أساسي في المبني للمجهول
l.	- كلا الخيارين (a / c) صحيحين لأن الفعل (buy) متعدي لمفعولين، أما الخيار (b) فهو خاطئ لأنه يعطي معني مختلف عن الجملة الأصلية
ɔ.	- يمكن استخدام الفعل (get) حسب الزمن مع بعض الأفعال في المبني للمجهول بدلاً من (be)، أما الفعل (caught) في هذا السياق فهو يؤدي نفس معني (arrested)
a.	- الأزمنة التامة المستمرة لا تُستخدم في المبني للمجهول، لذلك تم استخدام المضارع التام البسيط بدلاً من المضارع المستمر
c.	- الفعل (remember) في هذا السياق يأتي بعده (inf. + ing) وبما أن السياق مبني للمجهول لذلك تم استخدام (being + p.p.)
d.	- الاختيارين (a / b) صحيحين لأنهما يؤديان نفس معني الجملة الأصلية
a.	- الاختيار (a) هو الوحيد الذي يؤدي نفس معني الجملة الأصلية
d.	- الاختيارات (a / b / c) كلها صحيحة وهي عبارة عن بناء الجملة الأصلية للمجهول بطرق مختلفة
a.	- الاختيار (a) هو الوحيد الذي يؤدي نفس معني الجملة الأصلية

4 Reported Speech

فى هذا القسم :

- شرح مبسط وشامل للجملة الخبرية فى الكلام غير المباشر + التدريبات.
- شرح مبسط وشامل للصيغة الاستفهامية فى الكلام غير المباشر + التدريبات.
- شرح مبسط وشامل لصيغة الأمر والطلب فى الكلام غير المباشر + التدريبات.
- تدريبات عامة تخاطب جميع مستويات التفكير على جميع الكلام غير المباشر بالكامل.

Reported Statements الجملة الخبرية فى الكلام غير المباشر

1 تبدأ الجملة الخبرية فى الكلام غير المباشر بالمتحدث أو المُبلِّغ و لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص

المبلغ ← فعل الإبلاغ ← (that) ← نص الكلام غير المباشر

- Mr Ashraf said that he was going to buy a new car.

2 هناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ :

أ. أفعال إبلاغ لابد أن يأتى بعدها المفعول (المُخَاطَب) مثل :

told قال لـ / أخبر - informed أَعْلَمَ - assured أكد - reminded ذَكَّر - promised وعد - persuaded / convinced أقنع - warned يُحَذِّر + obj. المُخَاطَب...etc.

والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول **(me – him – her – it – you – us – them)** :

- Areej told Ahmed that she couldn't help him.

ب. أفعال إبلاغ لا يمكن أن يأتى بعدها المُخَاطَب :

said قال - admitted أقر - shouted صاح - threatened هدد - remarked أبدى ملاحظة - reported أبلغ / ذكر - answered أجاب - replied رد - explained أوضح - complained قال شاكيًا - cried هتف - whispered همس ...etc.

- Ali admitted that he had taken my mobile by mistake. (Note: admitted me)

3 نستخدم (that) للربط ، و يمكن حذفها بعد (said) لكن يُفضل وجودها بعد أفعال القول الأخرى

- Salma said that she was ill. = Salma said she was ill.
- Omar told me that he was busy.

4 تتحول الأزمنة إلى الأبعد كالتالى:

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
eat / eats (مضارع بسيط)	ate (ماضى بسيط)
ate (ماضى بسيط)	had eaten / ate (ماضى تام / بسيط)
am / is / are	was / were
was / were (فعل أساسى)	was / were / had been
have / has	had
had (فعل أساسى)	had / had had
can / will / may	could / would / might
shall	should (للاقتراح) / would (للمستقبل)
must	must / had to / would have to
needn't	didn't have to / wouldn't have to

- "I never eat fish," he explained. = - He explained that he never ate fish.
- "I'm having lunch," she said. = - She said (that) she was having lunch.

⑤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان كما يلى:

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then /at that moment	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	yet	by then
here	there	ago	before
last week	the week before the previous week the last week	next week	the week after the following week the next week
yesterday	the day before the previous day the last day	tomorrow	the day after the following day the next day

- He said, "I will/shall be in Cairo this time next Monday". (مباشر)
= - He said he would be in Cairo that time the next Monday. (غير مباشر)
- "I will/shall be travelling to Aswan this time tomorrow," she said. (مباشر)
= - She said she'd be travelling to Aswan that time the day after. (غير مباشر)

⑥ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب:

- "My cousin Khalid gave me one of his sister's short stories," Said Sama. (مباشر)
= Sama said that her cousin Khalid had given her one of his sister's short stories. (غير مباشر)

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول فى المضارع أو المستقبل:

- Rodayna says, "We don't sleep directly after meals." (مباشر)
= - Rodayna says they don't sleep directly after meals. (غير مباشر)

② لا يتغير الزمن عند التحويل من مباشر لغير مباشر إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة مطلقة (حقيقة ثابتة):

- Mr Gamal said, "Water boils at 100°C". (مباشر)
= Mr Gamal said water boils at 100°C. (غير مباشر)

③ من الأفضل ألَّا يتغير الزمن إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة نسبية :

-Mr Gamal said, "Cairo is the capital of Egypt". (مباشر)
= Mr Gamal said Cairo is the capital of Egypt. (غير مباشر)

④ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل:

said a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / recently / said now / said just now ...etc.

- A moment ago, Ahmed said, "I'll buy some clothes tomorrow." (مباشر)
- A moment ago, Ahmed said that he will buy some clothes tomorrow. (غير مباشر)

❺ لا تتغير ظروف الزمان والمكان والأزمنة إذا كان المدى الزمنى لم يتغير:

-An hour ago, Ayman said to me, "I will visit you at home next Monday." (مباشر)
= An hour ago, Ayman told me that he will visit me at home next Monday. (غير مباشر)

فى المثال السابق، أوضح وجود التعبير (An hour ago) أن الإثنين القادم لم يأت بعد، فلم يتغير ظرف الزمان (next Monday) ولا الزمن (will visit).

❻ يبقى الماضى البسيط كما هو بعد التعبيرات التالية:

would rather - I wish - It is time ...

- "I wish I lived in Paris ", said Yara. (مباشر)
- Yara said that she wished she lived in Paris. (غير مباشر)

❼ تبقى (used to + inf.) الدالة على العادة دون تحويل:

- "I used to live in a small village when I was young." said Mr Hossam.
- Mr Hossam said that he used to live in a village when he was young. (NOT: had used)

❽ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية فى جمل الكلام غير المباشر تدل على أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضى تام:

- the (day / week / ...) before - the previous (day / week / ...)
- the last (day / week / ...) - by then

- Omar said that he .... a tablet the week before.
a. has bought b. didn't buy c. had bought d. was buying

❾ لاحظ أنه فى حال وجود أيٍّ من التعبيرات الزمنية التالية :

- the (day / week / ...) after - the following (day / week / ...)
- the next (day / week / ...)

فهى تدل على أن الإختيار الصحيح قد يكون:

- would ... - (was / were + inf. + ing) - (was / were + going to + inf.)

- Amira told me that she .... me the following Friday.
a. will visit b. will be visiting c. was visiting d. is going to visit

❿ تدل (then) فى جمل الكلام غير المباشر تدل على أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضى مستمر:

- Nada said that she .... then.
a. is sleeping b. was sleeping
c. will sleep d. had slept

⓫ لا تتغير الأفعال والتعبيرات الناقصة التالية عند التحويل من مباشر لغير مباشر:

- should - would - could - ought - would rather - had better

-Ali said, "I could swim at the age of six." (مباشر)
= Ali said he could swim at the age of six. (غير مباشر)

⓬ لا يتغير زمني الماضي التام والماضي التام المستمر عند التحويل من مباشر لغير مباشر:

- "I had done the shopping before returning home", she said. (مباشر)
= She said she had done the shopping before returning home. (غير مباشر)

⓭ عند تحويل جملتين متتاليتين لنفس المتحدث نستخدم (and that - and added that) :
- Sama said to me, "I will do the shopping. I will clean the kitchen." (مباشر)
= Sama told me that she would do the shopping and that she would clean the kitchen. (غير مباشر)

⓮ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ التالية عند تحويل الجملة إلى غير المباشر ويأتي بعدها إما اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

- admit / admit to - apologize for - blame ... for - congratulate ... on
- deny ينكر - insisted on - objected to يعترض على - suggest + noun / (inf. + ing)

-Sama said, "What about going for a walk?" (مباشر)
= Sama suggested going for a walk. (غير مباشر)
-Ahmed said, "I don't agree with your opinion." (مباشر)
= Ahmed objected to my opinion. (غير مباشر)

لاحظ أنه بعد أفعال الإبلاغ (deny that / admit that) يمكن تحويل الجملة لغير المباشر بالطريقة العادية:
-Ahmed said, "I don't agree with your opinion." (مباشر)
= Ahmed admitted that he didn't agree to my opinion. (غير مباشر)

⓯ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ التالية عند تحويل الجملة إلى صيغة الكلام غير المباشر ويأتي بعدها (to + inf.) :

- agreed - decide - encourage - invite - offer - promise - refuse
- remind - request- threaten + (to + inf.)

- Esraa said, "I will help you with the housework, mum." (مباشر)
= Esraa promised mum to help her with the housework. (غير مباشر)

لاحظ أنه بعد أفعال الإبلاغ (promise / decide / remind / threaten + that) يمكن تحويل الجملة لغير المباشر بالطريقة العادية:
- Esraa said, "I will help you with the housework, mum." (مباشر)
= Esraa promised mum that she would help her with the housework. (غير مباشر)

Exercise On Reported Statement

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The manager declared that the company .... brilliant workers the next month.
   a. had promoted   b. is promoting   c. have promoted   d. was going to promote
2. Hatim tells us that he .... the summer holiday in Alexandria when he finishes exams.
   a. has spent   b. will spend   c. would spend   d. had spent
3. The criminals admitted that they .... the bank.
   a. had robbed   b. hadn't robbed   c. are robbing   d. have robbed
4. I knew that a new secondary school .... built in our village recently.
   a. has been   b. have been   c. had been   d. had
5. Ali told me that he .... his homework at that moment.
   a. had done   b. has been doing   c. would do   d. was doing
6. "I .... for London soon," Mr Rami said.
   a. would leave   b. am leaving   c. leaves   d. have left

7. My father told me that I .... a bad mistake and that I should be careful the next time.
   a. had made b. am making c. would make d. could make
8. Adel .... that he was ready for the final exam.
   a. told b. said c. wondered d. recommended
9. My friend told me that he .... the visa to the US until he had paid for it.
   a. doesn't take b. won't take c. hadn't taken d. wouldn't take
10. She told me that I .... due care to my work. I actually appreciate her advice.
   a. needn't have given b. could have given c. should have given d. should give
11. Adel said that he .... to the hospital to visit his close friend yesterday.
   a. must have gone b. might go c. had to go d. must go
12. I was told that my friend .... a terrible accident while he was driving to Mansoura.
   a. had had b. had c. was having d. is having
13. Samir informed me that he .... about the result of the interview.
   a. didn't tell b. haven't been told c. hadn't told d. hadn't been told
14. Adam said that he .... a report on the new project then.
   a. has written b. will be writing c. was writing d. is writing
15. She told me that I .... due care to my work. It is no use blaming me as I had already lost everything.
   a. needn't have given b. could have given c. should have given d. should give
16. Nada .... me that we had to get up early the day after.
   a. reminded b. said c. admitted d. reported
17. The worker .... that the weather had been too hot the day before.
   a. told b. complained c. informed d. reminded
18. Rodayna said .... to buy a new tablet.
   a. that she wants b. if she wanted c. that she wanted d. what she wanted
19. Leen .... she could help me.
   a. said b. said if c. told that d. asked
20. Bassem .... had an important meeting.
   a. explained b. explained that c. explained that he d. explained if
21. Karim said, "My mother will give me a nice present".
   - Karim said that .... mother would give him a nice present.
   a. he b. his c. him d. himself
22. Mariam said, "......... mother will give me a nice present".
   - Mariam said her mother would give her a nice present.
   a. My b. Her c. His d. Mine
23. Nada said that those chairs would be moved .... the following day.
   a. her b. their c. there d. theirs
24. "I haven't finished this report .... ", explained Youssef.
   a. yet b. by then c. ago d. yesterday
25. Magdi said that his wife .... the green salad.
   a. likes b. has liked c. was liking d. liked
26. My cousin said that she .... watching an action film.
   a. is b. was c. has been d. had

27. He explained that he always .... fish on Fridays.
a. eat b. eats c. ate d. had eaten
28. She said she .... lunch when I called. That's why she didn't answer my call.
a. was having b. had c. had had d. was had
29. Rody said that she .... the shopping before returning home.
a. had been done b. has done c. was done d. had done
30. Bassem said that they .... there for five years.
a. are living b. had been lived c. had been living d. have been living
31. He said he .... his new boss already.
a. has met b. had met c. will meet d. would be met
32. When Omar was ill, I told him that he .... take his medicine on time.
a. had to b. has to c. will have to d. must
33. I promised Laila that I .... help her whenever she needed help.
a. will b. would c. must d. had to
34. He said that he .... the previous Friday.
a. has arrived b. arrived c. would arrive d. had arrived
35. "I had returned home by midday", said Ahmed.
- Ahmed said that he .... home by midday.
a. had returned b. had been returning c. returned d. had had returned
36. "You'd better study hard, Samar", said mum.
- Mum told Samar that she'd better .... hard.
a. to study b. studied c. study d. had studied
37. "It is time you went home, Tarek ", said Uncle Yahia.
- Uncle Yahia told Tarek that it was time he .... home.
a. had gone b. went c. goes d. has gone
38. "I used to get up early", she said.
- She said that she .... to get up early.
a. had used b. has used c. was used d. used
39. The teacher told us that the Nile .... the longest river in the world.
a. is b. has been c. had been d. is being
40. Ten minutes ago, Aya told me that she .... me next Friday.
a. called b. had called c. will call d. was calling
41. Areej said a moment ago that she .... very busy doing tomorrow's homework.
a. was b. is c. had been d. was being
42. Walid says that his parents .... all their relatives regularly.
a. visit b. visits c. had been visited d. has visited
43. "Yes, I have received your email," said Sama.
- Sama admitted that .... received my email.
a. yes she has b. yes she had c. she has d. she had
44. The old man said that he .... abroad by then.
a. hasn't travelled b. didn't travel c. hadn't travelled d. wasn't travelling
45. Amir said that he .... us the following Friday.
a. will visit b. had visited c. was visiting d. is going to visit
46. Reham said that she .... the housework then.
a. is doing b. was doing c. would do d. had done

Reported Questions الأسئلة فى الكلام غير المباشر

❶ يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) (Yes / No) فى الكلام غير المباشر من:

المبلغ ← فعل الإبلاغ ← if / whether + ← نص الكلام غير المباشر

- "Have you finished the report, Samar?" asked the manager. (مباشر)
= The manager asked Samar if / whether she had finished the report. (غير مباشر)

❷ يتكون السؤال بـ (أداة استفهام) فى الكلام غير المباشر من :

المبلغ ← فعل الإبلاغ ← أداة استفهام + ← نص الكلام غير المباشر

- "When will you go for a walk, Tarek?" asked Bassem. (مباشر)
= Bassem asked Tarek when he would go for a walk. (غير مباشر)

❸ هناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالأسئلة :

أ. يمكن استخدام المُخاطَب (المفعول) أو عدم استخدامه بعد (asked) :

والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو (me – him – her –you – us – them) :

- Mohammed asked Youssef why he was angry. (السؤال كان موجهاً ليوسف)
- Mohammed asked why Youssef was angry. (السؤال كان موجهاً ليوسف أو غيره)

ب. لا يمكن أن يأتى المُخَاطَب بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية:

wondered تساءل – wanted to know أراد أن يعرف – inquired استفسر - ...

- Nada wondered when Ahmed was leaving home.

❹ يُستخدم الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (if / whether) وكذلك بعد أداة الاستفهام فى الكلام غير المباشر:

- Khalid wondered where I was going. (Not: where was I)
- Youssef wanted to know if mum had left home. (Not: if had mum left)

❺ تتحول الأزمنة والضمائر وظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع الجملة الخبرية فى الكلام غير المباشر)

- Nadia asked, "When are you taking these tools away from here, Omar?" (مباشر)
- Nadia asked Omar when he was taking those tools away from there. (غير مباشر)

❻ لا تُستخدم (do – does) كأفعال مساعدة فى الكلام غير المباشر لكن يتحول الفعل الأصلى إلى زمن الماضى البسيط (التصريف الثاني):

- "Do you help mum, Rokaya?" asked Leen. (مباشر)
- Leen asked Rokaya if she helped mum. (غير مباشر)

❼ لا تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد فى الكلام غير المباشر لكن يتحول الفعل الأصلى إلى زمن الماضى التام:

- "How did you go to school yesterday, Yasser?" asked Essam. (مباشر)
- Essam asked Yasser how he had gone to school the day before. (غير مباشر)

❽ تتحول (shall) فى حالة الاقتراح إلى (should) :

- "Shall we go fishing?", said Ahmed. (مباشر)
- Ahmed wondered if / whether we should go shopping. (غير مباشر)

⑯ الصيغة التالية ليست كلام غير مباشر، لكن يأتي الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (if / whether) أو أداة الاستفهام:

Can / Could / Do... + you / he / ... + أداة استفهام + subj. فاعل ...

- Could you tell me why you are late for work? (NOT: why are you)

⑰ يمكن أحياناً استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخبرية قبل (if / whether) أو أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال ولا يعتبر ذلك كلام غير مباشر:

- Sama told us how she had solved the problem.
- He didn't tell me if / whether he would attend the meeting or not.

Exercise On Reported Questions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Hamza asked why .... late for the meeting.
   a. I had been b. I have been c. have I been d. had I been
2. Please, let me know where .... meet.
   a. can we b. we are going to c. we would d. will we
3. Samir .... me why I had chosen that T-shirt.
   a. said b. inquired c. asked d. ordered
4. My father asked, "Why .... more money now?"
   a. you needn't b. you needed c. you need d. do you need
5. Could you tell me why .... to the hospital yesterday?
   a. did you go b. had you gone c. you went d. you had gone
6. Rami wondered when the general manager .... to attend the next conference.
   a. will travel b. would travel c. has travelled d. was travelling
7. Ali wanted to know .... I was ready for the interview or not.
   a. if b. why c. that d. which
8. My friend inquired .... or not I'd accept that offer.
   a. if b. whether c. that d. which
9. My father asked me what I .... the moment he arrived.
   a. would do b. will do c. was doing d. am doing
10. Adel wonders when I .... back home as he needs my help urgently.
    a. had been b. am being c. would be d. will be
11. We asked our teacher if our exam papers ....
    a. have checked b. had checked c. had been checked d. have been checked
12. She asked me if I .... my lost mobile.
    a. have found b. had found c. was finding d. will find
13. My father asked why .... that loud noise.
    a. we were making b. were we making c. we will make d. had we made

14. My friend asked me whether .... ready for the school trip.
a. we are b. we were c. are we d. we are being

15. I asked the tourist .... he came from.
a. whether b. when c. where d. which

16. Omar said to me, "Where .... the weekend?"
a. you have spent b. have you spent c. are you spent d. did you spent

17. Mum said, " .... your homework, Rodayna?"
a. What are doing b. You are doing c. Are you doing d. You doing

18. Nada .... Ahmed when he was leaving home.
a. asked b. said c. inquired d. wondered

19. She asked .... looked unhappy.
a. why b. why I c. me why I d. b & c

20. Omar .... how I was travelling to Cairo.
a. said b. reported c. wondered d. told

21. Abdu asked his father why ....
a. was he late? b. he was late? c. "he was late?" d. he was late.

22. Mohammed wanted to know whether .... the conference.
a. did I attend b. I would attend c. I have attended d. have I attended

23. Hussein wondered .... we were late for school.
a. why b. that c. who d. where

24. Yara asked, "When are you repairing my tablet for me, father?"
- Yara asked father when .... was repairing her tablet for her.
a. she b. he c. him d. her

25. "......... this place last year? ", said Khalid.
- Khalid asked me if I had visited that place the previous year.
a. have you visited b. Had you visited c. Did you visit d. You visited

26. Mariam asked Karim if he .... dinner outdoors the next day.
a. is having b. was having c. will d. had

27. "Where .... your lost keys, Amr?" asked Nancy.
a. you have found b. have you found c. you found d. you will find

28. "What time do you have your breakfast?" asked Eman.
- Eman asked me what time .... my breakfast.
a. I had b. had I c. I have d. have I

29. "......... you, Rokaya?" asked Leen.
- Leen asked Rokaya if her mother helped her.
a. Your mother helps b. Your mother does help
c. Does your mother help d. What does your mother help

30. "What did you prepare for lunch, mum?" asked Walid.
- Walid asked mum what .... for lunch.
a. she did prepare b. did she prepare
c. had she prepared d. she had prepared

31. "......... my tablet, Zamzam?" asked Rodayna.
- Rodayna asked Zamzam if she had used her mobile.
a. Did you use b. You used c. You had used d. She had used

32. I have .... you why I was late for school.
a. asked b. told c. wondered d. wanted to know

33. Malak didn't say .... her father will attend the party or not.
a. what b. whether c. when d. unless

Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice جمل الأمر والإقتراح والنصيحة فى الكلام غير المباشر

① تتكون جملة الأمر / النهى فى الكلام غير المباشر من :

المبلغ ← فعل الإبلاغ ← المُخاطب ← to / not to + ← نص الكلام غير المباشر

② تُستخدم (to + inf.) بمعنى (أن ...) فى الإثبات:

- "Help your sister, Ahmed", said Mr Mohammed.
- Mr Mohammed told Ahmed to help his sister.

③ تُستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعنى (ألّا ...) فى النفى:

- "Don't go out alone in the evening", said my mother.
- My mother warned me not to go out alone in the evening.

④ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب بعد المُبَلِّغ، مثل:

told قال لـ / أخبر - **asked** طلب - **ordered** أمر - **commanded** أمر - **reminded** ذكّر - **warned** حذّر - **advised** نصح – **encouraged** شجّع - **instructed** أمر - **invited** دعى - **wanted** أراد - **helped** ساعد - **taught** علّم - **expected** توقع - **threatened** هدد + **obj.** المُخاطَب......

والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول **(me – him – her – it – you – us – them)** :

- The officer ordered the soldiers to arrest the thief.
- My uncle advised me not to waste my time.

⑤ تتحول الضمائر وظروف الزمان والمكان (راجع الجملة الخبرية):

- Aya said, "Return this book to me tomorrow, Ahmed". (مباشر)
- Aya asked Ahmed to return that book to her the following day. (غير مباشر)

⑥ لاحظ تحويل جمل النصيحة:

- "You should eat healthy food, Roaa", said Mrs Wafaa. (مباشر)
- Mrs Wafaa advised / told Roaa to eat healthy food. (غير مباشر)

⑦ يُستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد بعض الأفعال التقريرية مثل **(suggest / recommend ...)** :

- "How about playing tennis ?", said Zeinab. (مباشر)
- Zeinab suggested / recommended playing tennis. (غير مباشر)

في حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات التالية يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.) :

- suggest يقترح - recommend يوصى بـ - ask - insist يصمم - advise ...
- It is / was (vital ضرورى - essential / crucial ضرورى - important ...

- My wife suggested/ advised that Rodayna see (should see) a doctor.
- Ahmed suggested / advised that Rodayna / take should take a rest.
- It is vital that Sama follow a diet.
- It is vital that Sama should follow a diet.

Exercise On Reported imperatives, Suggestions and advice

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My teacher recommended .... the lesson again.
   a. to revise b. revising c. revise d. that revise
2. I suggested that Ali .... to the sports club with us.
   a. went b. to go c. go d. going
3. My father said, "......... make any noise."
   a. Didn't b. To not c. Don't d. Not to
4. Mother asked me .... my room.
   a. whether to tidy b. tidy c. to tidy d. don't tidy
5. "Don't park here." The policeman said we .... park here.
   a. should b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. must
6. Ali advised me to stop smoking. He said I .... smoking.
   a. should stop b. should have stopped
   c. oughtn't to have stopped d. to stop
7. Hazem told me .... for the job because it's not rewarding.
   a. to apply b. not to apply c. don't apply d. apply
8. My little brother is very good at football, so I .... him to join the school team.
   a. let b. discouraged c. encouraged d. made
9. The manager advised me .... as soon as possible.
   a. to retraining b. retrain c. retraining d. to retrain
10. The policeman .... the people not to drive so fast.
    a. made b. wondered c. instructed d. said
11. Ali said, "If I were you, I would read this book." This means that Ali .... me to re that book.
    a. let b. advised c. ordered d. discouraged
12. My brother said, "Why .... travel by train?" –Surely, I will act upon his suggestio
    a. don't you b. you don't c. didn't you d. you didn't
13. My friend suggested .... for the next bus.
    a. to waiting b. not waiting c. wait d. waited

14. My father always encourages me .... short stories.
a. don't read b. reading c. to read d. read
15. Adham asked us .... prepare our bags for the journey.
a. whether b. that c. to d. if
16. I suggested that Ali .... that matter with his friends.
a. to discuss b. had discussed c. discuss d. discussed
17. "......... the door, Leen", said mum.
a. Open b. Opened c. To open d. Not to open
18. Father said, "......... too much, Amr".
a. Don't eat b. Not eat c. Hardly eat d. Didn't eat
19. Mum asked Leen .... the door.
a. don't open b. to open c. opens d. to opening
20. Father warned Amr .... too much.
a. don't eat b. eats c. not to eat d. to eat
21. I .... Sama to help her mother.
a. said b. wondered c. denied d. told
22. Grandpa .... me to work hard at school.
a. explained b. said c. advised d. reported
23. I told him .... more exercise. I wanted him to get fitter.
a. to do b. not to do c. doing d. to doing
24. The officer ordered the soldiers .... their places. They had to stay where they were.
a. to leave b. not to leave c. to leaving d. not to leaving
25. Amira said, "Lend me your camera, Ali".
- Amira asked Ali to lend .... camera.
a. her his b. his her c. him his d. her her
26. " Bring this book with you tomorrow", said Miss Mona.
- Miss Mona asked me to bring that book with .... the following day.
a. him b. her c. me d. them
27. "If I were you, I'd get up early", said Aya. This means that Aya .... up early.
a. ordered me to get
b. advised me to get
c. stopped me from getting
d. warned me to get
28. "Can you lend me some money, Omar", said Mustafa. This means that Mustafa wanted Omar ....him some money.
a. lend b. lending c. not to lend d. to lend
29. "What about going to the cinema", said Doaa. This means that Doaa .... going to the cinema.
a. refused b. suggested c. expected d. discouraged
30. Ahmed suggested that Sama .... a rest.
a. taking b. take c. took d. taken

31. .... that Omar see a doctor.

a. It is important   b. I said   c. He asked   d. a & c

32. It is essential that he .... fit.

a. was   b. be   c. being   d. to be

Exercise On Reported Speech

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريبات خاصة على القواعد تضعه في أجواء اسئلة مستويات التفكير المختلفة التي تقيس نواتج التعلم التي يُركز عليها واضعي الإمتحانات، وهذه التدريبات لها دليل اجابات مصحوب بالشرح والتفسير..

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... Rodayna she studied hard for her exams.

a. said   b. asked   c. advised   d. told

2. I .... Rodayna studied hard for her exams.

a. said   b. asked   c. advised   d. told

3. I .... Rodayna whether she studied hard for her exams.

a. said   b. asked   c. advised   d. told

4. I .... Rodayna to study hard for her exams.

a. said   b. asked   c. advised   d. b & c

5. I .... that Rodayna study hard for her exams.

a. said   b. asked   c. advised   d. b & c

6. Omar .... me he was leaving for Alexandria.

a. said   b. told   c. asked   d. reported

7. Malak said she was visiting her uncle ....

a. now   b. than   c. then   d. at the moment

8. Sama said .... support was of great value to her and added that she was thankful to me.

a. my   b. his   c. your   d. our

9. My father .... me I have to be more careful at driving.

a. says   b. said   c. tells   d. told

10. My teacher said iron .... in water.

a. floats   b. doesn't float   c. floated   d. didn't float

11. Mr Emad said that Lake Nasser .... the largest man-made lake.

a. does   b. is   c. was   d. b & c

12. Leen told me they .... to Alexandria the next summer.

a. have left   b. are leaving   c. were leaving   d. had left

13. Last Sunday, Leen told me they .... to Alexandria next summer.

a. have left   b. are leaving   c. were leaving   d. had left

14. Nada said she wished she .... taller.

a. was   b. were   c. had been   d. a & b

15. I told them that I .... in Cairo next week.

a. will be   b. would be   c. am being   d. was being

. I told them that I .... in Cairo the week after.

a. will be b. would be c. am being d. was being

. Mum asked Mrs Nadeen .... she had bought.

a. what b. when c. where d. b& c

. Mum asked Mrs Nadeen .... she had bought her new tablet.

a. what b. when c. where d. b& c

. Can you tell me why......... the party so early?

a. did you leave b. had you left c. you left d. you had left

. I can't tell you .... I left early.

a. that b. why c. weather d. a & c

1. She inquires what I am going to do .... weekend.

a. the previous b. the last c. that d. this

2. You don't need to remind me I .... to pay back your money next month.

a. was b. have c. has d. had

3. "I used to get up early", said Aya.

- Aya said that she .... to get up early.

a. could use b. would use c. had used d. used

24. She wanted to know if I .... about the meeting the day before.

a. had informed b. had been informed c. informed d. am informed

Check your understanding

25. "You should do your best," said Mr Ashraf.

a. Mr Ashraf said I should have done my best.

b. Mr Ashraf told me I should do my best.

c. Mr Ashraf advised me to do my best.

d. b & c

26. Karim said, "I had been waiting for 30 minutes before you called. " Karim told me that he .... for me for 30 minutes before I called.

a. was waiting b. have been waiting c. had been waiting d. had waited

27. "I did my homework," said Rokaya. "Then I went to bed. "

- Rokaya reported that she had done her homework ....

a. and then I went to bed

b. and that she goes to bed after that

c. and added that I went to bed after that

d. and that she went to bed after that

28. "Where do you live? Can I take your telephone number?" asked Hossam.

- Hossam inquired where I lived and .... he could take my telephone number.

a. if b. where c. that d. which

29. "Can I take your telephone number?" asked Hossam.

a. Hossam wanted to take my telephone number.

b. Hossam asked if he could take my telephone number.

c. Hossam asked to take my telephone number.

d. a, b & c

30. "I broke your glasses, Nada. "

a. Ali admitted to break Nada's glasses.

b. Ali admitted breaking Nada's glasses.

c. Ali admitted to breaking Nada's glasses

d. b & c

31. "I didn't take your mobile."
a. He admitted taking my mobile.
b. He denied that he took my mobile.
c. He denied that he didn't take my mobile.
d. He denied that he hadn't taken my mobile.

32. "Do you play the guitar?" - Hasnaa asked ....
a. if had I played the guitar.
b. if I had played the guitar.
c. if did I play the guitar.
d. if I played the guitar.

33. Which of the following is NOT correct?
a. I recommend spending the weekend at home.
b. I recommend to spend the weekend at home.
c. I recommend that we spend the weekend at home.
d. I recommend we should spend the weekend at home.

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	d.	الفاعل (she) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أنها (رودينا) مُخاطَب، فلا يمكن استخدام (said) وجود (if / whether) أو (أداة استفهام) يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (asked) وجود (to + inf.) بعد (Rodayna) يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (advised) ح مما سبق أن (Rodayna) مفعول لفعل القول (told) في جملة خبرية وأن (that) محذوفة وإن (she) ص ثالث وليس (رودينا)
2	a.	ود الفعل (studied) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أنها فاعل وليست مُخَاطب، فلا يمكن استخدام (told)، ستخدم (said)
3	b.	ود (whether) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أن الجملة استفهامية وتُستخدم (asked)
4	d.	ود (to study) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أن الجملة أمر وتُستخدم (asked / advised)
5	d.	ود الفعل في المصدر بعد (Rodayna) بالإضافة لوجود (that) قبلها يدل أن الجملة في صيغة (subjunctive) وتُستخدم (asked / advised)
6	b.	عدم وجود (if / whether) أو (أداة استفهام) يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (asked) وجود ضمير المفعول (me) بعد النقط يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (said / reported)
7	c.	لا يمكن استخدام (than) لأنها لن تؤدي معني لا يمكن استخدام (now / at the moment) لأن السياق ماضي وليس مضارع
8	a.	سياق الجملة يدل أن (Sama) تشكرني (thankful to me) وبالتالي نستخدم (my)
9	c.	عدم تحول زمن الجملة إلى الماضي يدل أنه من الأنسب استخدام فعل إبلاغ مضارع وجود المُخاطَب (me) بعد النقط يجعل من اللازم استخدام (tells) وليس (says)
10	b.	- الجملة تتحدث عن حقيقة ثابتة (الحديد لا يطفو في الماء) وبالتالي لا يتحول الزمن - نستخدم (doesn't float) وليس (floats) لكي تُعطي الجملة معني منطقي صحيح
11	d.	- الجملة تُعبّر عن حقيقة نسبية وليست ثابتة، لذلك يمكن أن يبقي الزمن مضارع أو يتحول إلى الماضي (is /was)
12	c.	- وجود (the next summer) يدل على أن سياق الجملة قبل التحويل كان مستقبل، والاختيار الأنسب هنا هو (were leaving) التى كانت مضارع مستمر (are leaving) قبل التحويل وهو زمن يدل على الترتيبات المستقبلية

31. "I didn't take your mobile."
   a. He admitted taking my mobile.
   b. He denied that he took my mobile.
   c. He denied that he didn't take my mobile.
   d. He denied that he hadn't taken my mobile.

32. "Do you play the guitar?" - Hasnaa asked ....
   a. if had I played the guitar.
   b. if I had played the guitar.
   c. if did I play the guitar.
   d. if I played the guitar.

33. Which of the following is NOT correct?
   a. I recommend spending the weekend at home.
   b. I recommend to spend the weekend at home.
   c. I recommend that we spend the weekend at home.
   d. I recommend we should spend the weekend at home.

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	d.	- وجود الفاعل (she) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أنها (رودينا) مُخاطَب، فلا يمكن استخدام (said) - عدم وجود (if / whether) أو (أداة استفهام) يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (asked) - عدم وجود (to + inf.) بعد (Rodayna) يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (advised) - يتضح مما سبق أن (Rodayna) مفعول لفعل القول (told) في جملة خبرية وأن (that) محذوفة وإن (she) شخص ثالث وليس (رودينا)
2	a.	- وجود الفعل (studied) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أنها فاعل وليست مُخَاطب، فلا يمكن استخدام (told)، وتُستخدم (said)
3	b.	- وجود (whether) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أن الجملة استفهامية وتُستخدم (asked)
4	d.	- وجود (to study) بعد (Rodayna) يدل أن الجملة أمر وتُستخدم (asked / advised)
5	d.	- وجود الفعل في المصدر بعد (Rodayna) بالإضافة لوجود (that) قبلها يدل أن الجملة في صيغة (subjunctive) وتُستخدم (asked / advised)
6	b.	- عدم وجود (if / whether) أو (أداة استفهام) يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (asked) - وجود ضمير المفعول (me) بعد النقط يجعل من غير الممكن استخدام (said / reported)
7	c.	- لا يمكن استخدام (than) لأنها لن تؤدي معني - لا يمكن استخدام (now / at the moment) لأن السياق ماضي وليس مضارع
8	a.	- سياق الجملة يدل أن (Sama) تشكرني (thankful to me) وبالتالي نستخدم (my)
9	c.	- عدم تحول زمن الجملة إلى الماضي يدل أنه من الأنسب استخدام فعل إبلاغ مضارع - وجود المُخاطَب (me) بعد النقط يجعل من اللازم استخدام (tells) وليس (says)
10	b.	- الجملة تتحدث عن حقيقة ثابتة (الحديد لا يطفو في الماء) وبالتالي لا يتحول الزمن - نستخدم (doesn't float) وليس (floats) لكي تُعطي الجملة معني منطقى صحيح
11	d.	- الجملة تُعبّر عن حقيقة نسبية وليست ثابتة، لذلك يمكن أن يبقي الزمن مضارع أو يتحول إلى الماضي (is /was)
12	c.	- وجود (the next summer) يدل على أن سياق الجملة قبل التحويل كان مستقبل، والاختيار الأنسب هنا هو (were leaving) التى كانت مضارع مستمر (are leaving) قبل التحويل وهو زمن يدل على الترتيبات المستقبلية

13	b.	- وجود (next summer) وكذلك (last Sunday) يدل على أن زمن الجملة لن يتحول ونستخدم المضارع المستمر (are leaving) الذي يدل على الترتيبات المستقبلية
14	d.	- لا يتحول الماضي البسيط إلى ماضي تام في الجملة بعد (wish) وعليه فإن كل من الاختيارين (was / were) صحيحين لأنه يمكن استخدام (were) مع الفاعل المفرد بعد (wish)
15	a.	- وجود (next week) يدل على أن زمن الجملة لن يتحول ونستخدم صيغة المستقبل (will be) وليس (am being) لأن الفعل (being) لا يُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة بهذا المعنى
16	b.	- وجود ظرف الزمان (the week after) المتحول عن (next week) يجعل الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح هو (would be) ولا يمكن استخدام (was being) لأن الفعل (being) لا يُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة بهذا المعنى
17	a.	- لا يمكن استخدام (where / when) لعدم وجود مفعول
18	d.	- لا يمكن استخدام (what) لوجود المفعول (her new tablet)
19	c.	- كلمة (why) هنا لا تبدأ جملة استفهامية، لذلك لا يأتي بعدها الفعل المساعد - لا يمكن استخدام (you had left) لعدم ملائمة الماضي التام لسياق الجملة
20	b.	- كلمة (why) هنا ليست أداة استفهام، لكنها تعني (the reason for)
21	d.	- فعل الجملة الرئيسية مستقبل لم يتحول (am going to do) لذلك لابد أن يكون ظرف الزمان يدل على المستقبل
22	b.	- ظرف الزمان (next month) لم يتحول وبالتالي نستخدم (have to) ولا يمكن أن نستخدم (has to) لأنها لا تتسق مع الفاعل (I)
23	d.	- لا يتغير زمن (used to) بمعنى (اعتاد أن) عند التحويل من مباشر لغير المباشر
24	b.	- السياق مبنى للمجهول، ولا يمكن استخدام (am informed) في الكلام غير المباشر مع (the day before)
25	d.	- يُمكن تحويل جُمل النصيحة بالطريقتين الموجودتين في (b / c) - الإختيار (a) خاطئ بسبب استخدام (have + p.p.) بعد (should) مما يغير معني الجملة من نصيحة إلى لوم
26	c.	- يبقي الماضي التام المستمر كما هو عند التحويل إلى الكلام غير المباشر
27	d.	- عند عطف جملتين خبريتين متتاليتين في الكلام غير المباشر نستخدم (and that / and added that) مع الالتزام بكافة قواعد التحويل الأخرى مما يُخل بمعني الجملة
28	a.	- الاختيار الصحيح هو (if) لأنه تحويل لجمل استفهامية تبدأ بـ (Can I ...)
29	d.	- الاختيارات الثلاثة صحيحة كمعني وكبناء للجُمل
30	d.	- يُمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (admit) أو (admit to)
31	b.	- الاختيار الوحيد الذي يؤدي نفس معنى الجملة الأصلية
32	d.	- الاختيار الوحيد الذي يراعي قواعد التحويل الصحيحة
33	b.	- لا يأتي بعد (recommend) الصيغة (to + inf.)

5 Relative pronouns

في هذا القسم :

- شرح مبسط وشامل لضمائر وعبارات الوصل + تدريبات خاصة بكل مجموعة

- تدريبات عامة تخاطب جميع مستويات التفكير على ضمائر وعبارات الوصل مصحوبة بالإجابة والتوضيح.

1 who / which / whom / that / what الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي

1. تُشير (who / that) إلى فاعل أو مفعول عاقل (يأتى بعدهما فعل) ولا يمكن حذفهما فى هذه الحالة :

- Farmers are people who / that grow food for us all. (Not : People grow)

2. تُشير (who / whom / that) إلى مفعول عاقل (يأتى بعدهم فاعل) ويمكن حذفهم :

- The gentleman who /whom / that you saw with me yesterday is my uncle.

= The gentleman you saw with me yesterday is my uncle.

3. تشير (which / that) إلى فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل (يمكن حذفهما إذا جاء بعدهما فاعل) :

- I wrote down the number of the car which/ that hit the old lady. (Not : car hit)

- I didn't like the film which/ that you had recommended.

= - I didn't like the film you had recommended.

4. تُستخدم (who /whom / which) فقط و ليس (that) فى حالة الجمل الاعتراضية - أى بعد الفاصلة التحتية (,) :

- Um Kulthum, who is still a famous singer, died in 1975. (Not : that is....)

- Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded. (Not : that is....)

5. تُستخدم (which) فقط و ليس (that) عندما تشير إلى مضمون الجملة التى تسبقها و ليس اسمًا محددًا :

- I have been reading about famous women, which I have found very interesting. (Not : that I have....)

6. بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

أ. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في المكان المناسب في الجملة الموصولة :

- This is my colleague who / that I work with. (Not : with who....)

ب. يمكن أن تأتى حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

- This is my colleague with whom I work.

= This is my colleague whom I work with.

- This is my key with which I open my front door.

= This is my key which I open my front door with.

ج. لاحظ أن الفعل يتحكم أحيانا في حرف الجر الذي يسبق أو يأتي بعد ضمير الوصل :

- She asked me where I had been, to which I replied, "It's a secret". (reply to)

- He says he's busy, by which he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening. (mean by)

- They said something very cruel, for which I think they should apologise. (apologise for)

2 What الشيء الذي

what = the thing that / the things that

يمكن أن تستخدم (what) كضمير وصل وهي لا تعود علي اسم محدد و تكون الجملة الموصولة كلها اما فاعل أو مفعول وتأتى فى بداية الجملة أو بعد فعل أو مفعول أو حرف جر :

- What you do will affect your position.
  = The things that you do will affect your position. (فاعل)
- I didn't understand what he said.
  = I didn't understand the things that he said. (مفعول)
- She listened to what the teacher said.
  = She listened to the things that the teacher said. (مجرور)

3 whose

① تحل محل صفات الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم الشئ المملوك (أى لا يأتى بعدها فعل مطلقًا) ويأتى بعدها إسم يخص ما قبلها:

- She lives in an old house whose walls are made of mud bricks.
- I saw the man whose son was kidnapped.
- He refused to marry a girl whose nose was big. (= who has a big nose)

② انتبه لكيفية استخدام بعض الكلمات التي تُستخدم كفعل واسم مثل :

- **stay** إقامة / يقيم - **visit** زيارة / يزور - **pay** راتب / يدفع - **value** يقيم / قيمة –
imports واردات / يستورد - **exports** صادرات / يُصَدِّر - **help** يساعد / مساعدة
- **dislikes** أشياء غير مفضلة - **likes** أشياء مفضلة - **work** عمل / يعمل – **... etc.**

- Mr Fathy Zaki is the supervisor whose visits to the school are very useful.
- The tourists whose stay has ended have to leave the country.

③ لاحظ أن :

- **who / that / which + have /has = whose + noun** اسم **= with + (صفة) + noun** اسم

- The girl who has red hair is American.
  = The girl whose hair is red is American.
  = The girl with the red hair is American.

4 Where حيث / حيثما / المكان الذي

① تشير (where) إلي المكان و لابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل) :

- This is the room where I sleep.
- A school is a place where we learn.

❷ لاحظ أن :

- where = حرف جر مناسب للمكان + which = which +.... حرف جر مناسب للمكان

- This is the room where I sleep.
= This is the room in which I sleep.
= This is the room which I sleep in.

❸ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) وليس (where) مع المكان بدون حروف جر إذا كان المكان مفعول :

- This is the house which we built. (Not : the house for where ....)

❹ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود علي المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

- I know the company for which he works. (Not : the company for where ....)
- I know the company which he works for. (Not : the company where .... for)

❺ يمكن أن تستخدم حروف قبل (where) عندما تكون جزء من عبارة تدل على مكان محدد :

- He asked the driver to bring the children from where the school bus had broken down.
- I took the laptop to where it was repaired.

- لاحظ في المثالين السابقين عدم وجود مكان في السياق تشير إليه (where)

❻ لاحظ أن :

- which is where = where

- I go to the club where I meet my friends and have a nice time.
= I go to the club which is where I meet my friends and have a nice time.

5 When حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت الذي

❶ تشير (when) إلي الكلمات والتعبيرات الزمنية و لابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل) :

-1976 is the year when I was born.
- Friday is the day when we can get up late.

when = حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني + which = which +...... حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني

-1976 is the year in which I was born.
= 1976 is the year which I was born in.

❷ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود علي التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

- Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not : the day on when ....)
- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not : the day when .... on)

❸ لاحظ أن :

- which is when = when

- Summer is the time when I spend marvellous holidays.
= Summer is the time which is when I spend marvellous holidays.

6 Omission of relative pronouns حذف ضمائر الوصل

❶ يتم حذف كل من (who – which – whom) عندما يحلون محل مفعول(أى إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل) :

- I don't know the woman who you helped.
= I don't know the woman you helped.

❷ يمكن حذف كل من (who – which - that) فى الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا جاء بعدهم مبنى للمعلوم وفى هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (inf. + ing) :

- The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son.
= The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و(verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل .

- I saw the thieves who / that were arrested yesterday.
= I saw the thieves arrested yesterday.

جـ. إذا جاء بعدهم (verb to be) كفعل أساسى وهنا يتم حذف الضمير و (verb to be)

- The woman who is in this shop lent me this pen.
- The woman in this shop lent me this pen.

Exercise On Relative Pronouns

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Ali, ... is a knowledgeable واسع المعرفة supervisor, is responsible for the training course.
   a. that b. who c. whom d. no pronoun
2. Mr Ali, ... a knowledgeable supervisor, is responsible for the training course.
   a. that b. who c. whom d. no pronoun
3. Cairo, ... is the capital of Egypt, is the largest city in Africa.
   a. that b. where c. which d. when
4. Cairo, ... I live, is the largest city in Africa.
   a. that b. where c. which d. when
5. We appreciate the role of the teachers .... work hard and improve their skills.
   a. whom b. whose c. who d. what
6. It is the goat .... ate the branches of the tree, not the horse.
   a. that b. what c. whom d. whose
7. The tree .... fell and blocked the road is too heavy to move.
   a. where b. which c. what d. when
8. My uncle .... you saw with me yesterday works in the USA.
   a. what b. when c. whose d. whom
9. The car .... colour is black needs to be examined.
   a. whose b. which c. that d. when

10. January is the month .... we take the mid-year exams.
a. what b. which c. when d. where

11. I spent most of the summer holiday in our country house .... I find quietness and peace of mind.
a. which b. for which c. where d. in where

12. That is our neighbours' dog .... I feel frightened whenever I see it.
a. who b. whose c. where d. no word

13. I haven't met the representative .... you have sent yet.
a. what b. who's c. whose d. no word

14. Can you kindly hand me the file .... cover is white?
a. who's b. whose c. which d. that

15. Mr Ahmed lent me the money .... I needed.
a. that b. what c. whom d. whose

16. Is Sama your friend .... helps you with the homework?
a. whose b. that c. whom d. no word

17. Mr Hossam, ... is my best friend, works in the same school.
a. that b. whom c. who d. whose

18. Egypt, ... lies in the northwest of Africa, is an important country in the Middle East.
a. where b. whose c. that d. which

19. Mohammed Salah helps a lot of poor people, ... is very kind of him.
a. which b. who c. that d. whom

20. Rodayna is the friend with .... I go to school every day.
a. who b. that c. whom d. whose

21. The employer .... I work for is a very successful organisation.
a. where b. who c. whose d. that

22. The country .... we belong to has a great past.
a. where b. that c. whom d. what

23. Alexandria, ... I spend the summer holiday, has become very crowded.
a. what b. whom c. which is where d. when

24. Being successful is the goal for .... you should do your best.
a. which b. that c. whom d. whose

25. He turned off his mobile, ... I think he means he wanted to be left alone.
a. which b. for which c. by which d. to which

26. What you had done is something wrong .... you have to apologise.
a. which b. for which c. by which d. to which

27. He had sent three offers .... I replied.
a. which b. for which c. by which d. to which

28. Have you understood .... the teacher had said?
a. what b. that c. which d. whose

29. I attended a medical conference .... some important researches were presented.
a. that b. what c. at which d. which

30. That is the farmhouse .... we used to live.
a. which b. where c. when d. what

31. That is the farmhouse .... my great grandfather built.
a. which b. where c. when d. what

32. We all were annoyed by .... was said.
a. which b. that c. what d. who

33. The country .... exports are less than its imports has a financial problem.
a. whose b. who's c. which d. that

34. I look after our family garden .... I relax in.
a. where b. what c. in which d. which

35. The office .... last year has been a success so far.
a. was opened b. which it opened c. opened d. opened it

36. I wanted to tell you .... is to be done.
a. what b. which c. that d. who

37. The bank SMS warned me not to tell anyone .... the ATM password is.
a. who b. that c. whom d. what

38. I have no idea to .... he intends to travel. His destination is unknown.
a. what b. where c. which d. that

39. I like chicken .... in the oven.
a. is cooked b. is cooking c. cooked d. it cooks

40. He did the shopping for me, ... I appreciated very much.
a. which b. that c. whom d. whose

41. Members .... to make any suggestions can attend the next meeting.
a. are wanted b. are wanting c. want d. wanting

42. The children go to the beach .... they always build sandcastles on.
a. at which b. where c. in that d. no word

43. I took the train to Cairo, from .... I took another train to Alexandria.
a. where b. which c. that d. no word

44. I tried to explain to him .... I had really meant, but he wouldn't understand.
a. that b. what c. whose d. no word

45. Did the vet examine the horse .... leg had been broken?
a. that b. whom c. which d. whose

46. The zoo is the place .... many species of animals can be seen.
a. in which b. in where c. which d. what

47. I don't know from .... Abdulrahman has bought this mobile.
a. where b. which c. that d. no word

48. Friday, ... I get up late, is not a school day.
a. what b. where c. on which d. which

49. I get up late on Friday, ... is not a school day.
a. what b. where c. when d. which

50. My elder brother arrived home at 12 a.m., ... I had already gone to bed.
a. in when b. by which c. on which d. to which

51. September 20th is the deadline .... you can't apply for the job.
a. after which b. after when c. where d. after where

52. Midday is the time .... the sun is very strong at.
a. where b. when c. whom d. that

53. September, ... the school year starts, is a hot month in Aswan.
a. what b. on which c. in when d. which is when

54. Crops .... in a natural way are healthy.
a. are grown b. grown c. we grow them d. which grown

55. The girl .... an ice cream is my cousin.
a. eats b. eaten c. eating d. who she eats

56. The old man .... in this room is my grandpa.
a. that he is b. who he is c. he is d. no word

57. A palace is a big house .... many rooms where a king or queen lives.
a. whose has b. where has c. what has d. with

Exercise On Relative Pronouns

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريبات خاصة على القواعد تضعه في أجواء أسئلة مستويات التفكير المختلفة التى تقيس نواتج التعلم التى يُركز عليها واضعى الامتحانات، وهذه التدريبات لها دليل إجابات مصحوب بالشرح والتفسير.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My friend apologised for her mistake, ... I accepted at once.
a. that b. what c. which d. whose

2. Much .... your father has said shows that he is angry with you.
a. what b. that c. which d. whose

3. Much of .... your father has said shows that he is angry with you.
a. what b. that c. which d. whose

4. There are several reasons for the closure of the shop, most of .... have already been explained fully.
a. that b. what c. when d. which

5. Aswan, ... so many beautiful historical monuments have made it a tourist attraction, is also a warm place in cold winter days.
a. where b. which c. that d. whose

6. It is not easy to predict .... will happen if the team lost the Champions' League.
a. which b. that c. what d. how

7. I'd like to have a flat of my own .... I can invite my friends whenever I want.
   a. what b. which c. to which d. with which
8. As a researcher, you should know .... to use the internet very well.
   a. how b. what c. that d. which
9. As a researcher, you should know......... to do to reach good results.
   a. how b. what c. that d. which
10. No one to .... I have spoken is able to answer my question.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. whose
11. We were puzzled by the mysterious guest as no one knew .... he had come or .... he wanted.
   a. how / why b. why / what c. that / how d. when / that
12. It is less hot in the house .... my grandfather built using mud bricks.
   a. which b. where c. in which d. b& c
13. I am grateful to all my friends .... help has saved my life.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. whose

Check your understanding

14. "I admire young people who work hard to reach their goals." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
   a. I admire young people working hard to reach their goals.
   b. I admire young people worked hard to reach their goals.
   c. I admire goals reached by young people worked hard.
   d. I admire young people reaching their goals.
15. "I support the law that was made to protect farmland." This means ....
   a. I support the law making to protect farmland.
   b. I support the law which makes to protect farmland.
   c. I support the law made to protect farmland.
   d. I support making a law to protect farmland.
16. "The secretary who is in this office is skillful." Which of the following gives a similar meaning?
   a. The secretary who worked in this office is skillful.
   b. The secretary working in this office is skillful.
   c. The secretary in this office is skillful.
   d. b & c
17. "I get up late on holidays." This means ....
   a. Holidays are the time when I get up late.
   b. Holidays are the time on which I get up late.
   c. Holidays are the time which is when I get up late.
   d. a, b & c

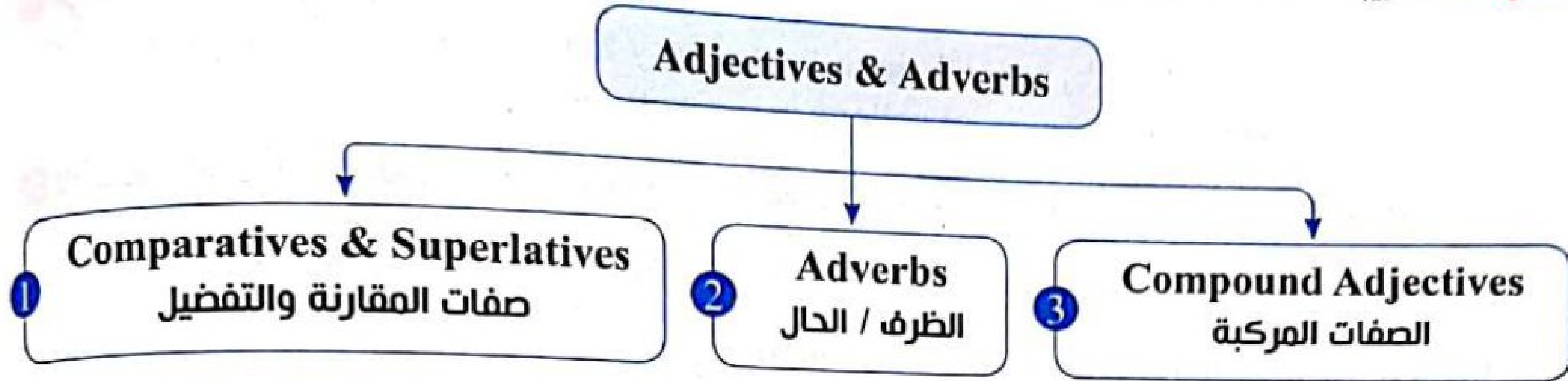
No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	c.	ضمير الوصل الصحيح هنا هو (which) لأنه يعود على مضمون الجملة التي تسبقه (الاعتذار عن الخطأ) وليس على كلمة (mistake) وفي هذه الحالة لا تُستَخدَم (that)
2	b.	في هذه الجملة تم استخدام تعبير الكمية (much) كضمير يعود على كلام الأب، وفي هذه الحالة لابد من استخدام (that) وليس (which)
3	a.	استخدام حرف الجر (of) بعد (Much) جعلها تتحول للفظ تجزئة بعده مما يستلزم وجود اسم بعده، وتقوم عبارة الوصل (what your father said) مقام الاسم
4	d.	يعود الضمير (which) على مضمون الجملة الأولي (أسباب إغلاق المحل) ولا يمكن استخدام (that) بعد حرف جر، كما أن (what) لا تُستخدم كضمير وصل يعود على اسم
5	d.	الآثار التاريخية الكثيرة تخص اسوان، لذلك لابد من استخدام (whose) ووجود صغير المفعول (it) فى عبارة الوصل يجعل من الخطأ إستخدام (which / where)
6	c.	تقوم عبارة الوصل (what will happen) مقام مفعول الفعل (predict)
7	c.	لا توجد (where) بين الإختيارات، وذلك يستلزم استخدام حرف جر مع (which) ووجود الفعل (invite) في عبارة الوصل جعل من الضروري استخدام (to) فنحن نقول (invite ... to)
8	a.	عبارة الوصل هنا تدل على الكيفية فلابد من استخدام (how)
9	b.	استخدام الفعل (do) في عبارة الوصل جعلها تتحدث عن مفعول وليس كيفية فلابد من استخدام (what)
10	b.	يمكن استخدام حروف الجر قبل (whom) وليس (who) أو (that)
11	b.	الثنائية الوحيدة التي تصلح هنا هي (why / what) فالأولي (why) تسأل عن السبب، والثانية (what) تسأل عن مفعول الفعل (want)
12	a.	لأن كلمة (house) هنا مُستخدمة كمفعول للفعل (built) وليست كمكان
13	d.	كلمة (help) هنا اسم بمعني (مساعدة)، وهذه المساعدة تخص (my friends)، لذلك لابد من استخدام (whose)
14	a.	في المبني للمعلوم يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل واستخدام (inf. + ing)
15	c.	في المبني للمجهول يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل والفعل المساعد واستخدام (p.p.)
16	d.	- الاختيار (b): في المبني للمعلوم يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل واستخدام (inf. + ing) - الاختيار (c): عندما يكون (be) فعل أساسي متبوع بحرف جر فيمكن حذفه مع ضمير الوصل
17	d.	جميع الاختيارات صحيحة في هذا السياق لأن: - when = on which = which is when

6 Adjectives & Adverbs

فى هذا القسم :

- نبذة مختصرة عن الصفات وأنواعها وموقعها من الجملة
- شرح مبسط وشامل لصفات المقارنة والتفضيل والتساوى + التدريبات
- عرض فريد يتميز بالبساطة والشمول لأنواع الظرف/الحال مع التركيز على ظروف الكيفية + التدريبات
- ما قل ودل فى الصفات المركبة + التدريبات

ملحوظة: التدريبات تستهدف قياس جميع مستويات التفكير حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم



1 Adjectives, Comparatives & Superlatives الصفات ، المقارنة والتفضيل

Adjectives الصفات

What is an adjective? ما هي الصفة؟

أ الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم:

- Omar has a new tablet.

في المثال السابق الصفة (new) تصف الاسم (tablet)

- This medicine is effective.

في المثال السابق الصفة (effective) بمعني (فعّال) تصف الاسم (This medicine)

ب توضع الصفة في الأماكن التالية:

١. قبل الاسم الموصوف:

- Salma has got long hair.

٢. بعد الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

- be - look/seem/appear/sound يبدو - **taste** يعطي مذاق - **feel** يعطي ملمس - **smell** يعطي رائحة ... etc.

- Ahmed was hungry.
- She looks happy.

٣. بعد الضمائر غير المحددة التالية:

- **someone/somebody/something/somewhere**
- **anyone/anybody/anything/anywhere**
- **everyone/everybody/everything/everywhere**
- **no one/nobody/nothing/nowhere**

- I know somewhere quiet where I relax. (Not: quiet somewhere)

هناك صفات لا تُستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقا مثل:

- afraid خائف - awake مستيقظ - asleep نائم - alone وحيد - alight مُضاء ، alive حيّ

- I know a man who lives alone. (Not: I know an alone man)

Extreme adjectives الصفات القوية

هي صفات ذات معني قوي مثل:

- gigantic ضخم = very big - furious ساخط = very angry
- ancient عتيق = very old - excellent ممتاز = very good

لا تُستخدَم ظروف الدرجة العادية (very – so) قبل الصفات القوية وتُستخدَم بدلاً منها ظروف درجة قوية مثل:

- absolutely بشكل مُطْلَق – utterly / entirely كُلِيًا – completely تماما - really حقاً

- This temple is really ancient. (Not: very ancient)

Absolute adjectives الصفات المُطلقة

هي صفات ذات معني مُطلق (بمعني أنها إما موجودة أو غير موجودة) مثل:

- dead ميت - main أساسي - final نهائي - impossible مستحيل

لا تُستخدم أي ظروف درجة قبل الصفات المُطْلَقَة:

- This decision is extremely final. (✗)
- This decision is final. (✓)

لا تُستخدم الصفات المُطْلَقَة في صيغتي المقارنة والتفضيل:

- This decision is more final than the other one. (✗)
- This decision is final. The other decision is not final. (✓)

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة	Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل
تُستَخدَم صفة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة معينة (بمعني ان أحدهما أكثر أو أقل من الآخر في نفس الصفة): - Sama is taller than Hala. = Hala is tall but Sama is taller. - Mustafa is more intelligent than Nour. = Nour is intelligent but Mustafa is more intelligent.	تُستخدَم صفة للمقارنة بين فرد ومجموعة (الفرد يكون أكثر أو أقل من المجموعة في صفة معينة): - Sama is the tallest girl in her school. - Water is the most valuable liquid. - The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.

التكوين Form	
يتم تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد كالتالي: ١. يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - slow – slower - young – younger ٢. يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - simple – simpler - nice – nicer ٣. يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - big – bigger - thin – thinner	يتم تكوين صفة التفضيل من الصفات القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد كالتالي: ١. يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلى الصفة القصيرة: - slow – the slowest - young – the youngest ٢. يُضاف (the ... + st) فقط إلي الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - simple – the simplest - nice – the nicest ٣. يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلى الصفة القصيرة: - big – the biggest - thin – the thinnest

Adjectives ending in (y)	
يتم تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن بتحويل حرف (y) إلى (ier): - easy – easier - happy – happier	يتم تكوين صفة التفضيل من الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن بتحويل (y) إلى (the ...+ iest): - easy – the easiest - happy – the happiest

Long adjectives	
تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي: - more أكثر + adj. + (than) - less أقل + adj. + (than) - more exciting (than) أكثر إثارة (من) - less exciting(than) أقل إثارة (من)	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي: - the most الأكثر + adj. - the least الأقل + adj. - the most exciting الأكثر إثارة - the least exciting الأقل إثارة

Notes on comparative adjectives ملاحظات على صفات المقارنة	Notes on Superlative adjectives ملاحظات علي صفات التفضيل
١. يُمكن تكوين صيغة المقارنة من الظرف تماماً مثل الصفة: - Sama writes well. - Sama writes better than Soha. - Noha writes badly, but I write worse.	١. يُمكن تكوين صيغة التفضيل من الظرف تماماً مثل الصفة: - Sama writes well. - Sama writes best/the best. - I like fish most/the most.

٢. لاحظ أن بعض الصفات المركبة لها صيغتي مقارنة: - Salah is more well-known than the other team members. - Salah is better-known than the other team members.	٢. لاحظ أن بعض الصفات المركبة لها صيغتي تفضيل: - Salah is the most well-known player in the team. - Salah is the best-known player in the team.
٣. المقطع (er) في نهاية صفة المقارنة يعني أكثر: - To me, English is easier than physics.	٣. المقطع (est) في نهاية صفة التفضيل يعني الأكثر: - Mariam is the tallest student at school. = No other student at school is taller than or as tall as Mariam
٤. عندما نريد أن نقول (أقل) مع الصفات القصيرة فإننا نستخدم (less) قبل الصفة دون إضافة المقطع (er): - To me, physics is less easy than English. (Not: less easier)	٤. لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الاعداد الترتيبية مثل: - the (first / second / third/ fourth...last) - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa. (Not: the first the largest) - Gold is the second most valuable metal. (Not: the second the most)
٥. لا تُستخدم (than) بعد صفة المقارنة إلا عندما يكون الطرف الثاني للمقارنة بعدها: - My car is old, but your car is older. (Not: older than) - This match is exciting. However, yesterday's match was more exciting. (Not: more exciting than)	٥. لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية: - my - his - her - your - our - their - its …..'s - Rahma is Yara's best friend. (Not: Yara's the best friend) - I met her youngest brother. (Not: her the youngest brother)
٦. لتقوية معني صفة المقارنة، يمكن استخدام ظروف الدرجة التالية بمعني (بكثير/جداً) قبلها: - even - much - a lot - far - … - A tortoise is much slower than a rabbit. (Not: much slow than) - This match is exciting. However, yesterday's match was even more exciting. (Not: even exciting than)	٦. تستخدم (most) بدون (the) بمعني (أكثر من أي شيء آخر): - Egypt is most famous for the Pyramids. = Egypt is most famous for the Pyramids.
٧. لتخفيف معني صفة المقارنة، يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية بمعني (قليلاً/بدرجة طفيفة) قبلها: - **slightly** بدرجة طفيفة - **a bit** قليلاً - **a little** قليلاً ... - Ahmed is a bit taller than Ashraf. (Not: a bit tall than)	٧. لاحظ أن: اسم مفرد + in + صفة تفضيل ... – - Omar is the cleverest student in this school. اسم جمع + of + صفة تفضيل ... – - Toqa is the oldest of her sisters.

٨. بعد حرف الجر (than) يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل وضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل: - Youssef looks older than she does. = Youssef looks older than her.	
٩. لاحظ استخدام صيغة (كلما ...... كلما ....) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة: The + صفة مقارنة + جملة السبب , + the + صفة مقارنة + جملة النتيجة - Being fit helps you play well. - The fitter you are, the better you play.	
١٠. يمكن تكرار نفس صفة المقارنة لتقوية معني الصفة: - She is putting more and more weight.	

Irregular Comparative and superlative Forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة

* صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل من الصفات التالية غير منتظمة ولا تتبع القواعد السابقة :

Adj. / adv.	comparative	Superlative
bad سيء badly بشكل سيء	worse أسوأ	the worst الأسوأ
far بعيد	farther أبعد further أبعد / أكثر	the farthest الأبعد the furthest الأبعد / الأكثر
fore سابق / مُسبق	former أسبق	the first الأول
good جيد well بصحة جيدة	better أفضل	the best الأفضل
late متأخر / متأخراً	later أكثر تاخراً latter الآخر / الثاني	the latest الأكثر تأخراً the last الأخير
little قليل الكمية	less اقل	the least الأقل
many كثير العدد much كثير الكمية	more (than) أكثر (من)	the most الأكثر

If you want to have better health, follow a diet and exercise more.
Omar and Ali have so much work, but I have the most work.

2 Expressing equality التعبير عن التساوي

التعبير عن تساوى طرفين فى صفة معينة تُستخدم الصيغة التالية :

-as + adj.الصفة + as

- Nada is as tall as Amira.
- Today is as hot as yesterday.

تستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير لنفى التساوى :

-not + as / so + adj. الصفة + as

- I am not as fast as you. = - I am not so fast as you.

لاحظ أن :

- as + adj. الصفة + as = the same + الإسم من الصفة + as

- She is as young as me. = - She is the same age as me.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same +n…+as) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	size حجم	high / tall	height ارتفاع / عُلوّ / طول
deep	depth عُمْق	long	length طول مسافة أو مدة
expensive/ cheap	price سعر	old / young	age عُمْر
far / near	distance مسافة	strong	strength قوة
fast / quick /slow	speed السرعة	wide	width عَرْض / اتساع

- My school is as near as yours.
= My school is the same distance as yours.

Exercise On Adjectives, Comparatives & Superlatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Walid is 20 centimetres .... his mother. She stretches up when she embraces him.
   a. tall b. taller c. taller than d. less tall than
2. Walid's mother is 20 centimetres .... him. She stretches up when she embraces him.
   a. tall b. taller c. taller than d. less tall than
3. Walid's mother stretches up when she embraces him as he is 20 centimetres ....
   a. tall b. taller c. taller than d. less tall than
4. By nature, Maha is ....
   a. quiet b. quieter than c. quietest d. the quietest
5. Of her three sisters, Maha is ....
   a. quiet b. quieter than c. quietest d. the quietest
6. Maha is .... her two sisters.
   a. quiet b. quieter than c. quietest d. the quietest
7. Maha's two sisters are not so .... as her.
   a. quiet b. quieter c. quietest d. the quietest

8. I know you are clever, but Rodayna is ....
a. clever b. cleverer than c. cleverer d. the cleverest
9. I know Sama and Malak are clever, but Rodayna is .... them both.
a. clever b. cleverer than c. cleverer d. the cleverest
10. Asmaa is .... than her sister Nada. Nada is the shortest member in the family.
a. tall b. more tall c. less tall d. taller
11. Asmaa is .... than her sister Nada. Asmaa is the shortest member in the family.
a. tall b. more tall c. less tall d. taller
12. Asmaa is not so .... as her sister Nada. Asmaa is the shortest member in the family.
a. tall b. more tall c. less tall d. taller
13. Compared to her elder sister, Aya is ....
a. as young b. younger c. younger than d. the youngest
14. Compared to her three elder sisters, Aya is .... one.
a. as young b. younger c. younger than d. the youngest
15. Omar is good at languages, however Ziad is ....
a. good b. well c. better d. the best
16. Moaz is my .... friend. No one is as kind-hearted as him.
a. close b. closer than c. closest d. the closest
17. As a heart surgeon, Professor Magdy Yacoub is .... than any other surgeon.
a. better-known b. more well-known c. a & b d. well-known
18. Moataz is a .... friend.
a. kind-hearted b. kinder-hearted c. more kind-hearted d. best-hearted
19. Moataz is the .... friend.
a. kind-hearted b. kinder-hearted
c. more kind-hearted d. most kind-hearted
20. Moataz is my .... friend. No one is as kind-hearted as him.
a. kind-hearted b. kinder-hearted
c. the most kind-hearted d. most kind-hearted
21. I can't deny that this is my first .... film as a hero.
a. as successful b. the most successful c. most successful d. b & c
22. I can't deny that this is .... film ever for me as a hero.
a. as successful b. the most successful c. most successful d. b & c
23. Gold is .... than silver.
a. much expensive b. a bit expensive
c. even expensive d. even more expensive
24. Yasmeen is .... than Salma.
a. a bit young b. a little young c. even younger d. even youngest
25. Rodayna works harder than ....
a. I do b. I am c. my d. a & b
26. Rodayna is harder at work than ....
a. I do b. I am c. my d. a & b

27. The fatter you are, ... you get tired.
    a. the fastest   b. the faster   c. as fast as   d. faster
28. I arrived ....
    a. late   b. latter   c. the later   d. a & b
29. Omar arrived .... than me.
    a. late   b. latter   c. later   d. the last
30. Hussein was .... to arrive.
    a. late   b. latter   c. later   d. the last
31. I prefer the first of the two solutions. The .... is more difficult to apply.
    a. late   b. latter   c. later   d. the last
32. Which of the following is correctly structured?
    a. Ali is as high as Ahmed.   b. Ali is as taller as Ahmed.
    c. Ali is the same height as Ahmed.   d. Ali is as long as Ahmed.
33. Which of the following is correctly structured?
    a. I have a car old.   b. I have car an old.   c. I have old car.   d. I have an old car.
34. This application is ....
    a. use   b. useful   c. usefully   d. b & c
35. Karim has got ....
    a. helpful friend   b. friend helpful   c. a helpful friend   d. friend helpful
36. Noha is ....
    a. kind   b. a kind   c. kindly   d. kinder than
37. This dish tastes ....
    a. deliciously   b. delicious   c. a & b   d. a delicious
38. She seems .... She must have had bad news.
    a. suddenly   b. sadness   c. sadly   d. sad
39. I need to look for .... to relax and forget about work.
    a. quiet somewhere   b. quietly somewhere
    c. somewhere quiet   d. somewhere noisy
40. Which of the following is correctly structured?
    a. There's nothing different.   b. There's nothing differently.
    c. There's different nothing.   d. There's differently nothing.
41. I felt sorry for the ....
    a. boy afraid   b. afraid boy   c. boy that was afraid   d. boy of afraid
42. Which of the following is correctly structured?
    a. We thought the old man was alive.   b. We thought the old man was live.
    c. We thought he was an alive old man.   d. We thought he was an old alive man.
43. The young man was .... excellent at Spanish.
    a. so   b. very   c. completely   d. a & b
44. The young man was .... good at Spanish.
    a. so   b. very   c. completely   d. a & b

45. "This monument is ancient." This means it is ....
a. very old
b. old
c. very ancient
d. a & c

46. My grandfather is .... dead.
a. very
b. too
c. extremely
d. no adverb

47. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. What you say is very impossible.
b. What you say is impossible.
c. What you say is extremely impossible.
d. What you say is most impossible.

3 Adverbs الظرف / الحال

• What is the difference between an adjective and an adverb?

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم وتأتي قبله أو بعد الأفعال التقريرية كما أشرنا بالتفصيل في شرح الصفات:

- Ahmed is a good friend.
- This meal is delicious.
- Rokaya looks happy.

- الظرف هو كلمة تعبر عن: المكان - الزمان - الدرجة - التكرار - الغرض - الطريقة (الكيفية):

- I found my keys outside. (ظرف مكان)
- I visited my aunt yesterday. (ظرف زمان)
- Ziad is very intelligent. (ظرف درجة)
- Mai usually gets up early. (ظرف تكرار)
- To win the race, you must train hard. (ظرف غرض)
- She walked slowly towards the gate. (ظرف كيفية)

وفيما يلي شرح مبسط لأنواع الظروف:

1 Adverbs of place : ظروف المكان

يُستخدم ظروف المكان للدلالة على مكان الحدث أو الموقف أو الحالة. أمثلة لظروف المكان:

adverb	meaning	example
inside	بالداخل	- I left the keys inside.
outside	بالخارج	- I saw the boys playing outside.
here	هنا	- Here, you will be safe.
there	هناك	- I expect to see him there.
somewhere	في مكان ما	- There must be somewhere to spend the night in.
everywhere	في كل مكان	- I looked for her everywhere.
outdoors	بالخارج	- My father is still outdoors.
indoors	بالداخل	- I don't like to stay indoors.
away	بعيداً	- Don't go away! I am coming soon.
nearby	في مكان قريب	- He lives nearby, so he walks to school.

2 Adverbs of time : ظروف الزمان

تُستخدم ظرف الزمان للدلالة على وقت حدوث الفعل، وغالباً يأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي أيضاً بعد الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة.

أمثلة لظروف الزمان:

adverb	meaning	example
afterwards	فيما بعد	- This problem will be discussed afterwards.
before	من قبل	- I haven't seen her before.
currently	حالياً	- Currently, I am revising for my exams.
now	الآن	- What are you doing now?
still	لا يزال	- She is still here.
today	اليوم	- Today, I am travelling to the USA.
yet	بعد/حتى الآن	- Sama hasn't finished her meal yet.

3 Adverbs of degree : ظروف الدرجة

تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة لتحديد درجة الصفة.

أمثلة لظروف الدرجة:

adverb	meaning	example
absolutely	تماماً	- She is absolutely furious.
completely	بالكامل	- She is completely ready to help.
extremely	للغاية	- It is extremely hot in here.
quite/rather	إلي حد ما	- This flat is quite good. - I found it was rather late, so I didn't call her.
so	إلي تلك الدرجة	- I was so late that I missed my train.
totally	كلياً	- Cairo is totally different from the New Administrative Capital.
utterly	تماماً	- I found it is utterly exhausting to do all that work alone.
very	جداً	- Very good, Rody!

تنويه راجع استخدام ظروف الدرجة مع الصفات القوية والصفات العادية في الجزء الأول من شرح الصفات.

4 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار

تُستخدم ظروف التكرار للدلالة على مدي تكرار الحدث، وتستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل جميع الأفعال ما عدا (be) فتأتي بعده، وأحياناً تأتي بعض هذه الظروف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.
أمثلة لظروف التكرار:

adverb	meaning	example
always	دائماً	- He always works hard. - He is always a hard worker.
usually	عادة	- Mai is usually helpful.
often	غالباً	- I often go to be early.
sometimes	أحياناً	- Sometimes, I have lunch outdoors.
occasionally	بين الحين والآخر	- Mum occasionally does the shopping.
rarely/seldom	نادراً	- She rarely shouts at anybody.
never	أبداً	- He never makes me angry!

وتأتي ظروف مثل التالية غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

- once a day مَرّة كل يوم **- twice a month** مرتين اسبوعياً **- three times a week…etc.**
- every (morning/day/week/year…)

- I get up early every morning.
= Every morning, I get up early.

5 Adverbs of purpose : ظروف الغرض

وهي عبارات ظرفية تبدأ بـ (to + inf.) بمعني (لكي) وتُعبِر عن الغرض و تأتي في البداية أو النهاية:

- He got up early to catch the train.
- To achieve your goals, you should work hard.

6 Adverbs of manner : ظروف الكيفية (الطريقة)

يُستخدم ظرف الكيفية لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل وهو يُمثِل إجابة للسؤال بـ (how) بمعني (كيف):

- Sama speaks loudly. (How Sama speaks)
- Omar behaved well. (How Omar behaved)

يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

- A hare runs quickly.
- Amir carried the box carefully.

2 hard / hardly

تُستخدم (hard) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (صلب - صعب - شاق - جاد):

• **hard - harder - the hardest**

- Wood is a hard material. صلب
- The last exam was really hard. صعب
- I had a hard day at work. شاق
- Thanks to hard work, I passed my exams with full marks. جاد

تُستخدم (hard) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (بجد - بقوة):

• **hard - harder - the hardest**

- He works hard. بجد
- You need to hit the nail hard. بقوة

تُستخدم (hardly) كظرف نفي بمعني (بالكاد/تقريباً لا) وهي تأتي قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد الفعل المساعد الأول:

- I was so frightened that I could hardly speak. بقوة

تُستخدم (hardly) كظرف نفي بمعني (لم يكد) في الصيغة:

• **hardly … when/before …**

- I had hardly arrived home when my mobile rang.

تُستخدم (hardly) كظرف نفي بمعني (تقريبًا لا) في الصيغة:

• **hardly … ever = almost never …**

- She hardly ever goes to the cinema.
= She almost never goes to the cinema.

• **hardly … any/at all = almost … no/not …**

- He has hardly eaten anything today.
= He has almost eaten nothing today.

3 late / lately

• **late - later - the latest**

تُستخدم (late) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (متأخّر)، وبهذا الشكل تأتي قبل الاسم الموصوف أو بعد الأفعال التقريرية مثل (be – seem – look …) :

- Noha was late for the meeting.

تُستخدم (late) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (أواخر/قرب النهاية) - وتأتي قبل الاسم فقط:

- When someone is 28, we say he/she is in the late twenties.

• **late - later – (no superlative)**

تُستخدم (late) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (متأخّراً):

- I arrive at the meeting late.

تُستخدم (later) كظرف بمعني (فيما بعد):

- I have to leave you now. See you later.

تُستخدم (lately) كظرف زمان بمعني (مُؤخراً/حديثاً):

- Mr Walid has called me lately. (= recently)

لاحظ الفرق بين (later) و (latter):

- **later (adv) فيما بعد = after some time**
  - I didn't expect that we would meet 10 years later. (= after 10 years)
- **later (adj) لاحق - تالي**
  - The meeting will be postponed تُؤجَّل to a later meeting.
- **latter (n) الآخر - الثاني**
  - On the train to Aswan, I chatted with two people. One of them is a doctor; the latter is a teacher.

4 most/most of/mostly

تُستخدم (most/most of) كصفة (adjective) بمعني (غالبية/مُعظَم/كل):

- Most people are positive by nature. (= more than 50% of people)
- I spend most of my time at work. (= more than 50% of my time)

تُستخدم (most) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (الأكثر):

- Ali is the most helpful of my friends.
- Most customers like steak, but I prefer chicken most/the most.

تُستخدم (mostly) كظرف (adverb) بمعني (أساساً/عامةً/عادةً):

- I mostly work as a teacher, but I sometimes work as a tour guide.

Important notes on adverbs ملاحظات هامة على الظروف

1. الصفة تصف اسم بينما ظرف الكيفية يصف فعل :

- ... verb فعل + adverb ظرف

- He plays tennis well.

- ... adjective صفة + noun

- He is a good tennis player.

- ... adjective صفة + in / at ... + (inf. + ing)

- He is good at playing tennis.

- ... in + adj. صفة + way / manner.

- He plays tennis in a good way.

2. بعد أداة الاستفهام (how) نستخدم صفة لوصف اسم ونستخدم ظرف لوصف فعل:

- How fluent are you in English?
- How fluently do you speak English?

3. يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام:

more أكثر / less أقل + adv. الظرف + than

- Salah ran more quickly than the defender.
- My wife drives less carefully than I do.

④ لاحظ استخدام ظروف الجملة (**Sentence Adverbs**)، والتي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير معني الجملة بالكامل وغالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة، ومن أمثلة هذه الظروف:

fortunately	لحسن الحظ	surprisingly	من المُدهش
interestingly	من المثير للاهتمام	unexpectedly	بشكل غير متوقع
luckily	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
strangely	من الغريب	unluckily	لسوء الحظ

- Unfortunately, I lost the match.
- Surprisingly, she refused the job offer.

⑤ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- It is + adj.صفة ... = sentence adverb

- It is strange that he was late for the meeting.
= Strangely, he was late for the meeting.

... be + adverb ظرف+ adj. صفة = have + adj. صفة + noun ....

- She is extremely sick. = She has an extreme sickness.

⑥ لاحظ عندما تبدأ الجملة بظروف النفي :

Subject + never / rarely / hardly / no sooner ... + verb ....
= Never / Rarely / Hardly / No sooner/Little + فعل مساعد + subj. + verb ...

- I rarely get up late. = Rarely do I get up late.

Exercise On Adverbs

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You gave a .... reply.
   a. quick b. quickly c. a quick way d. the quickest
2. You replied very ....
   a. quick b. quickly c. a quick way d. the quickest
3. Which of the following is/are correctly structured?
   a. Every day, I help mum. b. I help mum every day. c. a & b d. I help mum everyday.
4. Table tennis is an .... sport.
   a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. indoor
5. We play table tennis ....
   a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. b & c
6. Which of the following is correct?
   a. He moved towards the gate carefully. b. Carefully, he moved towards the gate. c. He moved carefully towards the gate. d. a, b & c
7. He has .... style in drawing.
   a. a well b. well c. good d. a good

④ لاحظ استخدام ظروف الجملة (Sentence Adverbs)، والتي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير
تستخدم في بداية الجملة، ومن أمثلة هذه الظروف:

	لحسن الحظ	surprisingly	من المُدهش
	من المثير للاهتمام	unexpectedly	بشكل غير متوقع
	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
	من الغريب	unluckily	لسوء الحظ

lost the match.
e refused the job offer.

⑤ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

... = sentence adverb

at he was late for the meeting.
was late for the meeting.

erb ظرف+ adj. صفة = have + adj. صفة + noun ....

nely sick. = She has an extreme sickness.

⑥ لاحظ عندما تبدأ الجملة بظروف النفي :

never / rarely / hardly / no sooner ... + verb ....
Rarely / Hardly / No sooner/Little + فعل مساعد + subj. + verb ...

up late. = Rarely do I get up late.

e On Adverbs

he correct answer from a , b , c or d :

ave a .... reply.
ck b. quickly c. a quick way d. the quickest

eplied very ....
ick b. quickly c. a quick way d. the quickest

ch of the following is/are correctly structured?
very day, I help mu... b. I help mum every day.
d. I help mum everyday.
& b

ble tenn... d. indoor
outd...
... d. b & c

...moved towards the gate.

c. good d. a good

8. He draws ....
a. a well b. well c. good d. a good

9. "I almost have no friends." This means ....
a. I have some friends. b. I hardly have any friends.
c. I have several friends. d. I have enough friends.

10. As a secretary, Maha works quite ....
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

11. Maha is a .... working secretary.
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

12. Maha works .... than other secretaries.
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

13. He .... ever stays up late.
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

14. I was treated in a .... way.
a. normal b. normally c. normalise d. normalised

15. I was treated ....
a. normal b. normally c. normalise d. normalised

16. I can do the job in a .... way.
a. difference b. differ c. different d. differently

17. I can do the job ....
a. difference b. differ c. different d. differently

18. Your father is .... proud of you.
a. reality b. real c. really d. b & c

19. Your father takes .... pride in you.
a. reality b. real c. really d. b & c

20. Mr Omar is an .... successful businessman.
a. extreme b. extremes c. extremity d. extremely

21. We have to adapt to .... weather.
a. extreme b. extremes c. extremity d. extremely

22. I promised to talk to her .... that day.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c

23. We have met twice .... to discuss the next step.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. b & c

24. I have two cousins. One is a student and the .... is a new graduate.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c

25. I have .... achieved some of my goals.
a. certain b. certainly c. uncertain d. certainty

26. How .... did she behave?
a. will b. well c. good d. a good

27. How .... was her behaviour?

a. will b. well c. good d. a good

28. "I love my mother more than anybody else." This means ....

a. of all people, I love my mother most
b. of all people, I love my mother the most
c. a & b
d. of all people, I love my mother the more

29. The presenter spoke .... to his audience.

a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively

30. The presenter knew how to .... his audience.

a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively

31. The audience were really .... by the presenter's style.

a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively

32. The presentation was really .... to his audience.

a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively

33. "We do our best at school." What does this mean?

a. We work hard.
b. We hardly work.
c. We work hardly.
d. We have to work hard.

34. I .... lunch outdoors.

a. have rarely b. rarely have c. am rarely d. rarely am

35. I .... out for lunch.

a. have rarely b. rarely have c. am rarely d. rarely am

36. "He is a good writer." This means ....

a. he is good at writing
b. he writes good
c. he writes well
d. a & c

4 Compound Adjectives الصفات المركّبة

يمكن تقسيم الصفات المُرَكَّبة إلى أربع تصنيفات رئيسية:



1. **Starting with numbers** صفات مركبة تبدأ برقم
   - I have a two-year-old daughter
2. **Starting with adjectives** صفات مركبة تبدأ بصفة
   - He wears old-fashioned clothes.
3. **Starting with adverbs** صفات مركبة تبدأ بظرف
   - Khalid is a never-to-be-forgotten leader.
4. **Starting with a noun** صفات مركبة تبدأ باسم
   - Egypt is an Arabic-speaking country.

5 Compound adjective starting with numbers الصفات المركبة مع الأرقام

1 رقم + اسم مفرد + صفة وبينهم (-) وبعدهم الاسم الموصوف:

- Amira has a two-year-old child. (Not: ~~two-years-old~~)
- Amira has a child who is two years old. (عبارة تكميلية)
- She crossed the 10-metre-wide street. (Not: ~~the ten metres wide~~)
- She crossed the street which is 10 metres wide. (عبارة تكميلية)

2 رقم + اسم مفرد وبينهما (-) وبعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- Leen stayed in a five-star hotel. (Not: ~~five-stars~~)
- He won the 100-metre race. (Not: ~~hundred-metres~~)

3 رقم + اسم جمع بدون (-) بينهما، وفي هذه الحالة ينتهي الجمع المنظم بـ (s') والجمع غير المنتظم بـ ('s) ولا تُستخدَم (a/an) قبلهما:

- After my five hours' drive, I was exhausted. (Not: a five hours')

6 Compound adjective starting with adjectives الصفات المركبة التي تبدأ بـ (صفة)

هناك ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المركبة التي تبدأ بصفة وهي :

1. **1. adj. + p.p.**
   - Mai has a deep-seated love for her mother.
2. **2. adj. + -ing**
   - Omar is a good-looking man.
3. **3. adj. + noun**
   - Mr Ahmed has a full-time job.

1 adj. صفة + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + تصريف ثالث)

absent-minded	شارد الذهن/كثير النسيان	solar-powered	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
big-eared	كبير الأذنين	middle-aged	في منتصف العمر
clear-cut	بَيّن/ مُحَدَّد ، مُعَيَّن/ وَاضح	narrow-minded	ضيق الأفق/مُنغَلَق
deep-seated	مُتَأصّل/ مُتَجذِّر	old-fashioned	قديم/عفا عليه الزمن
green-eyed	أخضر العينين	open-minded	واسع الأفق/مُنفتح
high-spirited	ذو معنويات مرتفعة	quick-witted	سريع البديهة
kind-hearted	طيب القلب	red-handed	متلبس بجريمة
long-heard	طويل الشعر	short-haired	قصير الشعر
long-nosed	طويل الأنف	short-sighted	لديه قِصَر نظر
long-sighted	لديه طول نظر	strong-willed	قوي العزيمة
good natured	ودود / لين الجانب	tight-fisted	بخيل
long-awaited	طال انتظاره		

- I need a clear-cut answer to this question.
- We celebrated the long-awaited news of my son's success.
- I bought a solar-powered bulb.

2 adj. صفة + (inf. + ing.)

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + صيغة اسم الفعل)

angry-looking	يبدو عليه الغضب	life-changing	يؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة
easy-going	مَرِن	long-lasting	يدوم لفترة طويلة
far-reaching	بعيد المَدَى	slow-moving	بطيء الحركة
good-looking	جذاب/حسن المظهر		

- Joining El-Moasser team has been a life-changing experience.
- A tortoise is a slow-moving animal.
- Mr Ayman is an easy-going manager.

3 adj. صفة + noun.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + اسم)

full-length	كامل	modern-day	مُعاصِر/حديث
full-time	بدوام كامل	part-time	جزئي (لبعض الوقت)
last-minute	في اللحظة الأخيرة	public-action	خاص بالحِراك الاجتماعي
long-distance	طويل المسافة	real-life	حقيقي
long-term	طويل المدي	second-hand	مُستعمَل

- Ahmed likes modern-day fashion.
- Rodayna made some last-minute changes.
- Sama found a part-time job.
- Abdulrahman watched a full-length video.

7 Compound adjective starting with adverbs الصفات المُركَّبة التي تبدأ بـ(ظرف)

هناك نوعان رئيسيان من الصفات المُرَكَّبة التي تبدأ بظرف وهي:

1 **1. adv. + p.p.**
- He is a well-balanced person.

2 **2. adv. + -ing**
- Mr Ayman is a forward-thinking manager.

1 adv. ظرف + P.P.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + تصريف ثالث)

badly-written	مكتوب بشكل سيء	well-educated	مُتعلِّم جيداً
densely-populated	كثيف السُكّان	well-informed	مُطَّلِع
highly-respected	يحظى باحترام كبير	well-known	معروف/مشهور
well-balanced	جيد التوازن - مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	well-paid	ذو أجر مرتفع
well-behaved	حَسَن السلوك	widely-spoken	يتم التَحَدُّث بها على نطاق واسع

- English is a widely-spoken language.
- I don't like this badly-written essay.
- Mr Nasser is a well-informed teacher.

2 adv. ظرف + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + صيغة اسم الفعل)

never-ending	دائم	everlasting	دائم
forward-thinking	سابق في التفكير/سابق لعصره		

- Housewives know well that housework is a never-ending task.
- We believe in everlasting life after death.

8 Compound adjective starting with nouns الصفات المُركّبة التي تبدأ بـ(اسم)

هناك أربعة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المُرَكّبة التي تبدأ باسم وهي:

1. **noun + p.p.**
   - Mr Walid is a middle-aged man.

2. **noun + -ing**
   - He drove at a life-threatening speed.

3. **noun + adj.**
   - It is better for me to follow a fat-free diet.

4. **noun + noun**
   - She has a part-time job.

1 noun. اسم + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + التصريف الثالث)

sun-baked	مُجفَّف بالشمس	left-handed	أعسر / يستخدم اليد اليسرى
child-wanted	محبوب من الأطفال	right-handed	يستخدم اليد اليمنى
man-made	من صُنع الإنسان	heart-broken	حزين / منفطر القلب
middle-aged	في منتصف العُمر		

- Sama is a left-handed girl.
- Pollution is a man-made problem.

2 noun. اسم + -ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + صيغة اسم الفعل)

English-speaking	مُتَحَدِّث باللغة الإنجليزية	record-breaking	مُحطِّم الرقم القياسي
labour-saving	مُوفِّر للعمالة	thought-provoking	مثير للتفكير
mouth-watering	مُسيل للعاب/شهيّ /لذيذ	time-saving	موفِّر للوقت

- The table was covered with mouth-watering dishes.
- It was a thought-provoking quiz.
- To achieve your tasks quickly, follow these time-saving techniques.

3 noun. اسم + adjective.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + صفة)

ice-cold	في برودة الثلج	brand-new	جديد تمامًا
world-famous	ذو شهرة عالمية	self-reliant	مُعتمِد على نفسه
fat-free	خالي من الدهون	self-centred	أناني
smoke-free	ممنوع التدخين فيه		

- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer fat-free food.
- Salah is a world-famous footballer.
- I can't live in the ice-cold weather of Canada.

4 noun. + noun.

- The apple-pie order will be delivered in half an hour.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

❶ تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) والتي تُسمَّى (hyphen) لتفصل بين أجزاء الصفة المُركَّبة فقط إذا كانت هذه الصفة المُركَّبة قبل الاسم الموصوف، أما إذا لم يأت الاسم الموصوف بعدها فلا نستخدم (-):

- Mohammed Salah is a well-known footballer.
- As a footballer, Mohammed Salah is well known.
- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer fat-free food.
- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer food which is fat free.

❷ لا تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الظرف (very) والصفة التي تليه حتى وإن جاء بعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- Ahmed is a very-clever student. (✗)
- Ahmed is a very clever student. (✓)

❸ لا تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الظرف المنتهي بـ (ly) والصفة التي تليه حتى وإن جاء بعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- This is a naturally-dug cave. (✗)
- This is a naturally dug cave. (✓)

لكن تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) والصفة التي تليها إذا سبقت الاسم فقط:

- It is a friendly-looking dog. (✓)
- It is a friendly looking dog. (✗)

ومن أمثلة الصفات المنتهية بـ (ly) ما يلي:

brotherly	أُخَوِيّ	friendly	ودود
costly	غالي/مُكَلِف	heavenly	سَمَاوِيّ- فِردَوسِيّ- مُبهِج
cowardly	جبان	monthly	شهري
elderly	كبير السِنّ	yearly	سنوي

❹ بعض الصفات المُرَكَّبة لها أكثر من صيغة مقارنة وتفضيل، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good-looking	better-looking OR more good-looking	best-looking OR most good-looking
well-known	better-known OR more well-known	best-known OR most well-known

- She is more good-looking than her sister. (✓)
- She is better-looking than her sister. (✓)

❺ تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين أجزاء الصفة المُرَكَّبة التي تتكون من أكثر من كلمتين عندما تسبق الاسم الموصوف:

- Ali is a twelve year old student. (✗)
- Ali is a twelve-year-old student. (✓)

❻ تُستَخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين أجزاء بعض الصفات المُرَكَّبة حتى وإن لم يأت بعدها الموصوف تجنبًا لغموض المعني:

- My tablet is up to date. (✗)
- My tablet is up-to-date. (✓)

❼ لا يُجمَع الاسم بعد الرقم إذا كانا جزء من صفة مُرَكَّبة:

- He went on a two-weeks holiday. (✗)
- He went on a two-week holiday. (✓)

Exercise On Compound Adjective

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Barcelona is a world .... sports club.
   a. fame b. -fame c. famous d. -famous
2. Seas and oceans are never .... sources of fish.
   a. end b. ended c. -ending d. ending
3. "Sama is five years old." This means that ....
   a. Sama is five year old. b. Sama is five -year-old.
   c. Sama is five -years- old. d. Sama is a five-year-old girl.
4. This left .... footballer is talented.
   a. -legged b. legged c. legging d. -legging
5. This bus is smoke ....
   a. -freely b. freely c. free d. -free
6. I booked a ticket in a smoke .... bus.
   a. -freely b. freely c. free d. -free
7. This application is ....
   a. up to date b. up-to date c. up-to-date d. a & c
8. Mr Ashraf is ....
   a. good-educated b. good educated c. well educated d. well-educated
9. Mr Ashraf is a .... young man.
   a. good-educated b. good educated c. well educated d. well-educated
10. He is an old .... man. He is ninety.
    a. age b. -age c. aged d. -aged
11. He has a strong will. He is ....
    a. strong-willed b. strong willed c. strong-will d. strong will
12. He has a strong will. He is a .... man.
    a. strong-willed b. strong willed c. strong-will d. strong will
13. She has a three - .... holiday each month.
    a. day b. day's c. days d. days'
14. She has a holiday for three .... each month.
    a. day b. day's c. days d. days'
15. She can't see faraway things; she is short ....
    a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting
16. She can't see faraway things; she is a short .... woman.
    a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting
17. Everyone knows that Mr Baleigh is a .... gentleman.
    a. good-looked b. well-looked c. good-looking d. good looking

18. Everyone knows that Mr Baleigh is ....
a. good-looked b. well-looked c. good-looking d. good looking
19. Sama is my .... daughter.
a. six-year-old b. six year old c. six-years-old d. six years old
20. Sama, my daughter, is ....
a. six -year-old b. six year old c. six -years-old d. six years old
21. I think she will finish the report in an .... time.
a. hours b. hours' c. hour's d. hours's
22. This essay is ....
a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written
23. This is a .... essay.
a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written
24. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. Rodayna is wide eye. b. Rodayna is eye wide.
c. Rodayna is a wide-eyed girl. d. Rodayna is an eye-wided girl.
25. Britain is an English .... kingdom.
a. -spoken b. -speaking c. spoken d. speaking
26. English is widely......... .
a. -spoken b. -speaking c. spoken d. speaking
27. English is a widely......... language.
a. -spoken b. -speaking c. spoken d. speaking
28. Being a/an .... father, he allows his children to make their own choices.
a. narrow-minded b. absent-handed c. open-minded d. red-handed
29. Which of the following is NOT a compound adjective?
a. Old-aged b. Multinational c. Kind-hearted d. Clear-cut
30. She is a blue .... Spanish girl.
a. -eyed b. eyed c. eyes d. -eyes
31. She's blue ....
a. -eyed b. eyed c. eyes d. b & c
32. She is getting married in two .... time.
a. week b. weeks c. week's d. weeks'
33. I bought a second .... water pipe.
a. -hand b. hand c. handed d. -handing
34. He is a .... looking boxer.
a. friendly b. friendly- c. impressed d. impressive
35. He is .... looking.
a. friendly b. friendly- c. impressed d. impressive
36. I had .... by the Nile.
a. a two-hour walk b. two-hours' walk c. a & b d. two-hour walk

so / such ... that; enough / too ... to

1 so ... that ...   جدًا لدرجة ان ...

① تُستخدم (so ... that) وبينهما صفة أو ظرف بين بمعني (... جداً لدرجة أن ...) :

... so + adj. صفة + that + جملة

- Sama is so young that she can't look after herself.
- Mohammed got so tired that he slept in his chair.

... so + adv. ظرف + that + جملة

- He ran so quickly that he broke the world record.

② تُستخدم (so) وليس (such) قبل (many / much / little / few) :

... so + many / much / little / few + (adj. صفة) + noun ...

- I don't know why you have so many books in your bag.
- My wife has eaten so little food and I've eaten so much!

③ تُستخدم (so much) وليس (so) فقط قبل صفات المقارنة :

... so much + comp. صفة مقارنة

- Salah is so much faster that he always manages to reach the ball first.

ملاحظة عامة : لا يُمكن أن تُستخدَم (very ... that) بدلاً من (so ... that)

④ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (... so) كجزء من الصيغة (So ... that) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد / ناقص قبل الفاعل:

- So + adj. / adv. + ناقص / فعل مساعد + فاعل + that ...

- He spoke so angrily that everybody left the office.
= So angrily did he speak that everybody left the office.
- I was so late for school that I found the gate closed.
= So late was I for school that I found the gate closed.

⑤ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (... so) كجزء من الصيغة (So ... that) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد / ناقص قبل الفاعل:

- So + adj. / adv. + ناقص / فعل مساعد + فاعل + that ...

- He spoke so angrily that everybody left the office.
= So angrily did he speak that everybody left the office.
- I was so late for school that I found the gate closed.
= So late was I for school that I found the gate closed.

2 such ... that ...   جدًا لدرجة ان ...

① لاحظ استخدام (such ... that) :

... such a / an + adj. صفة + اسم مفرد + that ...

- Sama is such a young girl that she can't go out on her own.
- My grandmother is such an old woman that she can't walk.

so / such ... that; enough / too ... to

1 so ... that ... جداً لدرجة ان ...

❶ تُستخدم (so ... that) وبينهما صفة أو ظرف بين بمعنى (... جداً لدرجة أن ...) :

... so + adj. صفة + that + جملة

- Sama is so young that she can't look after herself.
- Mohammed got so tired that he slept in his chair.

... so + adv. ظرف + that + جملة

- He ran so quickly that he broke the world record.

❷ تُستخدم (so) وليس (such) قبل (many / much / little / few) :

... so + many / much / little / few + (adj. صفة) + noun ...

- I don't know why you have so many books in your bag.
- My wife has eaten so little food and I've eaten so much!

❸ تُستخدم (so much) وليس (so) فقط قبل صفات المقارنة :

... so much + comp. صفة مقارنة so ...

- Salah is so much faster that he always manages to reach the ball first.

ملاحظة هامة : لا يُمكن أن تُستخدَم (very ... that) بدلاً من (so ... that)

❹ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (... so) كجزء من الصيغة (So ... that) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد / ناقص قبل الفاعل:

- So + adj. / adv. + فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل + that ...

- He spoke so angrily that everybody left the office.
= So angrily did he speak that everybody left the office.
- I was so late for school that I found the gate closed.
= So late was I for school that I found the gate closed.

❺ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (... so) كجزء من الصيغة (So ... that) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد / ناقص قبل الفاعل:

- So + adj. / adv. + فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل + that ...

- He spoke so angrily that everybody left the office.
= So angrily did he speak that everybody left the office.
- I was so late for school that I found the gate closed.
= So late was I for school that I found the gate closed.

2 such ... that ... جدًا لدرجة ان ...

❶ لاحظ استخدام (such ... that) :

... such a / an + adj. صفة + اسم مفرد + that ...

- Sama is such a young girl that she can't go out on her own.
- My grandmother is such an old woman that she can't walk.

... such + adj. صفة + اسم جمع / اسم غير معدود + that ...

- They are such good friends that I can't imagine life without them.
- Such good advice will solve all your problems.

... such + اسم ...

- Don't trust such a thief.

... such + اسم + that + جملة

- Nasser was such a leader that nearly all people liked him.

لاحظ أن الاسم الذي يُستخدم بدون صفة بين (such ... that) لابد أن يوحي معناه بصفة معينة سواء إيجابية أو سلبية، من الأسماء التي تُستخدم في هذه الحالة ما يلي:

- gentleman رجل نبيل - genius شخص عبقري – cutie / cutey شخص جذّاب
- coward شخص جبان - fool شخص أحمق - idiot شخص أبلَه - liar شخص كذاب
- jerk شخص احمق

- He is such a fool that even a child can deceive him.
= He was such a foolish person that even a child can deceive him.
= He is so foolish that even a child can deceive him.

لاحظ استخدام (so) بالمقارنة بـ (such) في الصيغة التالية:

- such + a\an + adj. + اسم مفرد يُعد + that ...
= so + adj. + a\an + اسم مفرد يُعد + that ...

ملحوظة: تستخدم هذه الصيغة فقط مع اسم مفرد يُعَد، وليس مع اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد:

- He is such an intelligent person that we all admire him.
= He is so intelligent a person that we all admire him.

إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Such ...) كجزء من الصيغة (Such ... that) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد / ناقص قبل الفاعل:

- Such+ adj. / adv. + اسم + فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل + that ...

- Such an intelligent person is he that we all admire him.

Exercise **On so/such**

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rodayna has .... long hair that some girls at school are jealous of it.
   a. so b. such a c. such d. a
2. He is .... intelligent that he wins all maths competitions.
   a. very b. such c. to d. so
3. El-Moasser is .... good book that most students study and revise using it.
   a. such b. such a c. so d. too
4. I am so .... that I can't go on working. I'll have to leave the office right now.
   a. tired b. a tired c. a tired person d. tired person
5. We all have enjoyed such ....
   a. weather b. good weather c. a good weather d. a & b
6. She drives .... slowly that I don't think she will arrive in time.
   a. such b. so c. too d. enough
7. He has .... helpful friends that he regards them as his brothers.
   a. such b. such a c. so d. as

8. She is carrying .... many books that her hands ache.
a. very b. such c. so d. enough
9. My father is .... a hero . He took part in the 1973 War.
a. so b. too c. such d. enough
10. Mr Nasser is so popular with students .... they all love and respect him.
a. to b. so c. too d. that
11. He is .... a coward that he runs away from a cat.
a. so b. such c. enough d. too
12. Rokaya works so ....that everyone appreciates her efforts.
a. hard b. a hard c. hardly d. hardness
13. Don't shout at so little .... He will hate you.
a. a child b. child c. children d. a children
14. She was so .... that she ate six sandwiches.
a. hunger b. hungry c. hungry girl d. hungrily
15. Mr Ashraf is .... man that you can trust him.
a. such a b. such an c. such the d. so
16. Mr Ashraf is .... man that you can trust.
a. such b. such an c. so d. such the
17. I have .... much homework that I can't go out with my friends.
a. such b. enough c. so d. very
18. I enjoy his company. صُحْبة He is .... great man.
a. too b. so c. such a d. such
19. He was so late .... a taxi.
a. to take b. not to take c. that takes d. that he had to take
20. .... valuable information will help us a lot.
a. So b. Such c. Such a d. A very
21. She has .... few friends that she feels lonely.
a. so b. such c. such a d. enough
22. We all admire .... polite a girl.
a. these b. such a c. such d. so
23. Wake up, Mohammed. You have slept .... much.
a. enough b. so c. such d. such very
24. Sama is such a clever student .... first.
a. that she comes b. she comes c. comes d. to come
25. The teacher explained the lesson .... we all understood it well.
a. very easily that b. so easy that c. so easily that d. such easily that

Extra Exercises On so/such

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريبات خاصة على القواعد تضعه في أجواء اسئلة مستويات التفكير المختلفة التي تقيس نواتج التعلم التي يُركز عليها واضعي الامتحانات، وهذه التدريبات لها دليل إجابات مصحوب بالشرح والتفسير.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They both are .... runners that they are the first contenders منافسين for the gold medal.
a. such quick b. so quick a c. such a quick d. b & c

2. He is .... runner that he is the first contender for the gold medal.
   a. such quick b. so quick a c. such a quick d. b & c
3. He runs .... runner that he is the first contender for the gold medal.
   a. so quickly b. so quick a c. such a quick d. such quickly
4. I have .... little time left.
   a. such b. enough c. so d. too
5. Mariam is .... taller than her mother.
   a. so b. so much c. enough d. a & b
6. So old .... up that I couldn't recognise her.
   a. she grows b. she grew c. does she grow d. did she grow
7. I don't believe .... liar.
   a. such a b. such c. so d. too
8. I don't believe .... liars.
   a. such a b. such c. so d. too

Check your understanding

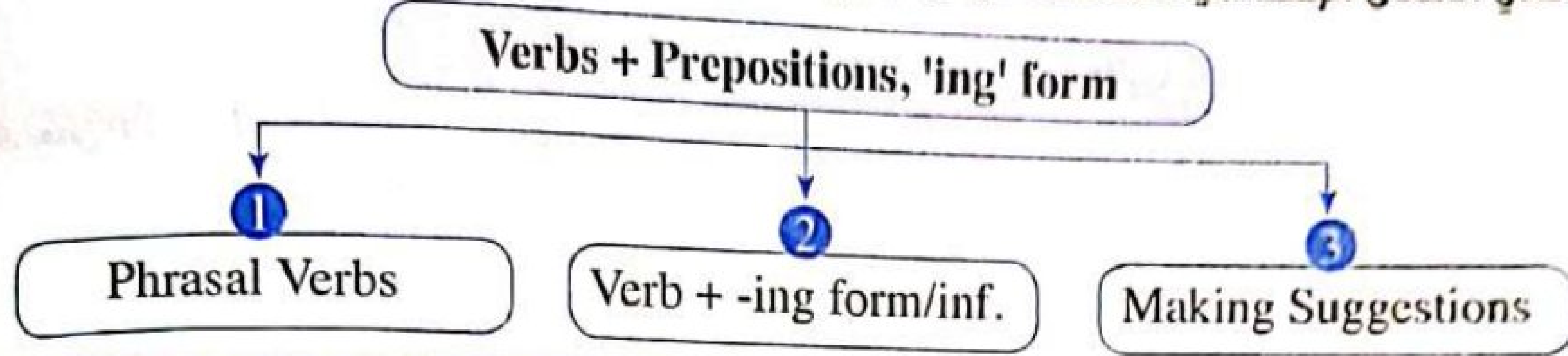
9. "He was such a coward that he ran away leaving me alone." This means he was .... that he ran away leaving me alone.
   a. such coward b. such cowardly c. so coward d. so cowardly
10. .... that so many young people asked her father if they could marry her.
   a. Such a good girl Esraa is b. Such a good girl is Esraa
   c. Esraa is so good a girl d. b & c

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	a.	لا يمكن استخدام (quick a) أو (a quick) قبل الإسم الجمع (runners)
2	d.	يمكن استخدام (so + quick a) و (such a quick) قبل الإسم المفرد (runner)
3	a.	- لابد من استخدام الظرف (quicky) وليس الصفة (quick) بعد (so) لأن الموصوف هنا فعل (runs) - لا يمكن استخدام ظرف بين (such ... that)
4	c.	تستخدم (so) وليس (such) قبل الإسم المسبوق بـ much – many – little – few) - لا تُستخدم (enough) قبل الصفة - لا تُستخدم (too) قبل صفة يتبعها اسم
5	b.	- لا تُستخدم (enough) قبل الصفة - تُستخدم (so much) وليس (so) قبل صفات المقارنة
6	d.	- إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (... so) فلابد أن يأتي فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل، ولا يُمكن استخدام (does she grow) لمخالفتها لزمن الجملة
7	a.	- لا تُستخدم (so / too) قبل اسم - لا تُستخدم (such) بدون (a / an) قبل اسم مفرد معدود
8	b.	- لا تُستخدم (so / too) قبل اسم - لا تُستخدم (such a) قبل اسم جمع
9	d.	- الاختيار (a) خطأ لعدم وجود (a) بعد (such) قبل الإسم المفرد (coward) - الاختيار (b) خطأ لأن الصفة (cowardly) لا تُستخدم بدون اسم بعد (such) - الاختيار (c) خطأ لأن الإسم (coward) لا يُستخدَم بعد (so)
10	d.	- الاختيار (a) خطأ لأن استخدام (such) في بداية الجملة يستلزم تقديم الفعل (is) على الفاعل (Esraa) وهو ما تحقق في الاختيار (b) - الاختيار (c) صحيح لأنه يمكن استخدام (so + adj.) ثم (a) وبعدها اسم مفرد

7 Verbs & Prepositions

في هذا القسم:

- الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها صيغة (ing) وتلك التي يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)
- الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها صيغة (ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعني
- الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها صيغة (ing) أو (to + inf.) مع وجود فرق في المعني
- صيغ أخري مرتبطة بصيغة (ing) أو (to + inf.)
- تدريبات علي جميع ما سبق تستهدف قياس جميع مستويات التفكير حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم
- عرض جديد لجميع الأفعال الاصطلاحية التي وردت في المنهج
- تدريبات علي الأفعال الاصطلاحية تستهدف قياس جميع مستويات التفكير حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم



1 Phrasal Verbs الأفعال الإصطلاحية

١ هل كل فعل يتبعه حرف جر أو ظرف أو كليهما يُعتبر فعلاً اصطلاحياً؟

- بالتأكيد لا. لاحظ المثال التالي:

- I go to school on foot.

- في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (go) بمعناه الاصلي (يذهب)، ولم يُؤثِّر حرف الجر (to) على معناه، فهو هنا لا يُعتبَر فعلاً اصطلاحيا.

٢ متي يُعتبر الفعل الذي يتبعه حرف جر أو ظرف أو كليهما فعلاً اصطلاحياً؟

- عندما يُغيِّر حرف الجر أو الظرف أو كليهما المعني الأصلي للفعل، لاحظ المثال التالي:

- I want you to go on, Ahmed. You're doing very well.

- في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (go on) بمعني (يستمر)، فلقد غيَر حرف الجر (on) معنى الفعل، فهو هنا يُعتبَر فعلاً اصطلاحيا.

- I want to know what is going on, Ahmed?

- في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (go on) بمعني (يَحْدُث)، فلقد غيَر حرف الجر (on) معنى الفعل، فهو هنا يُعتبَر فعلاً اصطلاحيا.

٣ مما يتكون الفعل الاصطلاحي؟

- يُمكن أن يتكون الفعل الاصطلاحي من:

- **... verb فعل + preposition حرف جر**
- I called on my sister in her new flat. (زُرْت)
- **... verb فعل + preposition حرف جر + preposition حرف جر**
- How did you find out about our plan? (يكتشف)
- **... verb فعل + adverb ظرف**
- I picked up a flower and gave it my mother. (قطفت)
- I picked a flower up and gave it my mother.
- **... verb فعل + adverb ظرف + preposition حرف جر**
- Young people look up to role models. (يقتدي بـ)

Separable and Inseparable phrasal verbs :
الأفعال الاصلاحية التى يمكن فصلها والتى لا يمكن فصلها :

1 هناك بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية التي يمكن معها أن يوضع الاسم (noun) بين الفعل وحرف الجر وتعطي نفس المعني مثل:

- A strong man broke down the rock. (حطّم)
= A strong man broke the rock down the rock. (حطّم)
- Can you turn up the sound? I can't hear it. (يرفع)
= Can you turn the sound up? I can't hear it. (يرفع)
- I turned off the camera. (يطفئ)
= I turned the camera off. (يطفئ)

2 هناك بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية التي يمكن معها أن يوضع الاسم (noun) بين الفعل وحرف الجر وتعطي معني مختلف مثل:

- I will try to pick up this weight. (يرفع)
- I will try to pick my aunt up from the airport. (يُحضِر من)

3 هناك بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية التي لا يمكن فصلها (أي لا يوضع الاسم (noun) بين الفعل وحرف الجر):

- She applied the job for. (✗)
- She applied for the job. (✓)
- Let's look into other ways of having a virtual meeting. (✓)
- Let's look other ways of having a virtual meeting into. (✗)
- I need to catch up with my homework this evening. (✓)
- I need to catch my homework up with this evening. (✗)

Transitive phrasal verbs : الفعل الاصطلاحى المتعدى :

الفعل الاصطلاحي المُتعدّي يأخذ مفعولاً أو أكثر، مثل:

- I threw away the empty bottle. (يلقي/يرمي)
= I threw the empty bottle away. (يلقي/يرمي).

أين يُوضع مفعول الفعل الاصطلاحي؟

يتم تحديد مكان مفعول الفعل الاصطلاحي حسب القواعد التالية:

1 إذا كان المفعول اسم فإنه غالباً يوضع بعد الفعل الاصطلاحي بالكامل (أي بعد حرف الجر أو الظرف):

- She is looking the baby after. (✗)
- She is looking after the baby. (✓)

- لكن في بعض الحالات يُمكِن وضع الاسم قبل أو بعد حرف الجر:

- I took my jacket off. (✓)
= took off my jacket. (✓)

2 إذا كان المفعول ضمير فإنه في الغالب يوضع بعد الفعل الاصطلاحي بالكامل (أي بعد حرف الجر أو الظرف):

- I have been looking him after for six hours. (✗)
- I have been looking after him for six hours. (✓)

- لكن في بعض الحالات لابد أن يوضع الضمير بين الفعل وحرف الجر أو الظرف:

- Mum wakes up me. (✗)
- Mum wakes me up. (✓)

Intransitive phrasal verbs : الفعل الاصطلاحي اللازم :

- الفعل الاصطلاحي اللازم لا يأخذ مفعول:

- I will go back. (أعود)
- Look out! You are going to step on broken glass. (انتبه)

- بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية تكون لازمة بمعني ومتعدية بمعني آخر — لاحظ مثلاً كيفية استخدام الفعل (take off) في الأمثلة التالية:

- The plane took off at 16:20. (أقلعت الطائرة - فعل لازم)
- I took off my coat. (خلعت المعطف - فعل متعدي)

All phrasal verbs from units (1 – 12)

جميع الأفعال الاصطلاحية في النسخة النهائية لمنهج الصف الثالث الثانوي (٩٨ فعل اصطلاحي)

adapt to	يتأقلم/يتكيَّف مع	look at	يفحص - يُحلِّل
addict to	يُدمِن	look back	ينظر للخلف - يعيد التفكير في
apply for	يتقدم بطلب للحصول علي	look for	يبحث عن
ask ... for	يطلب من ... أن	look into	يبحث - يَدرِس- يتحقق من
believe in	يؤمن بـ	look up to ...	يقتدي بـ
belong to	يخص/ينتمي إلي	make up	يؤلِّف/يختلق
break down	يتحلل - يتعطل	meet up (with)	يلتقي بـ
bring/take back	يُعيد	miss out on	يُفوِّت - يُضيِّع
call on	يَزور	move away from	يُعزِّل من/ينتقل بعيداً من
care about	يهتم بـ	move on to	ينتقل إلي
carry on = go on	يستمر في	name ... after	يُسمِّي ... على اسم
carry out	يُنفِّذ/يقوم بـ	pass on/down	ينتقل - يُورِّث
catch up with	يلحق بـ - يواكب	pick up	يشتري - يلتقط -يُحضر (شخص من مكان)
clear off	يفرّ - يزول/ينقشع		
come across	يصادف - يجد بالصدفة	prefer ... to	يفضل ... علي
come over	يزور	pull ... out	ينتزع/يستخرج
come through	يظهر - يبدو	put ... away	يضع ... في مكانه
come up (with)	يظهر - يحدُث - يأتي (بـ)	reach up	يبسط - يمد- يتعلق
contribute to/ towards	يُساهِم في	react to	يستجيب لـ
cope with	يواجه - يساير	reduce ... into	يختصر ... إلي
depend on	يعتمد علي	refer ... to	يُحيل ... إلي
die out	ينقرض/يندثر	relate to	يتعلق بـ
dig out	يستخرج/ ينقب عن	respond to	يرد علي
dig up	يستخرج - يُنقِّب عن	result in	يؤدي إلي/ يَخلُص إلي
end up as	ينتهي به الحال إلي	run out (of)	ينفد (ما لديه من)
end up in	ينتهي به المطاف في	search for	يبحث عن
find out (about)	يكتشف/يعرف (عن)	set off(to)	ينطلق (إلي)
get ... to	يُوصِّل ... إلي	set up	يضبط - يُنشئ
get off	ينزل من	sign up	يُسجِّل (على موقع أو تطبيق)

get on	يركب / يستقل وسيلة مواصلات	slow down	يُبطئ - يقلل سرعة
		speak/talk to	يتحدث إلى
give out	يوزّع	stay up	يسهر
give up	يستسلم - يتخلى عن - يتوقف عن	stick to	يلتزم بـ ...
		stop ... from	يمنع ... من ...
go on	يَحدُث - يستمر	stretch out	يتمدد
go out	يَخرُج	succeed in	ينجح في
go up	يصعد - يرتفع	sum up	يُلخص
go with	يتلازم مع	switch off	يتوقف عن التفكير في (يفصل) - يغلق
grow up	يكبر - يترعرع - يَشِبّ		
hand in	يُسلّم	take off	تُقلع الطائرة - يخلع ملابس
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	take on	يقبل القيام بـ - يوظف
heard of	يعرف / يسمع بـ	take part in	يشارك في
help ... with	يساعد ... في	tend to	يميل لأن
hold on to	يتشبث بـ - يتمسك بـ	throw away	يرمي/يتخلص من
immerse ... in	يدمج ... مع	trap ... in/inside	يحتجز ... في
immerse ... into	يستحوذ على انتباه ... في	turn ... into	يُحوّل ... إلى
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ	wake up	يستيقظ - يوقظ
last for	يستمر لمدة	walk into	يصطدم بـ - يتورط في
lead to	يؤدي إلى	work ... out	يحل - يستنتج - يتمرَن
leave out	يستبعد - يُسقِط	work on	يُقنع - يُطوِّر
look after	يرعى/يعتني بـ	write down	يُدوِّن/يُسجِّل

• Feedback: Transitive phrasal verbs

الأفعال الاصطلاحية المتعدية التي سبق دراستها

back up	يدعم - يحتفظ بنسخة احتياطية	look up	يبحث عن (معلومة) في مصدر
blow up	يُكبّر الصورة	plug in	يُوصِّل ... بالكهرباء أو بجهاز
break into	يقتحم	point out	يلفت الانتباه - يشير إلى
breathe in	يستنشق	pull down	يهدم
breathe out	يَزفُر	put back	يُعيد ... إلى مكانه
bring up	يُربّي	put off	يؤجّل
call up	يتصل بـ	rub out	يمسح
calm down	يُهدّئ	run out of	يستنفد - يستهلك كل
clean up	يُرتّب	switch/turn down	يخفض الصوت
fill in	يُكمل	take in	يتنفس - يستنشق
fill up	يملأ	take out	يُخرج - يعزم ... بالخارج
give back	يُعيد	take over	يتولى المسئولية عن
give off	يُخرج - تنبعث منه	talk over	يناقش
hand on	يُناوِل	tear up	يُمزق
hang up	يُعلّق مكالمة	think over	يُفكر في
hold back	يُعيق - يؤخّر	try on	يُجرّب ملابس

knock out	يُفقد ... الوعي	try out	يُجرِّب استخدام
lay off	يفصل - يطرُد	turn on	يُشغِّل
leave ... on/off	يترك (جهاز) مفتوح/مُغلَق	turn up	يرفع الصوت
leave behind	يترك ... وراءه - يُغادِر بدون	use up	يستنفد - يستهلك كل شيء
let down	يُحبِط - يخذل	wear out	يبلى - يتهالك

• **Feedback: Intransitive phrasal verbs**

الأفعال الاصطلاحية اللازمة التي سبق دراستها

break in	يقتحم - يسطو	move out	ينتقل/يُغادِر
fall off	ينخفض	run out	ينفد - ينتهي
get away	يهرُب	settle down	يستقر
give in	يستسلم - يرضخ	settle in	يستوطن
grow up	يكبر/ينضج	show up	يصل
log off	يُسجِّل خروج	step down	يستقيل - يتنحى
log on	يُسجِّل دخول	turn up	يصل -يظهر
look forward to	يتطلع إلي	watch out	ينتبه/يَحْذَر
move in / to	يُعزِّل إلى	wear off	يتلاشى

Exercise On Phrasal Verbs

❶ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I can't take .... more work. I have a busy schedule.
   a. after b. off c. on d. away
2. I took my shoes .... and went in.
   a. after b. off c. on d. away
3. When my friends start to talk about football, I switch .... I don't like it.
   a. off b. to c. on d. up
4. I work .... regularly to keep physically fit.
   a. to b. out c. in d. on
5. He hasn't accepted the offer yet, but I am still working .... him.
   a. to b. out c. in d. on
6. The door handle broke and I was trapped ....
   a. in b. inside c. a & b d. on
7. Tourists like to stretch .... in the warm sunlight.
   a. on b. out c. in d. of
8. It is not healthy to stay .... late.
   a. up b. down c. off d. at
9. It is not an easy task to sum .... this very long report. It is full of important statistics. احصائيات
   a. out b. in c. down d. up
10. If you do not have an account on the EKB, you have to sign ....
    a. in b. up c. out d. off

11. Smoking is known to result .... serious health problems.
a. to b. from c. in d. by
12. I think your headache will respond .... this pain killer.
a. out b. from c. into d. to
13. He reduced the report .... only one page.
a. into b. out c. up d. of
14. The sugar in the kitchen has run ....
a. out b. out of c. in d. into
15. We have run .... sugar.
a. out b. out of c. in d. into
16. Put your toys ...., Sama.
a. from b. of c. way d. away
17. Wait in front of the gate. I will pick you .... in five minutes.
a. out b. in c. up d. down
18. After someone dies, his money and property are passed .... his/her children.
a. on b. on to c. onto d. down
19. Unfortunately, he addicted .... taking drugs.
a. to b. off c. of d. from
20. He will do the right thing. We believe .... his common sense.
a. by b. at c. in d. on
21. The dead bodies naturally break ....
a. in b. into c. out d. down
22. I expected Omar to call ...., so I stayed at home.
a. on b. out c. of d. for
23. My mother carried .... hard work until we all have graduated.
a. in b. on c. to d. by
24. The operation was carried .... in a public hospital.
a. out b. outside c. in d. inside
25. I can't leave the office until I hand .... the final report to the manager.
a. towards b. to c. in d. of
26. High body temperature and dry cough go .... coronavirus infection.
a. at b. in c. to d. with
27. What is going ...., Salma? Why is everyone upset?
a. to b. in c. on d. of
28. I gang or thieves have broken .... and stolen everything.
a. into b. in c. down d. out
29. I do not know, but I will find ....
a. out b. out about c. outside d. inside
30. I do not know, but I will find .... it.
a. out b. out about c. outside d. inside
31. Some homeless children end up .... prisoners.
a. out b. down c. in d. as

32. Some homeless children end up .... prison.
a. out b. down c. in d. as
33. This medicine contributes .... treating serious pain.
a. to b. of c. with d. for
34. We have to work hard to cope .... the latest developments in science and technology.
a. in b. with c. on d. by
35. I came .... a nice jacket when I was shopping for some shirts.
a. in b. out c. across d. off
36. Study hard to catch .... these toppers.
a. of b. out c. up d. up with
37. I haven't heard .... my brother for ages. I am worried about him.
a. of b. from c. with d. to
38. Don't make us worried about you when you are away. Keep ....
a. in touch b. in touch with c. up d. up with
39. Don't make us worried about you when you are away. Keep .... us.
a. in touch b. in touch with c. up d. up with
40. Freezing weather leads .... oranges on trees.
a. damage b. damaging c. to damage d. to damaging
41. All rotten fruit will be left .... in order not to spoil other fruit.
a. to b. at c. out d. with

2 Verb + -ing form/inf.

1 verb + to + inf.

❶ نستخدم (to + inf.) بعد الأفعال التالية :

afford to	يمكنه تحمُّل تكلفة أن	learn to	يتعلم أن
agree to	يوافق على أن	manage to	يتمكن من
arrange to	يرتب لـ	offer to	يعرض أن
decide to	يقرر أن	plan to	يخطط أن
deserve to	يستحق أن	pretend to	يتظاهر أن
fail to	يفشل في أن	seem to	يبدو أن
hope to	يأمل أن	threaten to	يهدد أن
intend to	ينوى أن	wish to	يتمنى أن

- Omar decided to sell his old car.
- We expect to arrive at school on time.
- Amir intends to go to the club with us.

❷ بعد الأفعال التالية يمكن أن يأتى المفعول أولاً ثم (to + inf.) فى المبنى للمعلوم :

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
allow	يسمح	order	يأمر
ask	يطلب	permit	يسمح
choose	يختار	persuade	يقنع
command	يأمر	promise	يعد
encourage	يشجع	remind	يُذكّر

expect	يتوقع	teach	يعلّم
force	يُجْبِر	tell	يأمر / يخبر
help	يساعد	want	يريد
instruct	يأمر	warn	يُحذِّر

- I asked Sama to study a hard.
- We expected Ahmed to come first.

ـ لكن في المبنى للمجهول تأتي (to + inf.) بعد الفعل مباشرة :

- Sama was asked to study hard.
- Ahmed is expected to come first.

2 Verb + inf. + ing

الأفعال التالية يتبعها مصدر مضاف له (ing) :

admit	يقر بـ	finish	ينهي
appreciate	يُقدِّر / يُثمِّن	imagine	يتخيل
avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
delay	يؤجل	mind	يمانع
deny	ينكر	miss	يفوته
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يتمتع	risk	يخاطر
fancy	يتوهم - يتخيل	suggest	يقترح

- She avoids playing with older girls.
- I suggested spending the weekend in the countryside.

3 Verb + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

❶ الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون وجود فرق في المعنى :

love	يحب	prefer	يفضل
hate	يكره	start / begin	يبدأ
like	يحب	continue	يستمر

- Rokaya hates/ likes / loves / prefers to meet cheerful people.
- Rokaya hates/ likes / loves / prefers meeting cheerful people.

❶ تُستخدم (to + inf.) فقط بعد الأفعال السابقة في حالة وجود (would) قبلها:

- She'd prefer to live in a quiet street. (NOT: She'd prefer living).

❶ الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون وجود فرق في المعنى :

Verb	Example	Meaning
stop يتوقف	- Leila stopped listening to the radio.	توقفت ليلى عن الإستماع إلى الراديو (كانت تفعل ثم توقفت)
	- Leila stopped to listen to the radio.	توقفت ليلى عن الشئ الذى تفعله لكى تستمع إلى الراديو

remember يتذكر	- I remembered phoning my mother.	إننى أتذكر أننى قمت بالإتصال بوالدتى (أتذكر أننى فعلت)
	- I remembered to phone my mother.	لقد تذكرت أن أتصل بوالدتى (تذكرت ثم فعلت)
regret يندم / يشعر بالأسف	- I regret arriving late.	أشعر بالندم لأننى وصلت متأخراً
	- He regrets to say that he can't go.	يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لأن يقول أنه لا يستطيع الذهاب
forget ينسى	- I'll never forget seeing my baby sister for the first time.	لن أنسى رؤية أختى الرضيعة لأول مرة (أذكر ذلك الموقف جيداً)
	- I forgot to bring my book.	نسيت أن أُحضِر كتابى (لم أُحضِره)
try يحاول - يجرب	- Try taking a rest to relieve the headache.	يجرب ليرى النتيجة
	- I tried to lift the heavy box, but I couldn't.	يحاول القيام بشئ

4 to = in order to = so as to + inf. لكى

- I saved some money to buy a present for my mother.

5 to + (inf. + ing)

عندما تكون (to) جزء من تعبير معين يأتى بعدها (inf. + ing)، ومن أمثلة هذه التعبيرات :

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	be opposed to	يعترض على
be used to	يكون معتاد على	lead to	يؤدى إلى
become used to	يتعود على	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
get used to	يتعود على	object to	يعترض على
be accustomed to	معتاد على	take to	يعتاد على

- We are used to watching football matches in the stadium.

6 Expression + (inf. + ing)

① التعبيرات التالية يأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) :

be busy	مشغول بـ	feel like	يود / يريد
be worth	يستحق	It's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
can't help	لا يستطيع أن يتوقف عن	It's a waste of time	مضيعة الوقت
can't stand	لا يطيق	It's no good = It's no use	لا فائدة من

- Mum is busy preparing lunch.

② التعبيرات التالية يأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) فى حالة عدم وجود مفعول، ويأتى بعدها (to + inf.) فى حالة وجود مفعول :

advise	ينصح	recommend	يوصى بـ
allow	يسمح	permit	يسمح
forbid	يمنع	encourage	يشجع

- The police don't allow parking in this place.
- The police don't allow drivers to park in this place.

Exercises On Verb + -ing form / inf.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Do you think that one day people will stop .... newspapers? (LM
   a. reading b. read c. to read d. to reading
2. My teacher advised me to practise .... a lot of sports. (LM
   a. to do b. doing c. to doing d. do
3. Mr Fawzi has .... to build a new house in the country. (LM
   a. allowed b. encouraged c. planned d. suggested
4. Ola went to the market .... some fruit. (LM
   a. buying b. and buy c. to buy d. bought
5. My mother always asks me .... hard. (LM
   a. work b. working c. to work d. worked
6. Would you like me .... you ? (LM
   a. help b. to help c. helping d. helper
7. We regret .... that the train will be 30 minutes late. (LM
   a. saying b. to say c. say d. said
8. Experts expect thousands of tourists .... Tahrir Museum this week. (LM
   a. visited b. to visit c. visit d. to visiting
9. My brother reminded me .... some bread from the shops. (LM
   a. to buy b. buy c. buying d. bought
10. Kamal allowed me .... his mobile. (LM
    a. to using b. use c. using d. to use
11. I regret .... this old car; it often breaks down. (LM
    a. buying b. to buy c. for buying d. buy
12. Nasser remembered .... in the playground when he was little. (LM
    a. to play b. playing c. used to play d. play
13. Leila admitted .... us the wrong time to meet at the park. (LM
    a. telling b. to tell c. tell d. tells
14. It's no good .... about the weather. It won't change! (LM
    a. complained b. to complain c. complaining d. complain
15. I can't help .... when I talk to my little grandchild. (LM
    a. to smile b. smile c. smiles d. smiling
16. When she felt sleepy, Rodayna stopped .... herself a coffee.
    a. making b. to be made c. to make d. to making
17. We all like .... football.
    a. playing b. plays c. play d. played
18. Remember .... if you are to be late.
    a. to phone b. phoning c. to phoning d. phone
19. Ahmed denied .... my pen.
    a. to take b. to take c. taking d. to taking

20. My son hasn't learnt .... yet.
a. to swim b. to swimming c. swum d. swam
21. Aya was busy .... after her baby sister.
a. to look b. looking c. be looking d. being looked
22. Mr Yaseen dislikes .... during the day as that stops him sleeping early at night.
a. sleeping b. to be slept c. to sleep d. be sleeping
23. They .... me to lend them the money they needed.
a. advised b. expected c. allowed d. stopped
24. I forgot .... the medicine before I went to bed, so I woke up with terrible pain in my stomach.
a. being taken b. to be taken c. taking d. to take
25. He has never .... travelling by train.
a. expected b. permitted c. wanted d. enjoyed
26. I .... to come first.
a. want b. hope c. a & b d. enjoy
27. It is no good .... to repair this mobile. It is useless.
a. try b. trying c. to try d. to be tried
28. I'll call you as soon as I .... working.
a. plan b. offer c. agree d. finish
29. I haven't yet decided what is .... concerning my old car.
a. doing b. having done c. to be done d. be done
30. It is a waste of time .... with your friends all day.
a. chat b. is chatting c. chatting d. to chat
31. Leen has never practised .... the piano.
a. playing b. being played c. to play d. to be played
32. My friends and I have .... to meet in front of the club.
a. admitted b. arranged c. denied d. enjoyed
33. Eating too much leads .... a lot of weight.
a. gain b. to be gained c. to gaining d. to gain
34. What did he suggest .... ?
a. to do b. to be doing c. to doing d. doing
35. Amir agreed .... me a new table for 2000 pounds.
a. to making b. making c. to make d. to be made
36. I think it is no use .... him to lend you the money. I'm sure he won't agree.
a. to persuade b. persuading c. persuaded d. persuade
37. After two months, I adapted .... on a farm.
a. to working b. working c. to work d. work
38. One of my close friends has .... to help me.
a. objected b. promised c. given d. avoided
39. I had forgotten .... my keys in my bag. That's why I spent much time looking for them.
a. leaving b. to leave c. being left d. to be left

40. Sama looks forward to .... the Faculty of Medicine.
a. be joined b. being joined c. join d. joining

41. Does she plan .... the driving test next month?
a. taking b. to take c. is taking d. to be taken

42. I felt like .... the meeting when the manager criticised me in public.
a. leave b. to leave c. leaving d. to leaving

43. It is a waste of money .... this very expensive mobile.
a. buying b. to buy c. bought d. be bought

44. Rokaya .... doing the housework.
a. is used to b. got used to c. became used to d. a, b & c

45. Why do you .... travelling to Cairo by train?
a. want to b. refuse to c. object to d. deserve to

46. I prefer .... action films.
a. to watching b. to be watched c. watching d. watched

3 Making Suggestions تقديم الإقتراحات

1 Making Suggestions with statements : تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام الجمل الخبرية

1. Let's + inf. ... . هيا بنا ....
- Let's go for a walk.

2. You / We can/could/should + inf. .... بإمكانك / بإمكاننا أن ....
- We could go for a walk.

3. I (would) suggest + (inf. + ing) ... ... أقترح ...
- I (would)suggest going for a walk.

4. I suggest that you / we + inf. / (should + inf.) ... ... أقترح أنك / أننا ...
- I suggest that we go (should go) for a walk.

5. I think you / we should + inf. ... ... أعتقد أنه ينبغي عليك / علينا ...
- I think we should go for a walk.

6. I would recommend + (inf. + ing) ... ... إنني أوصي بـ / أزكّي ...
- I would recommend going for a walk.

7. I recommend that you / we + inf. / (should + inf.) ... ... أحبذ أنك / أننا ...
- I recommend that we go (should go) for a walk.

8. We should probably consider + (inf. + ing) ... ... قد يكون من الواجب أن نفكّر في ...
- We should probably consider going for a walk.

9. Perhaps/Maybe + you / we could/should+ inf. ... ... ربما يمكنك / يمكننا أن ...
- Maybe we should go for a walk.

10. It is just an idea/suggestion, but you / we could + inf. ...
إنها مجرد فكرة/توصية أنه يمكنك/يمكننا أن ...
- It is just a suggestion, but we could go for a walk.

11. My suggestion / recommendation would be to + inf. ...

- My suggestion would be to go for a walk. إنها مجرد فكرة/توصية أنه يمكنك/يمكننا أن ...

2 Making Suggestions with questions : تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام اسئلة

1. What about + noun / (inf. + ing) ...? ماذا عن ...؟

- What about going for a walk ?

2. How about + noun / (inf. + ing) ...? ما رأيك في أن ...؟

- How about going for a walk ?

3. Have you considered + (inf. + ing) ...? هل فكرت في أن ...؟

- Have you considered going for a walk ?

4. Would you consider + (inf. +ing) ...? هل يمكن / أن تُفكر في ...؟

- Would you consider going for a walk ?

5. Have you thought about + (inf. + ing) ...?

- Have you thought about going for a walk ?

6. Why don't you / we + inf. ... ? لِم لا ...؟

- Why don't we go for a walk ?

7. What if you / we + inf. ... ? ماذا لو ...؟

- What if we go for a walk ?

8. Shall we + inf. ... ? هلّا ...؟

- Shall we go for a walk ?

9. May I suggest + (inf. + ing) ... ? هل يمكنني أن أقترح ...؟

- May I suggest going for a walk?

10. Wouldn't it be better to + inf. ... ? ألن يكون من الأفضل أن ...؟

- Wouldn't it be better to go for a walk?

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

suggest / recommend يقترح / يوصي بـ

❶ يأتي (inf.+ ing) بعد كل من (suggest/recommend):

- **suggest/recommend + (inf. + ing) ...**
  - I suggested having lunch outdoors.
  - I recommend watching a movie.

❷ في حالة النفي توضع (not) قبل (inf.+ ing):

- **suggest/recommend + not + (inf. + ing) ...**
  - I suggested not having lunch outdoors.
  - I recommend not watching a movie tonight.

How about & What about

❶ تُستخدَم كل من (What/How about) لتقديم الاقتراحات ويأتي بعدهما (inf.+ ing) أو اسم:

- What/How about spending the weekend in the countryside?

❷ تُستخدَم (What about) وليس (How about) عند ابداء الاعتراض أو التعبير عن مشكلة مُحتَمَلة؛

A: In my opinion, Unit 4 is the easiest unit this year?

B: Perhaps you are right, but what about the too many new words in it?

Let's & Let us

❶ الصيغة (let's + inf.) هي اختصار لـ (Let us + inf.) :

- **Let's = Let us**

❷ بعد (let's/let us) نستخدم الفعل في المصدر بدون (to) :

- Let's wait for the next train. (NOT: Let's to wait …)

❸ الصيغة (let's+ inf.) هي الصيغة الشائعة للاقتراح، وتُستَخدَم (Let us+ inf.) للاقتراح في اللغة الرسمية فقط :

- Let's take a break. (Common)

= Let us take a break. (Formal)

❹ عندما يستخدم المتحدث الصيغة (let's+ inf.) للاقتراح، فهو يقترح لنفسه وللمُخاطَب ـ لاحظ:

- Nada: Let's buy a pizza, Sama.

- في المثال السابق تقترح ندي أنها وسما كلتاهما تشتريان بيتزا، وهذا يساوي في المعني:

- Nada : We could buy a pizza, Sama.

لكن في المثال التالي تقترح ندي أن تقوم سما فقط بشراء بيتزا.

- Nada : You could buy a pizza, Sama.

❺ في الاقتراح المنفي يمكن أن نستخدم :

- **Let's not + inf. … / • Don't let's + inf. …**

- Let's not have koshari. = Don't let's have koshari.

يُفكِّر / يأخذ في الاعتبار consider

❶ الفعل (consider) يأتي بعده (inf.+ ing):

- **consider + (inf. + ing) …**

- Did you consider buying a present for your mother?

❷ في حالة النفي توضع (not) قبل (inf.+ ing) :

- **consider + not + (inf. + ing)…**

- I consider not selling my old car.

❸ لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

- **consider + whether / how / where / why … + to + inf. … .**

- Have you considered how to solve this problem?

Replying to Suggestions الرد على الاقتراحات

Agreeing	Disagreeing
– Yes, let's.	– I'm not very keen.
– Why not?	– I'm not sure about that.
– That's a good / fantastic idea	– Maybe some other time
– I'll go along with that.	– I'd rather ….
– I agree.	– No, I'd prefer to …..
– OK	
– That sounds fine.	

Exercise On Making Suggestions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

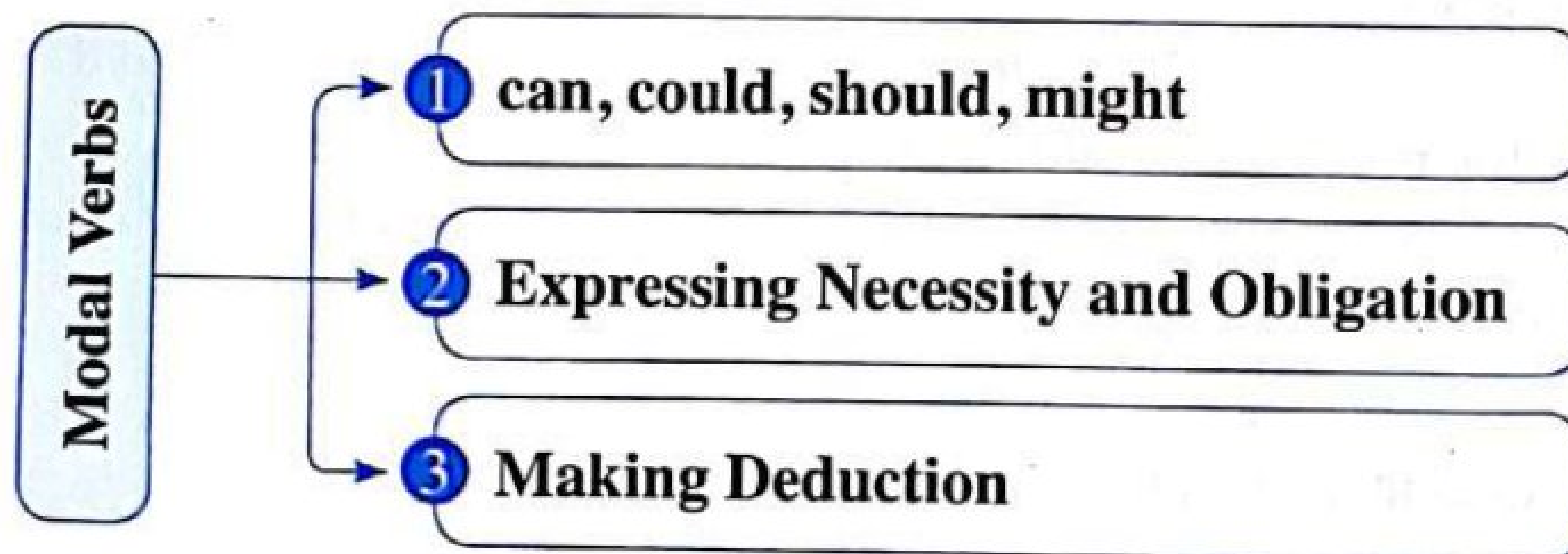
1. **A:** Abdallah is the best playmaker at present.
   B: You may be right, but .... his old age.
   a. how about b. what about c. shall we d. why don't we
2. Let's .... a rest.
   a. have b. having c. no word d. b & c
3. .... take a rest.
   a. Let's b. Why don't we c. Shall we d. b & c
4. .... take a rest?
   a. Let's b. Why don't we c. Shall we d. b & c
5. Let's .... this movie. It is full of suspense.
   a. watch b. to watch c. not watch d. watching
6. Let's .... this movie. It is boring.
   a. watch b. to watch c. not watch d. watching
7. .... wait for our friends here. It is a nice place.
   a. Let's b. Let's not c. Don't let's d. b & c
8. .... wait for our friends here. It is not a safe place.
   a. Let's b. Let's not c. Don't let's d. b & c
9. What about .... fish for lunch ? I know a great fish restaurant.
   a. have b. having c. no word d. b & c
10. I would suggest .... all our friends.
    a. to inviting b. to invite c. inviting d. invite
11. I suggest we .... all our friends.
    a. to inviting b. to invite c. inviting d. invite
12. I have .... joining the sports team.
    a. thought b. considered c. seen d. wanted
13. I .... spending the weekend outdoors.
    a. recommend b. would recommend c. a & b d. object

14. I suggest .... a short break.
a. take b. to take c. taking d. to taking
15. I recommend he .... the school football team.
a. joining b. join c. joined d. to join
16. My .... would be to hold a meeting tomorrow.
a. suggest b. suggestion c. recommend d. a & c
17. I suggest that Aya .... ready for the show.
a. got b. get c. should get d. b & c
18. I suggest .... for a walk. It is burning hot outside.
a. to go b. not go c. not going d. we go
19. I suggest .... for a walk. The weather is fine.
a. to go b. not go c. not going d. we go
20. She considers how .... mum with the housework.
a. to help b. help c. helping d. to helping

8 Modal Verbs

في هذا القسم:

- التعبير عن القدرة والإمكانية وإعطاء الإذن باستخدام (can/could)
- التعبير عن احتمالات المستقبل باستخدام (might)
- إعطاء النصيحة والرأي الشخصي والتعبير عما يُفترض باستخدام (should)
- تدريبات علي كل ماسبق تستهدف قياس جميع مستويات التفكير حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم
- التعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام باستخدام (must / have to / need) + التدريبات
- الاستنتاج (مضارع وماضي) + التدريبات



1 can, could, should, might

1 can / could / be able to + inf.

❶ تُستخدَم (can + inf.) أو (am/is/are + able to + inf.) في التعبير عن القدرة في المضارع أو المستقبل:

- ... can/can't/cannot + inf.

- I can write an essay in English.
- He can't (cannot) take this difficult decision.

- ... am/is/are + able to + inf.

- Amr is able to run the office.
- Sama isn't able to leave right now.

③ كما يُمكن استخدام (will be able to + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة في المستقبل:

- I will be able to write an essay in English after I get enough practice.

④ عند استخدام (could + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع، فإنها تعني أن الفاعل لديه القدرة على القيام بالفعل لكنه لا يفعل ذلك:

- My brother could lend me the money I need.

نفهم من المثال السابق أن الفاعل (My brother) لديه القدرة على أن يقرضني المال، لكنه لا يفعل ذلك.

④ تُستَخدَم (could + inf.) في التعبير عن القدرة العامة في الماضي:

- **... could/couldn't + inf.**

- I could swim when I was five.
- He couldn't drive a car until he had graduated.

⑤ تُستَخدَم (was/were + able to + inf.) في التعبير عن القدرة على القيام بأشياء معينة في مواقف معينة في الماضي:

- **... was/were able to + inf.**

- I was able to fix my car when it broke down on the desert road. (but I am not a mechanic)

⑥ لاحظ أنه في حالة النفي فإن (couldn't + inf.) تساوي (wasn't/weren't + able to + inf.) في نفي القدرة في الماضي:

- **... couldn't + inf. = ... wasn't/weren't able to + inf.**

- He couldn't drive a car until he had graduated.
= He wasn't able to drive a car until he had graduated.

⑦ تُستَخدَم (can/could + inf.) لإعطاء الإذن (permission):

- **... can/could + inf.**

- Everyone can/could use their mobiles. (They are allowed to use their mobiles.)

- **... can't/couldn't + inf.**

- You can't/couldn't use your mobile while driving.
(You aren't allowed to use your mobile while driving.)

⑧ تُستَخدَم (can/could + inf.) في صيغة الطلب (Request):

- Can/Could you lend me some money, Omar?

⑨ تُستَخدَم (can/could + inf.) تقديم الاقتراحات (suggestions):

- We can/could go out for a walk.

2 should / shouldn't + inf.

① تُستخدم (should/ought to + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة المُثبَتة:

- You should respect other people.
= You ought to respect other people.

② تُستخدم (shouldn't/oughtn't to + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة المنفية:

- You should not behave impolitely. (**OR:** shouldn't behave)

❷ تُستخدم لطلب النصيحة:

- Should I take a taxi to the train station?
- What should I do to keep fit?

❸ تُستخدم لتقديم اقتراحات:

- You should try taking an aspirin; it will relieve the pain.

❹ تُستخدم لإعطاء الرأى الشخصي:

- A student should benefit from all his teachers.

❺ لاحظ ما يلي:

- ... should / shouldn't + inf. ...

- You should help other people.
- You shouldn't travel by bus.

= ... ought to / ought not to + inf. ...

- You ought to help other people.
- You ought not (oughtn't) to travel by bus.

= ... had better / had better not + inf. ...

- You'd better do voluntary work.
- You'd better not travel by bus.

تذكر أن:

❶ الاختصار ('d) في ('d better) هو اختصار لـ (had) وليس (would):

- You'd better see a doctor.
= You had better see a doctor. (Not: would better)

❷ نفي (had better) هو (had better not) وليس (hadn't better):

- You'd better not eat junk food. (Not: hadn't better)

3 should / shouldn't + have + p.p.

- عند التعبير عن الندم على شيء حدث في الماضي (past regret) أو اللوم (blame) تُستخدم الصيغ التالية:

❶ تُستخدم الصيغ المثبتة التالية للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم على عدم حدوث شيء كان من المُفترَض أن يحدث في الماضي لكنه لم يحدث:

- ... should/ought to/could + have + p.p. ...

- I should have studied hard.
= I ought to have studied hard.
= I could have studied hard.

- والمتحدث في المثال السابق يشعر بالندم على عدم قيامه بالمذاكرة الجادة في الماضي، فهو يريد أن يقول:

- I didn't study hard and now I regret it.
- I regret not studying hard.
- I wish I had studied hard.

② تُستخدم الصيغ المنفية التالية للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم على حدوث شيء كان من المُفترَض ألّا يحدث في الماضي لكنه حدث:

- ... shouldn't/oughtn't to + have + p.p. ...

- I shouldn't have bought all that food.
= I oughtn't to have bought all that food.

– والمتحدث في المثال السابق يشعر بالندم على شراء كل ذلك الطعام في الماضي، فهو يريد أن يقول:

- I bought too much food and now I regret it.
- I regret buying all that food.
- I wish I hadn't bought all that food.

4 may / might / can / could + inf.

– هُناك حالات كثيرة لاستخدام (may/might + inf.) منها:

① التعبير عن احتمالية/إمكانية حدوث شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل:

- ... may/might/ can / could + inf.

- I may/might/can/could spend the weekend at home.

② تقديم الطلب المهذب:

- May I use your calculator, Ali?

③ إعطاء الإذن / السماح لشخص بالقيام بشيء:

- You may go out with your friends, Rodayna.
- You might sleep at my room.

④ تقديم الاقتراحات:

- You might prefer to travel by plane.

Exercise On can, could, should, might

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A: I'm bored. B: You .... change your routine.
   a. might b. mustn't c. will d. should
2. I .... go sightseeing tomorrow. We haven't made up my mind yet.
   a. might b. have to c. should d. must
3. Why did you book a room at a hotel when you were in Cairo? You .... at my flat there.
   a. could stay b. managed to stay c. could have stayed d. should stay
4. You .... go hiking tomorrow, boys.
   a. have b. need c. could d. must
5. You .... in the form before you sent it.
   a. must fill b. shouldn't have filled c. ought to have filled d. should fill
6. Giraffes .... fly.
   a. could not b. cannot c. may not d. should not

7. The gate is open. The night watchman .... to lock it.
a. may forget
b. might have forgotten
c. might forget
d. should forget

8. They .... do the shopping last Friday as it was raining cats and dogs.
a. shouldn't
b. can't
c. couldn't
d. mightn't

9. He isn't available now but he .... available in an hour or so.
a. might be
b. can't be
c. might have been
d. may have been

10. I am a professional musician. I .... play the piano.
a. could
b. can
c. was able to
d. managed to

11. **A:** I got low marks. **B:** You .... good use of your time.
a. could make
b. should make
c. may make
d. should have made

12. I .... arrive on time despite missing the train.
a. wasn't able to
b. couldn't
c. can't
d. was able to

13. Everyone .... be appreciative of the role of teachers.
a. might
b. need
c. could
d. should

14. That's amazing. You .... speak seven languages!
a. could
b. can
c. can't
d. was able to

15. **A:** .... we have coffee or tea at the meeting tomorrow? **B:** You choose.
a. Should
b. Might
c. Need
d. Could

16. I looked for the lost keys for a long time. Finally, I .... find it.
a. can
b. am able to
c. could ever
d. was able to

17. I haven't decided yet, but I .... have fish for lunch.
a. might
b. must
c. will
d. can

18. .... you lend me a hand, please?
a. Need
b. Have
c. Must
d. Could

19. I travelled by bus, but I .... by taxi.
a. might have travelled
b. could travel
c. could have travelled
d. can travel

20. Esraa .... play the guitar. She has never practised it.
a. is able to
b. can't
c. managed to
d. succeeded in

2 Expressing Necessity and Obligation

1 have to / has to + inf. يجب أن / من الضروري أن

نُستخدم (have to / has to + inf.) في المضارع والمستقبل للتعبير عن:

❶ الإلزام الخارجي الذي تفرضه اللوائح والقوانين في مواقف محددة (ليس للفاعل اختيار):

- I have to follow the school rules.

وفي هذا السياق تعطي (have to / has to + inf.) معنى مشابه للصيغ التالية:

- ... be obliged + to + inf. ... مُلْزَم بـ

- I am obliged to follow the school rules.

= ... be required to+ inf. مُطالَب بـ

- I am required to follow the school rules.

❷ لاحظ الصيغ المختلفة لـ (have / has + to + inf.):

He / She / It + has to + inf. ....

- Rodayna has to arrive at work on time. (إثبات)
- Aya doesn't have to do the shopping. (نفي)
- Does Omar have to finish the report tomorrow? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- When does Rokaya have to arrive at school? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + have to + inf. ....

- You have to wear the seatbelt while driving. (إثبات)
- We don't have to wait for Nada. (نفي)
- Do we have to write an essay in the exam? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- Why do they have to wear a uniform for work? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

❸ تُستخدَم الصيغة (have got to / has got to + inf.) في الإنجليزية البريطانية تماماً مثل (have to / has to + inf.) لكنها تختلف في طريقة النفي والاستفهام:

He / She / It + has got to + inf. ....

- Rodayna has got to arrive at work on time. (إثبات)
- Aya hasn't got to do the shopping. (نفي)
- Has Omar got to finish the report tomorrow? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- When has Rokaya got to arrive at school? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + have got to + inf. ....

- You have got to wear the seatbelt while driving. (إثبات)
- We haven't got to wait for Nada. (نفي)
- Have we got to write an essay in the exam? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- Why have they got to wear a uniform for work? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

❹ لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي لكل من:

- ... must / have to / has to / have got to / has got to + inf. ...

هي:

- ... had to + inf. ...

- I had to do the shopping. (إثبات)
- I didn't have to do the shopping. (نفي)
- Did you have to do the shopping? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What did you have to do? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

❺ يمكن استخدام كل من (must / have to / has to / have got to / has got to + inf.) في المستقبل، كما يمكن استخدام (will have to + inf.) أيضاً:

- I will have to attend a conference in Paris next month.

2 must + inf. يجب ان / من الضروري ان

تُستخدم (must + inf.) في المضارع والمستقبل للتعبير عن:

1 تستخدم (must + inf.)، للتعبير عن القوانين واللوائح بوجه عام :

- Drivers must follow traffic rules.
- Workers must start work at 8.

2 إذا كان الفاعل (I / We)، تُستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير الإلتزام الشخصي أو تذكير النفس بقوة بعمل شيء:

- I must study unit 12 before I go to bed.
(أنا هنا أُلزِم نفسي دون أن يفرض عليّ أحد ذلك)

- We must help Menna prepare for her wedding.
(نحن نُلزِم أنفسنا ولم يلزمنا أحد)

3 تُستخدم (must + inf.) لتوجيه الدعوة القوية والنصيحة القوية للأشخاص الذين تربطنا بهم علاقة قوية :

- You must come to my house and have lunch with me!
- You must see a doctor.

4 تُستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير عن أنه من المهم القيام بشيء معين:

- Leen must work hard or she won't achieve much.

5 تستخدم (must + inf.) في صيغة السؤال لتوجيه النقد أو اللوم لشخص أو للتعبير عن الضيق أو عدم الرضا عن سلوك معين:

- Must you talk while eating?
- Why must you always look at me angrily?

6 لاحظ الصيغ المختلفة لجملة (must + inf.):

- Employees must be at work on time. (إثبات)
- Employees mustn't be late for work. (نفي)
- Must Sama wear this brown blouse? (سؤال بـ"هل")
- How must we pay for the goods? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

7 لا توجد صيغة ماضي لـ (must + inf.) لكن نستخدم (had to + inf.):

- My father had to take a taxi yesterday after his car had broken down.

8 لاحظ استخدام (must) كإسم بمعني (ضرورة) وهي تساوي (necessity) وفي هذه الحالة لا يأتي بعدها فعل في المصدر:

- Using El-Moasser is a must for students of all levels. المستويات
= Using El-Moasser is a necessity for students of all levels.

3 must not (mustn't) + inf. لا يجب ان / ممنوع ان / غير مسموح بـ

تُستخدم (must not / mustn't + inf.) في المضارع والمستقبل للتعبير عن:

1 التعبير عن المنع أو التحريم أو عدم السماح بعمل شيء من الناحية القانونية:

- Passengers mustn't smoke on public transport.

وفي هذا السياق تعطي (must not / mustn't + inf.) معني مشابه للصيغ التالية:

• ... be not allowed + to + inf.

- Passengers aren't allowed to smoke on public transport.

= ... be not permitted to+ inf.

- Passengers aren't permitted to smoke on public transport.

= ... be forbidden from + ing.

- Passengers are forbidden from smoking on public transport.

= ... be banned from + noun / (inf. + ing)

- Passengers are banned from smoking on public transport.

= ... be prohibited from + noun / (inf. + ing)

- Passengers are prohibited from smoking on public transport.

– ويمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بالشيء غير المسموح به كالتالي:

- Smoking isn't allowed on public transport.

= Smoking isn't permitted on public transport.

= Smoking is prohibited on public transport.

= Smoking is forbidden on public transport.

= Smoking is banned on public transport.

٢ تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) مع الفاعل (I / We) للتعبير عن الإلتزام الشخصي بعدم القيام بشيء:

- We mustn't leave our room untidied.
- I mustn't get up late again.

٣ كما تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة القوية:

- You mustn't eat too much food. That's not healthy.

4 need / needs + to + inf. يجب أن / من الضروري أن

تُستخدم (need to / needs to + inf.) في المضارع والمستقبل للتعبير عن:

١ التعبير عن الضرورة:

He / She / It + needs to + inf. ....

- Karim needs to finish the report. (إثبات)
- Karim doesn't need to finish the report. (نفي)

= Karim needn't finish the report. (نفي)

- Does Karim need to finish the report? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- What does Karim need to do? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + need to + inf. ....

- They need to get ready for the meeting. (إثبات)
- They don't need to get ready for the meeting. (نفي)

= They needn't get ready for the meeting. (نفي)

- Do they need to get ready for the meeting? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- What do they need to get ready for? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

❷ يمكن استخدام كل من (need to / needs to + inf.) في المستقبل، كما يمكن استخدام (will need to + inf.) أيضاً:
- Rokaya will need to write an essay for the exam.

❸ لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي لـ(need to) هي (needed to):

- She needed to prepare lunch. (إثبات)
- She didn't need to prepare lunch. (نفي)
- She needn't have prepared lunch. (نفي)
- Did she need to prepare lunch? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- What did she need to do? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

❹ لاحظ عدم استخدام حرف الجر (to) بعد (needn't):

- He doesn't need to have lunch outdoors.
= He needn't have lunch outdoors. (Not: needn't to have)

❺ لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't have / need to + inf.) و (needn't have + p.p.)

تُستخدَم (didn't have / need to + inf.) للتعبير عن حدث لم يتم في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضروري:
- I didn't have to buy a raincoat because it doesn't rain in Egypt in summer.

تُستخدَم (needn't have + p.p.) للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي رغم أنه لم يكن ضروري:
- I needn't have bought a raincoat. I wasted my money because it doesn't rain in Egypt in summer.

❻ عند استخدام (need) كفعل أساسي بمعني (يحتاج أو يتطلب) يمكن أن يأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :
- My car needs some repairs.
- My car needs repairing.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

❶ يُمكن أن تُستخدَم الصيغة (be to+ inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية وإعطاء الأوامر:
- The minister is to visit our school tomorrow.
- Mr Omar was to interview some applicants yesterday, but he had to travel to London.
- Ahmed and his fiancée are to get married next August.
- You are to send the invitations before next Monday.

❷ لاحظ الفرق بين (have to / has to + inf.) و (must + inf.) في التعبير عن القوانين واللوائح

- تُستخدم (have / has to + inf.) للتعبير عن التزام الأفراد بالقانون في المواقف المختلفة:
- You have to wear a helmet if you're going to go on the motorbike.
- تُستخدم (must) وليس (have / has to) في نصوص القانون وكذلك التعليمات المكتوبة التي توجد في أماكن العمل:
- Students must keep silence in exam rooms.
- Everyone must attend the monthly meeting.

❸ تستخدم كل من (must) و (have / has to) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام، ويمكن استخدام إحداهما مكان الأخرى مع اختلاف المعني:
- You must wear the school uniform.

في المثال السابق، تفهم أن المتحدث لديه سلطة الإلزام ويمكن أن يكون المدير أو أحد المعلمين.

- You have to wear the school uniform.

في المثال السابق، تفهم أن المتحدث يتكلم عن الإلتزام بالقواعد المدرسية ولا يملك سلطة الإلزام ويمكن أن يكون أحد زملاء الدراسة.

❶ يُفضل أن تُستخدم (have / has to) وليس (must) بعد الظروف:

- You really have to help with the office work.

❷ لاحظ الفرق بين (mustn't) و (don't / doesn't + have / need + to):

- You mustn't use your personal mobile for work calls.

(ممنوع أو غير مسموح لك أن تُجري مكالمات العمل من هاتفك الشخصي)

- You don't have to use your personal mobile for work calls.

(ليس ضرورياً أن تُجري مكالمات العمل من هاتفك الشخصي)

Exercise On Expressing Necessity and obligation

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... the living room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.
   a. don't have to tidy b. didn't have to tidy c. had to tidy d. must have tidied
2. I'm sorry I didn't visit you last night; I .... see my doctor.
   a. needn't b. didn't have to c. had to d. must
3. You .... more sugar. We already have a lot at home.
   a. can't buy b. had to buy c. must buy d. needn't have bought
4. Ali isn't late for school, so he .... hurry.
   a. mustn't b. had to c. needn't d. has to
5. My children .... wear a uniform in primary schools.
   a. need b. have to c. mustn't d. shouldn't
6. Nihal .... worry; she still has six months before her exams start.
   a. doesn't have to b. must c. should d. has to
7. You .... take photos here; that's not allowed.
   a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. can
8. You .... try my sister's cake! It's really delicious.
   a. needn't b. shouldn't c. must d. mustn't
9. Radwa .... to go to the doctor's yesterday because she suddenly felt much better.
   a. need to b. should have c. mustn't d. didn't have
10. You .... show your passport when you arrive at another country.
    a. should have b. need c. have to d. shouldn't
11. In England, most people .... work until they are 67; it's the law there.
    a. must b. have to c. need d. shouldn't
12. You really .... visit us when you're in Cairo next week!
    a. have to b. must c. need to d. need

13. We .... our umbrellas to England. Strangely, it didn't rain at all!
a. needn't have taken b. didn't have to take c. must take d. had to take

14. One .... pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt.
a. mustn't b. needn't c. have to d. must

15. Do I .... take this medicine?
a. have b. must c. need to d. should

16. Does Omar .... carry all these books to school?
a. has b. have to c. need d. needs

17. They .... any more money.
a. needn't to pay b. need not paying c. don't need to pay d. needn't to be paid

18. I .... see a doctor tomorrow.
a. mustn't b. will have to c. had to d. had go to

19. Traffic rules ....
a. has to follow
b. has to be follow
c. have to follow
d. have to be followed

20. .... to arrive at school before seven ?
a. Must you b. Do you have c. Have you d. You have

21. The oil in his car .... before he set off.
a. had to check b. had to be checked c. has to check d. has to be checked

22. I .... take my driving test tomorrow.
a. need b. have to c. will have d. mustn't

23. We .... help our parents.
a. must b. mustn't c. needs to d. needn't have

24. I .... call my parents to say that I'm going to be late.
a. have b. must c. need d. needn't

25. Why do you .... buy all these groceries ?
a. must b. need to c. has to d. needn't have

26. When do you .... travel to Aswan?
a. need to b. needs c. must d. have got to

27. When .... finish the report ?
a. has he to b. must he to c. does he have to d. he has to

28. They .... leave now. It is up to them.
a. mustn't b. haven't to c. don't have to d. needn't have

29. You .... touch the objects in the museum. The instructions say so.
a. mustn't b. needn't c. don't have to d. must

30. You .... clean your teeth before you go to bed. It is strongly advisable.
a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. don't have to

31. Where .... to park his car the other day ?
a. does he have b. has he c. he had d. did he have

32. You .... be late for work. That's my advice to you as a close friend.
a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. will have to

33. As one of the company's staff, you .... be at your desk before nine.
a. have to b. must c. needn't d. mustn't

34. Nada .... do the shopping.
a. doesn't need to b. needn't c. needn't have d. a & b

35. We .... a big lunch for our guests.
a. need be prepare b. needs to prepare c. need to prepare d. has to prepare

36. You and your family .... come and have lunch with us next Friday.
a. have to b. had to c. need to d. must

37. You .... park here. That's banned.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. don't need to

38. .... to study history at school ?
a. Does she have b. Has she c. Have she d. Must she

39. Why do you .... work so long hours ?
a. have to b. must c. needn't d. have got to

40. .... to do any more exercises before the last match ?
a. Had he b. He had c. Did he have d. Must he

41. .... wear this red shirt ? It looks old-fashioned.
a. Do you have to b. Have you to c. Must you d. Had you to

42. You .... stop smoking! Take it as a piece of advice from your best friend.
a. needn't b. had to c. mustn't d. must

43. Your teeth .... at regular times.
a. need to be examined b. needs to be examined
c. need to examine d. needs examining

44. I .... forget to post that letter.
a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. don't have to

45. Your old clothes .... away.
a. need to take b. needs to take c. need to be taken d. needs to be taken

46. Ahmed .... get up early at weekends.
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. has to d. doesn't have to

47. I .... follow the school rules concerning uniform.
a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to

48. I .... the driving test to get a licence.
a. needn't pass b. must be passed c. has to pass d. have to pass

49. You .... visit me at the weekend !
a. need to b. have to c. must d. mustn't

50. Ashraf .... to attend yesterday's meeting. He came on time as usual.
a. hadn't b. didn't have c. had to d. needn't

51. When .... take the medicine ?
a. I have to b. I must c. have I to d. must I

52. You .... smoke. It destroys your health.
a. don't need to b. needn't c. don't have to d. mustn't

53. Amr .... to work hard at school to pass the exams.

a. needs	b. need	c. needn't	d. must

54. .... to go to the office every day ?

a. Must I	b. Do I need	c. Need I to	d. Have I

55. I .... a present for Ali's birthday as I've promised.

a. must buy	b. have to buy

c. needn't buy	d. need not have bought

56. Sama .... pay the electricity bill on time.

a. have to	b. has to	c. needs	d. mustn't

57. The trees in our garden .... regularly.

a. has to water	b. has watered

c. have to be watered	d. has to be watered

58. Rokaya .... return home early yesterday.

a. had to	b. has to	c. needn't	d. needn't have

Extra Exercises On Structures

هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريبات خاصة على القواعد تضعه في أجواء اسئلة مستويات التفكير المختلفة التي تقيس نواتج التعلم التي يُركز عليها واضعي الامتحانات، وهذه التدريبات لها دليل إجابات مصحوب بالشرح والتفسير.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mum .... do the shopping. We have a lot of guests coming for lunch.

a. has to	b. had to	c. need to	d. needn't

2. Mum .... do the shopping. My father has already done it.

a. has to	b. had to	c. need to	d. needn't

3. Mum .... do the shopping. We had a lot of guests coming for lunch.

a. has to	b. had to	c. need to	d. needn't

4. Mum will .... do the shopping. We have a lot of guests coming for lunch.

a. has to	b. had to	c. need to	d. needn't

5. I have enough money on me. I .... borrow any.

a. have to	b. haven't to	c. had to	d. haven't got to

6. I spent all the money on me. I .... borrow some.

a. need to	b. needn't have	c. had to	d. hadn't got to

7. I .... be at the airport at seven tomorrow.

a. must	b. have to	c. will have to	d. a, b & c

8. "Must you stick your finger in your nose like that?" The speaker here is ....

a. criticising	b. asking about the law

c. asking about necessity	d. expressing approval

9. Following the traffic rules is a / an ....

a. need	b. must	c. necessary	d. advice

10. According to the office rules, no one .... smoke.

a. must	b. can	c. a & b	d. mustn't

11. This shirt needs ....

a. iron	b. ironing	c. to iron	d. be ironed

12. The supervisor of English, ... our school next Wednesday.
a. needs a visit
b. mustn't be visited
c. is visited
d. is to visit

13. On Fridays, students .... get up early.
a. mustn't
b. needn't
c. don't need
d. must

Check your understanding

14. "You have to hand in the exam paper right now." This means ....
a. you need have handed in the exam paper right now.
b. you should have handed in the exam paper right now.
c. you are required not to hand in the exam paper right now.
d. you are obliged to hand in the exam paper right now.

15. "You have to leave at once." Which of the following is / are the correct negative form ?
a. You haven't got to leave at once.
b. You don't have to leave at once.
c. a & b
d. You needn't have left at once.

16. "I mustn't waste my time." This is ....
a. personal obligation
b. legal necessity
c. something I have no choice about
d. lack of necessity

17. "You mustn't make noise in class," said ....
a. the head teacher
b. a schoolmate
c. the student sitting next to me
d. b & c

18. "You have to be quiet in class," said ....
a. the head teacher
b. a schoolmate
c. the student sitting next to me
d. b & c

19. Which of the following expresses strong positive feelings?
a. You should help your parents.
b. You must help your parents.
c. You need to help your parents.
d. You mustn't help your parents.

20. "Students mustn't talk in the exam room." This means ....
a. students needn't talk in exam rooms.
b. students are banned from talking in exam rooms.
c. students are required to talk in exam rooms.
d. students are obliged to talk in exam rooms.

21. "I needn't have brought an umbrella." The speaker here ....
a. brought an umbrella.
b. didn't bring an umbrella.
c. regrets not bringing an umbrella.
d. needs an umbrella badly.

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	a.	- سياق الجملة مضارع فلا يمكن استخدام (had to) - كلمة (need) في الإختيار (c) ينقصها حرف (s) - لا يمكن اختيار (needn't) لأنها لا تتوافق مع معني الجملة - معني الجملة يتطلب استخدام (needn't)
2	d.	- سياق الجملة ماضي فلابد من استخدام (had to)
3	b.	- بعد (will) لابد أن نختار فعل في المصدر
4	c.	

5	d.	- المعنى يتطلب النفي، والنفي الوحيد الصحيح بين الاختيارات هو (haven't got to)
6	c.	- الاختيار الصحيح الذي يتفق مع المعنى والزمن هو (had to)
7	d.	- الاختيارات الثلاثة صحيحة من ناحية المعنى والزمن
8	a.	- السؤال بـ (must) عن سلوك كهذا يدل على الإنتقاد
9	b.	- كلمة (must) هنا اسم بمعنى (ضرورة)
10	b.	- وجود (no one) كفاعل جعل من اللازم استخدام فعل مثبت ليستقيم المعنى، و (can) تعطي المعنى الصحيح
11	b.	- الفعل (need) هنا فعل أساسي بمعنى (يحتاج) ويأتي بعده اسم أو (inf. + ing)
12	d.	- تُستخدَم (be to + inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية
13	b.	- لا يمكن استخدام (mustn't) لأنه لا يوجد ما يمنع الطلاب من الاستيقاظ مبكراً يوم الجمعة إذا أرادوا ذلك - لا يمكن استخدام (must) لأنه لا يوجد ما يفرض على الطلاب الاستيقاظ مبكراً يوم الجمعة - لا يمكن استخدام (don't need) لعدم وجود (to)
14	d.	- التعبير (have to + inf.) يساوي في المعنى (be obliged to + inf.)
15	c.	- الصيغتين في (a / b) صحيحتين كنفي للجملة الأصلية، والإختيار (d) خاطئ لأنه في الماضي
16	a.	- سياق الجملة ومعناها مع وجود الفاعل (I) يدل أن ذلك على (إلتزام شخصي)
17	a.	- استخدام (mustn't) في سياق يتحدث عن القواعد يدل أن المتحدث له سلطة فرض هذه القواعد
18	d.	- استخدام (have to) في سياق يتحدث عن القواعد يدل أن المتحدث ليس له سلطة فرض هذه القواعد ولكنه يتحدث عن الإلتزام بها
19	b.	- تُستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير عن مشاعر إيجابية قوية مثل الدعوة القوية والنصيحة القوية
20	b.	- الإختيار الوحيد الذي يُعطي نفس المعنى
21	a.	- تدل (needn't have + p.p.) على أن الفاعل قام بشيء رغم أن هذا الشيء لم يكن ضرورياً

3 Deduction الإستنتاج

Present deduction الإستنتاج فى المضارع	Past deduction الإستنتاج فى الماضى
① لعمل إستنتاج قائم على دليل قوى فى المضارع نستخدم :	① لعمل إستنتاج قائم على دليل قوى فى الماضى نستخدم :
- Subj. فاعل + must لابد / can't لا يمكن + inf. ... **- Obj. مفعول + must / can't + be + p.p. ...**	**- Subj. + must / can't + have + p.p. ...** **- Obj. + must / can't + have been + p.p. ...**
- Leen always comes first. She must study her lessons hard. = Leen always comes first. Her lessons must be studied hard. - He is very poor. He can't earn enough money. = He is very poor. Enough money can't be earned by him.	- Rodayna looked happy after the driving test yesterday. She must have passed the test. = Rodayna looked happy after the driving test yesterday. The test must have been passed by her. - Rodayna looked happy after the driving test yesterday. She can't have failed the test. = Rodayna looked happy after the driving test yesterday. The test can't have been failed by her.
② لعمل إستنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف فى المضارع نستخدم :	② لعمل إستنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف فى الماضى نستخدم :
- Subj. + might / may / could ربما + inf. ... **- Obj. + might / may / could + be + p.p. ...**	**- Subj. + might / may / could + have + p.p. ...** **- Obj. + might / may / could + have been + p.p. ...**
- I am not sure what he sells. He may / might / could sell vegetables. = I am not sure what he sells. Vegetables may / might / could be sold by him.	- Ashraf may / might / could have done the final revision. I'm not sure. = The final revision may / might / could have been done by Ashraf. I'm not sure.
③ لعمل إستنتاج عن حدث مستمر فى المضارع نستخدم :	③ لعمل إستنتاج عن حدث مستمر فى الماضى نستخدم :
- Subj. + must / can't / might / may / could + be + (inf. + ing) ...	**- Subj. + must / can't / might / may / could + have been + (inf. + ing) ...**
- Sama isn't at the party. She must / may / might / could be looking after her baby sister.	- I don't know for sure why he wasn't at home yesterday. He might have been working on the farm with his father.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① تدل التعبيرات التالية على استنتاج قوى، ونستخدم معها (must) فى الإثبات و (can't) فى النفى :

- **I feel sure / certain** أشعر بالتأكد
- **Certainly / surely / definitely** من المؤكد ......
- **Impossible** مستحيل

- We feel sure Aya isn't out. She must be in her house. She can't be at school.

❶ تدل التعبيرات التالية على عدم التأكد ونستخدم معها **(may – might – could)** :

- **I'm not sure / certain** لست متأكد
- **perhaps / Maybe** ربما
- **It is probable / likely / possible** من المحتمل
- **I don't think / believe** لا أظن
- **I don't know** لست أدرى

- I don't know why he doesn't want to join the trip. He may / might / could be busy.

❷ أحياناً لا يوجد أى تعبير صريح مما سبق يدل على درجة التأكد، لكن يكون هناك ما يوحى منطقيا بقوة الدليل أو ضعفه :

- Ayman has a factory. He can't be poor. (الدليل هنا منطقيا قوى)
- I sometimes see him in this street. He might live here. (الدليل هنا منطقيا ضعيف)

❸ يمكن أن تعبر **(could have + P.P.)** عن استنتاج ضعيف أو عن شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه ولكنه لم يحدث :

- He hasn't visited us for a long time. He could have been busy. (استنتاج ضعيف)
- He was able to fix the computer but he didn't. He could have fixed it. (كان يستطيع ولم يفعل)

Exercise On Making Deduction

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I didn't drink the water from the river or I .... ill.
   a. might be b. might have been c. should be d. must have been
2. The traffic on the road into Cairo is not moving; there .... have been an accident.
   a. can't b. should c. might d. must
3. This temple .... be important; it's visited by hundreds of people every day.
   a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. must
4. Imad and Hatem .... swimming. Their hair isn't wet.
   a. must have been b. might not have been c. should have been d. might be
5. The car broke down again; it .... repaired very well yesterday.
   a. can't have been b. have c. mustn't have been d. shouldn't have been
6. Everyone is putting their umbrellas up; it .... raining.
   a. had to start b. must have started c. shouldn't have started d. can't have started
7. You .... make a revision timetable; that is my advice!
   a. oughtn't to b. mustn't c. needn't d. should
8. You .... to buy your mother a present. It was her birthday!
   a. ought to have forgotten b. should have forgotten c. shouldn't have forgotten d. might not forget
9. The sun is very hot. I .... my sunhat. I think I'll buy one now.
   a. might have brought b. must have brought c. had to bring d. ought to have brought
10. 'Who sent this parcel?' – 'I don't know. It .... be from Adel.'
   a. should b. has to c. might d. must

11. You ought .... the project last week.
a. finish b. to finish c. to have finished d. not to finish
12. Omar .... be happy; he has just won the gold medal.
a. had to b. must c. can't d. ought not to
13. Your writing is full of mistakes. You .... it carefully.
a. needn't have checked b. must have checked
c. should have checked d. had to check
14. Oh! There are my father's keys. He .... to take them to work.
a. mustn't have remembered b. had to remember
c. must have remembered d. can't have remembered
15. Rami .... passed the exam. He looks very sad.
a. must have b. might not c. can't d. can't have
16. Mustafa .... a doctor. It is his job in his ID and people call him "Dr Mustafa".
a. is b. must be c. can't be d. might be
17. Mustafa .... a doctor. He wears a white coat and has a Stethoscope. سماعة الطبيب
a. may be b. must be c. can't be d. might be
18. Mustafa .... a doctor. He goes to hospital every day.
a. should be b. must be c. can't be d. might be
19. Work hard to achieve your goal. You .... waste your time.
a. should b. shouldn't c. might not d. must
20. The phone is ringing. It .... be Rokaya; she said she would call this evening.
a. can't b. mustn't c. ought to d. must
21. The repairs I made .... have fixed the problem, but they didn't - so I'll have to try again.
a. must b. can't c. should d. shouldn't
22. It's too early to have finished the exam. He .... by now.
a. must have finished b. can't have finished c. must finish d. can't finish
23. She broke three of the dishes while washing them. She .... more careful.
a. must be b. can't be
c. should have been d. shouldn't have been
24. She .... be happy to be married to him. She has told me that she hates him.
a. should b. must c. can't d. might not
25. What a valuable diamond necklace! It .... cost a fortune.
a. must b. can't c. might d. could
26. Hossam .... be at the gym right now. Sometimes he goes there at this time.
a. might b. can't c. must d. shouldn't
27. I .... my medicine on time last night, but I went to bed without taking it.
a. should take b. shouldn't take
c. should have taken d. shouldn't have taken
28. They .... have known about this. Nobody told them anything about it.
a. shouldn't b. must c. can't d. might not

29. He didn't come. I guess he .... about our appointment.
a. must have forgotten
b. can't have forgotten
c. must forget
d. might have forgotten

30. You have just eaten a huge lunch! You .... hungry again already!
a. must be
b. can't be
c. must have been
d. can't have been

31. This is impossible. You .... be serious !
a. might not
b. can't
c. shouldn't
d. must

32. These tourists .... be French. They're speaking German.
a. can't
b. must
c. mustn't
d. should

33. He's working full-time and studying for his final exams. That .... be easy.
a. might
b. may
c. can't
d. must

34. I .... that violence film; it gave me nightmares. کوابیس
a. shouldn't have watched
b. should watch
c. must watch
d. can't have watched

35. You .... early yesterday. The manager was very angry.
a. ought to arrive
b. ought not to arrive
c. oughtn't to have arrived
d. ought to have arrived

36. This is impossible. You .... be joking !
a. might not
b. can't
c. should
d. must

37. I .... be able to go to the football match. It depends on my parents' decision.
a. must
b. can't
c. might
d. must

38. If you'd been trying to lose weight, then you really .... all that rice.
a. should eat
b. shouldn't eat
c. should have eaten
d. shouldn't have eaten

39. If he has a BMW, he .... be quite rich.
a. can't
b. could not
c. must
d. might

40. We're not sure if this painting is original. It .... worth thousands of dollars.
a. must be
b. can't be
c. might be
d. should have been

41. It .... a lot last night - there is water everywhere.
a. must rain
b. must have rained
c. could have rained
d. couldn't have rained

42. I .... at my sister. She was shocked.
a. oughtn't to have shouted
b. ought not to shout
c. ought to shout
d. ought to have shouted

43. You should pick up the phone. It .... be an important call.
a. might
b. can't
c. mustn't
d. might not

44. You .... right, but I'm going to check to make sure.
a. might be
b. must be
c. could be
d. a & c

45. He .... know the answer to this simple question. he's the best in the class.
a. can't b. must c. mustn't d. shouldn't
46. I'm so thankful for your help with this difficult lesson. I .... it without you!
a. must understand b. can't understand
c. must have understood d. can't have understood
47. Ahmed goes fishing every weekend. He .... it.
a. can't enjoy b. should enjoy
c. must enjoy d. could have enjoyed
48. Ali .... have read a 600-page book in a single day ! It was impossible.
a. must b. can't c. should d. shouldn't
49. She isn't answering on the home phone. She .... out.
a. must go b. can't go c. must have gone d. can't have gone
50. You .... too much sugar to my tea. I couldn't drink it.
a. should have added b. shouldn't have added
c. might not add d. can't have added
51. He worked hard on his article, then he deleted the file from his computer. He .... pleased with it.
a. must be b. shouldn't have been c. must have been d. can't have been
52. You .... be right, but it's better if we make sure.
a. must b. could c. might d. b & c
53. They ate all their dinner. They .... the food.
a. must enjoy b. might enjoy
c. must have enjoyed d. can't have enjoyed
54. Look at that man's enormous muscles. He .... a lot of violent training.
a. must get b. can't get c. can't have got d. should have got
55. He .... be at home. I saw him at the school library a minute ago.
a. may b. must c. can't d. shouldn't
56. **A :** "Who's at the door ?" **B:** I don't know; it .... be Ali.
a. might b. must c. can't d. shouldn't
57. Omar .... to take part in the match. It seems like the type of thing he's interested in.
a. can't want b. might want c. doesn't want d. couldn't want

Extra Exercises On Structures

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريبات خاصة على القواعد تضعه في أجواء اسئلة مستويات التفكير المختلفة التي تقيس نواتج التعلم التي يُركز عليها واضعي الامتحانات، وهذه التدريبات لها دليل إجابات مصحوب بالشرح والتفسير.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your mother .... cook well. You always want to get back home to eat!
a. must b. can't c. might d. could
2. Your father .... be a young man. Your elder sister is 45!
a. must b. can't c. might d. could

3. I don't know why I am so tired these days. I .... be working too hard.
a. must b. can't c. should d. might
4. Do you know where Amir is? He can't .... out - his car keys are on the table.
a. be b. have been c. have gone d. a & c
5. You know everything about the Aymans. You .... be a close friend to the family.
a. could b. can c. must d. can't
6. Giving the promotion to Hany is silly. He can't .... much about this company afte only a year working here.
a. know b. have known c. be knowing d. a & b
7. Go and look in the kitchen for your shoes. They .... be in there.
a. might b. must c. mustn't d. can't
8. Oh, the phone is ringing. Answer it, Rody. It .... your grandfather. He always ring at this time.
a. is b. must be c. can't be d. must have bee
9. That couple .... think much of this flat. They're leaving already – without discussing anything with the owner!
a. could b. might c. must d. can't
10. That's the second new car they have bought this year. They .... needy!
a. must be b. must have been c. can't be d. can't have bee
11. That's the second new car they have bought this year. They .... wealthy!
a. must be b. must have been c. can't be d. can't have bee
12. I think there .... be a mistake in your bill. You should check it.
a. needn't b. can't c. might d. mustn't
13. If Ola said that, it .... be true. She never lies.
a. can b. must c. can't d. mustn't
14. Sorry, but I'm not Ashraf. You .... be confusing me for someone else.
a. must b. can't c. might d. may
15. I'm not sure I trust Adel. He .... be the person we think he is.
a. must b. can't c. might d. might not
16. There's a bit of traffic, so I .... arrive in time.
a. might not b. may not c. a & b d. can't
17. Your father .... very proud of you right now. You disappointed him.
a. must be b. must have been c. can't be d. a & b
18. Your father .... very proud of you right now. You honoured him.
a. must be b. must have been c. can't be d. a & b
19. I wouldn't swim in this river if I were you. It .... be dangerous.
a. might b. might not c. can't d. should
20. My visa card .... be in that drawer. I've already looked there four times.
a. must b. mustn't c. might not d. can't
21. They .... be British because they speak native French.
a. should b. could c. mustn't d. can't
22. It .... be a spider because it's only got six legs.
a. must b. might c. can't d. could

. Mr Ibrahim must .... a lot. His passport's full of visa stamps.

a. travel
b. have travelled
c. be travelled
d. have been travelled

Check your understanding

. "My card isn't in my pocket. It ...."

a. must in my bag
b. can't be in my bag
c. must be in my bag
d. mustn't be in my bag

5. I can't remember what Hadeer studies at university. She could study science or ....

a. she may not study medicine
b. she might study medicine
c. she must study medicine
d. she can't study medicine

6. "Maybe talking to Mr Nasser is supposed to help you solve the problem."
This means ....

a. talking to Mr Nasser must help
b. talking to Mr Nasser can't help
c. talking to Mr Nasser might help
d. talking to Mr Nasser didn't help

7. **A:** I'm so tired today. - **B:** .... last night.

a. You should go to bed earlier
b. You should have gone to bed earlier
c. You must have gone to bed earlier
d. You might have gone to bed earlier

8. **A:** This T-shirt is too small for me. - **B:** ....

a. You must have tried it on.
b. You should have tried it on
c. You can't have tried it on.
d. b & c

9. **A:** Sama's really angry with me. - **B:** ....

a. You can't have been kind to her.
b. You must have been kind to her.
c. You should have been cruel to her.
d. a & c

10. **A:** I'm so full! I feel a bit sick. -**B:** .... for dinner.

a. You should eat that much
b. You shouldn't have eaten that much
c. You might have eaten that much
d. You could have eaten that much

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	a.	– الجملة الثانية تعطي دليل علي استنتاج قوي، ومعني الجملة يتطلب الإثبات لذلك الإجابة الصحيحة هي (must) وليس (can't)
2	b.	– الجملة الثانية تعطي دليل علي استنتاج قوي، ومعني الجملة يتطلب النفي لذلك الإجابة الصحيحة هي (can't) وليس (must)
3	d.	– الجملة الأولي تعطي دليل علي استنتاج ضعيف، لذلك الإجابة الصحيحة هي (might)
4	d.	– لا يمكن استخدام (have been) لأنها تعني أن (أمير) قد عاد ولا داعي للسؤال عنه – استخدام (be) صحيح على اعتبار أن (out) صفة – استخدام (have gone) صحيح على اعتبار أن (out) ظرف، كما أن (have gone) تعني أن (أمير) لم يعود
5	c.	– الجملة الأولي تعطي دليل علي استنتاج قوي، ومعني الجملة يتطلب الإثبات لذلك الإجابة الصحيحة هي (must) وليس (can't)
6	d.	– لا يمكن استخدام (be knowing) لأن الفعل (know) أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي لا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة – استخدام (know) صحيح على اعتبار أن (know) تصف وضع قائم – استخدام (have known) صحيح على اعتبار أنها تدل على ما تم معرفته من قبل

7	a.	الجملة الأولي تعطي دليل علي استنتاج ضعيف، فليس من المنطقي وجود الحذاء في المطبخ
8	b.	لا يمكن استخدام (is) لأنها تدل علي يقين، ويتضح من السياق أن المتحدث يستنتج وأنه لم ينظر إلي التليفون، بدليل أنه يطلب من (رودي) الرد، ويتضح أيضاً بناء علي الجملة الأخيرة أن الدليل قوي مثبت فلا يمكن استخدام (can't be) وأن الزمن مضارع فلا يمكن استخدام (must have been)
9	d.	الجملة الأولي تعطي دليل علي استنتاج قوي، ومعني الجملة يتطلب النفي لذلك الإجابة الصحيحة هي (can't) وليس (must)
10	c.	الجملة الأولي تعطي دليل علي استنتاج قوي في المضارع، ومعني الجملة يتطلب النفي لذلك الإجابة الصحيحة هي (can't be) وليس (must be)
11	a.	الجملة الأولي تعطي دليل علي استنتاج قوي في المضارع، ومعني الجملة يتطلب الإثبات لذلك الإجابة الصحيحة هي (must be) وليس (can't be)
12	c.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج ضعيف
13	b.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج قوي مثبت
14	a.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج قوي مثبت
15	d.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج ضعيف منفي
16	c.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج ضعيف منفي
17	c.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج مضارع قوي منفي
18	a.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج مضارع قوي مثبت
19	a.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج ضعيف مُثبت
20	d.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج قوي منفي
21	d.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج قوى منفى
22	c.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج قوي منفي، وذلك لأن العناكب لها ثمانية أرجل وليس ستة
23	a.	سياق الجملة مضارع مبني للمعلوم
24	c.	الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح من حيث البناء والمعني
25	b.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج ضعيف مُثبت
26	c.	سياق الجملة يتطلب استنتاج ضعيف
27	b.	الرد عبارة عن تعبير عمّا كان يُفترض أن يحدث في الماضي
28	d.	الخيار (a) خطأ لأنه يتناقض مع معني الجملة الخيار (b) صحيح لأنه تعبير عمّا كان يجب أن يحدث في الماضي الخيار (c) صحيح لأنه تعبير عن استنتاج منطقي قوي في الماضي
29	a.	الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح من حيث البناء والمعني
30	b.	الخيار (b) هو الصحيح لأنه تعبير عمّا كان يجب أن يحدث في الماضي

PART 4

Skills

A Three-day Revision on Skills

في هذا الجزء

- عرض وافي لمهارة الكتابة بترتيب الأهمية (الأهم فالمهم)
- تدريبات موجهة على مهارة الكتابة تقيس جميع مستويات التفكير (تدريبات مقالية وموضوعية)
- عرض مميز لمهارة القراءة وأنماط الأسئلة المختلفة عليها.
- تدريبات مقالية وموضوعية تخص الترجمة.

• Understand • Apply • Create

